

MIRC
COPY

MHI
Copy 3

RESTRICTED

UNCLASSIFIED

FM 7-10

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY FIELD MANUAL

RIFLE COMPANY INFANTRY REGIMENT

REGRADED UNCLASSIFIED BY
AUTHORITY OF DOD DIR. 5200.1 R
BY RAWLERS ON 021004

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

OCTOBER 1949

RESTRICTED

UNCLASSIFIED

FIELD MANUAL

RIFLE COMPANY, INFANTRY REGIMENT

CHANGES } DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
 No. 1 } WASHINGTON 25, D. C., 16 October 1950

FM 7-10, 3 October 1949, is changed as follows:

24. THE ADVANCE PARTY

The advance party * * * paces between men. Reinforcements to the advance party may include attached 60-mm mortars, 57-mm rifles, machine guns, and tanks. Observers from the * * * the advance party.

* * * * *

143. DUTIES OF PLATOON HEADQUARTERS PERSONNEL

a. (Superseded.) The *platoon leader* is responsible for the training, discipline, control, and tactical employment of his platoon. He recommends the use of his platoon to the company commander and controls its actions through appropriate orders to his sections. He goes where he best can influence the action of his platoon. However, since the 57-mm rifle and 60-mm mortar squads usually operate with the rifle platoons, he acts principally as an advisor to the company commander and rifle platoon leaders on the tactical employment of the weapons platoon. He also supervises the resupply of ammunition by vehicle and hand carry to those weapons of his platoon.

toon which are with the rifle platoons. When elements of the 57-mm rifle section or 60-mm mortar section are in general support, or in direct support of assault rifle platoons, he supervises their employment.

* * * * *

144. DUTIES OF SECTION AND SQUAD LEADERS

The section and squad leaders train and lead the men in their units. They deploy their unit according to the platoon, section, or **squad mission**.

* * * * *

b. *The 60-mm Mortar Section.*

- (1) (Superseded.) When the section occupies a section position, the section leader assigns general locations and targets or target areas for his squads; controls the displacement of weapons and supply of ammunition; and controls the fire of the squads. When a squad is in direct support of or attached to a rifle platoon, he assists in its ammunition supply. He goes where he can best control the most appropriate portion of his section. When the section is divided, he will usually accompany the rifle unit receiving the greatest amount of support, or he may accompany any one of his squads, according to the tactical situation. He must always keep in contact with the weapons platoon leader.
- (2) (Superseded.) The *squad leader* moves his squad to its position area, selects and supervises the preparation and occupation of

exact firing positions, and uses his ammunition bearers to supply ammunition. When the squad is in direct support of, or attached to a rifle platoon, the squad leader supervises the employment of the squad and controls, observes, and adjusts its fire. When a squad, as part of the mortar section, is in general support of the company, the squad leader either supervises the operation of his squad, or acts as an observer for the section.

145. CONTROL

* * * * *

b. (Superseded.) In attack, the 57-mm rifle section and the 60-mm mortar section may be used in general support of the company to increase the flexibility of fires and to insure continuity of supporting fires during the displacement. However, because of limitations of terrain and difficulty in maintaining control, squads of both the 57-mm rifle section and the 60-mm mortar section usually are placed in direct support of, or are attached to, the assault rifle platoons. When a squad of the weapons platoon is attached to a rifle platoon, it comes under the command of the rifle platoon leader. The weapons platoon leader and the section leaders aid the rifle platoon leaders in supplying the squads attached to rifle platoons.

c. (Superseded.) In defense, 57-mm rifle squads are usually placed in direct support of the rifle platoons and occupy positions within platoon defense areas. When sectors of fire and observation are not

limited, the most effective fire and control in defense situations are obtained by employing the 60-mm mortars in a section position under company control. Then the firing positions normally are in the vicinity of the support platoon. When limited sectors of fire and observation from a section position prevent coverage of the company front, the 60-mm mortar section may be divided, and one or more mortars placed within each front-line platoon area.

146. CONDUCT OF FIRE

* * * * *

b. (Superseded.) The 60-mm mortar squads are given definite targets. Planned mortar fires in the attack consist of concentrations. A concentration is the fire of one or more mortars delivered at a located or suspected target. These concentrations cover an area 50 yards in diameter. In devising a plan of fires to support a particular attack, concentrations may be planned in advance to be fired on call as needed. When a 60-mm mortar squad is operating with an assault rifle platoon, the squad leader designates the targets and conducts the fire of his squad as required by the supported rifle platoon. The number and type of targets and target areas are limited to those that one squad can effectively engage. When the 60-mm mortar section is in general support, squads are assigned and engage targets or target areas as directed by the section leader.

147. OBSERVATION

* * * * *

b. (Superseded.) Observation for the squads of the 60-mm mortar section is obtained by the use of

REDACTED

squad or section observation posts. A suitable observation post is the chief requirement for a mortar position; hence, the observation post is selected first. A mortar position that is within 100 yards of the observation post is preferable. However, if the mortar position cannot be located this close to the observation post, the observation post should be located within 100 yards of the mortar-target line. In either case, this allows the observer to make adjustments as though he were on the mortar-target line. When the observation post is more than 100 yards from the mortar-target line the mortar should be moved to another position to correct this situation. When the terrain or the situation prevents the observation post being within 100 yards of the mortar-target line, the observer adjusts along the observer-target line (target-grid method) or he attempts to visualize the mortar-target line and adjust with respect to it. The observation post should give observation over the supported units' zone of action, provide cover and concealment and have a covered route of approach. When a mortar squad is operating with a rifle platoon, the squad leader establishes his observation post where he can watch the action of the rifle platoon, and observe and adjust fire on targets in the platoon zone of action. Communication between the mortar squad leader and the rifle platoon leader is by voice, signal, or radio. Communication between the mortar squad leader and his squad is by voice, signal, or may be by sound-powered telephone. When the mortar squads are in general support of the company, their fires are controlled by the section

REDACTED



leader from a section observation post that provides observation of the company zone of action. Communication between the section leader-observer and the mortar squad leaders at the mortar positions is by voice, signal, sound-powered telephone, or radio.

148. AMMUNITION SUPPLY

a. (Superseded.) Three of the four 1/4-ton weapons carriers assigned to the company may be used to transport weapons and ammunition. These three vehicles normally carry identical mixed loads of ammunition. They operate from the company ammunition supply point. Two weapons carriers normally supply the assault platoons and their attached elements with all types of ammunition. The third weapons carrier may be available to supply the 60-mm mortar section and the 57-mm rifle section when they are employed in general support.

b. (Superseded.) In the assembly area or in the attack position, the weapons and the initial ammunition supply for the 57-mm rifle section and 60-mm mortar section are usually unloaded from the platoon weapons carriers for hand carry in the attack. In defense situations, the weapons and the initial supply of ammunition are unloaded at the firing position. Ammunition is resupplied by ammunition bearers who return to a company supply point and hand carry the ammunition forward to the firing position. Often ammunition can be delivered by vehicle to the vicinity of the firing position.

c. (Delete.)

* * * * *



RESTRICTED

152. APPROACH MARCH

The company commander * * * the rifle units. A 60-mm mortar **squad** and a 57-mm rifle squad accompany the advance party of **the** support company of the advance guard.

155. TROOP LEADING PROCEDURE

* * * * *

b. The weapons platoon * * * of the platoon. Unless the company commander has specified the off-carrier position for the **weapons**, the platoon leader selects this position while on reconnaissance.

c. (Superseded.) When elements of the weapons platoon are attached to rifle platoons, each section leader supervises the attachment of his squads. For squads not attached, he selects position areas, assigns targets or sectors of fire, and provides for ammunition supply.

d. (Superseded.) When the 60-mm mortars are in general support, the 60-mm mortar section leader, after receiving the platoon leader's order, goes ahead of his section to the position area. He notes the location of the front-line troops and his targets or target areas. When he has selected the general location for his weapons and cover positions, he moves the squads and their weapons from the off-carrier position to the firing positions.

156. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT

* * * * *

b. (Superseded.) In attack, the 60-mm mortar squads are usually placed in direct support of, or at-

RESTRICTED

tached to, the assault rifle platoons. A squad not allocated to an assault rifle platoon may be kept under company control in general support and used with the support platoon when it is employed. When observation and fire from one position area can cover the entire company zone up to and including the initial objective, the 60-mm mortar section may be employed as a unit in general support of the company. During the attack, the mortars fire, on call, at targets holding up the advance of the assault platoons. Each mortar usually displaces when its fires no longer can give close support. After the objective is captured, the mortar squads protect the reorganization of the company, and aid in breaking up hostile counterattacks with their fires.

157. SELECTION OF FIRING POSITIONS

* * * * *

b. Desirable characteristics for 60-mm mortar firing positions include—

* * * * *

(4) Dispersion between mortars **occupying a section position** to prevent two mortar positions from being hit by one enemy shell. Dispersion is limited by voice or visual control.

* * * * *

(6) (Added.) Close proximity to a suitable observation post (preferably located so that the mortar position is within 100 yards of the observation post).

SECRET

159. ORDERS

* * * * *

c. Each *squad leader* * * * the first target. Squad leaders of the 57-mm rifle squads and 60-mm mortar squads attached to rifle platoons get their orders from the rifle platoon leader.

160. MOVEMENT INTO FIRING POSITIONS

a. The weapons, ammunition, and accessories of the *57-mm rifle section* and the **60-mm mortar section** are moved by weapons carrier from the assembly area to the attack position, if practicable. Otherwise, the weapons * * * covered and concealed. When not resupplying ammunition, ammunition bearers remain **under cover near the firing position**.

b. (Superseded.) Since *60-mm mortars* normally are fired from defilade, they usually move by vehicle from the assembly area to an off-carrier position located as close to the position area as the situation permits. The weapons, accessories, and initial supply of ammunition are unloaded and hand-carried to exact firing positions selected by the squad leaders. The squad leaders supervise the preparation and occupation of the firing position. Ammunition bearers are dispersed near the firing position when not resupplying ammunition.

161. SUPPORTING FIRES DURING THE ATTACK

* * * * *

b. (Superseded.) The squads of the 60-mm mortar section do not normally participate in prepara-

SECRET

tory firing unless the fires of other supporting weapons are insufficient. Targets may be assigned to be engaged on call. When a mortar squad is in direct support of, or attached to, an assault rifle platoon, the squad occupies an initial firing position near the line of departure where it can cover the platoon zone. The squad engages targets as requested or directed by the rifle platoon leader. When the fires of the mortar squad endanger the rifle platoon as it nears the target area, the fires are lifted to more distant targets or shifted to targets located on the flanks. Mortar squads, in general support of the company, fire at suitable targets as directed by the company commander, the weapons platoon leader, or the section leader. During the assault, the fires are delivered at appropriate targets to the flanks or beyond the objective.

162. DISPLACEMENT

* * * * *

c. (Superseded.) The 60-mm mortar section and squad leaders continuously make plans for displacement. They closely observe the progress of the assault rifle platoons, and anticipate the need to displace in order to furnish adequate fire support. New positions and covered routes thereto are selected by visual and personal reconnaissance. A displacement is made as rapidly as possible. When a squad is operating with a rifle platoon, the supported platoon leader may direct the displacement. Often the squad leader, on his own initiative, displaces his squad when adequate fire support is no longer possible from the



old position or more effective fire support can be delivered from a new position. When squads are in general support of the company, they displace by squad echelon, one or two at a time, under supervision of the section leader. If possible, weapons and ammunition are moved by vehicle; however, when there is no other choice, they are moved by hand-carry.

163. REORGANIZATION

a. (Superseded.) As soon as the hostile position is captured, or the attack is halted for any reason, weapons are placed in positions which protect the front and flanks of the assault rifle platoons against a counterattack. Squads in direct support of, or attached to, the assault rifle platoons occupy positions in the platoon areas. Squads in general support of the company are placed to cover the most likely avenues of approach in the company zone of action (fig. 43). The mortars are registered immediately and concentrations are recorded.

* * * * *

165. SELECTION OF POSITIONS

* * * * *

c. When sectors of * * * the support platoon.

* * * * *

168. POSITION OF LEADERS

* * * * *

c. *Squad Leaders.*

* * * * *





(2) (Superseded.) When a mortar squad is in direct support of, or attached to, a front-line rifle platoon, the squad leader supervises the employment of the squad and controls, observes, and adjusts its fires. When the mortar squads are in a section position in general support of the company, the mortar squad leaders assist in fire control.

210. NIGHT ATTACK FORMATION

* * * * *

b. (Superseded.) A rifle company may make a night attack alone or as one of the assault companies of a battalion attack. In either case, its assault is usually made with all three rifle platoons abreast in order to obtain maximum fire power and shock action. However, when a support is held out, it moves as directed by the company commander. It may follow closely the assault echelon or it may be left in rear of the line of departure to be brought forward by guides or on a signal. It may have the mission of mopping up or giving normal support. If no support is held out, one is designated immediately after the objective is captured.

* * * * *

230. ASSIGNMENT OF CROSSING MEANS

a. If the company is in the battalion assault echelon, enough assault or storm boats or other crossing craft are provided to move the entire company **with attachments** in one trip (fig. 52).



RESTRICTED

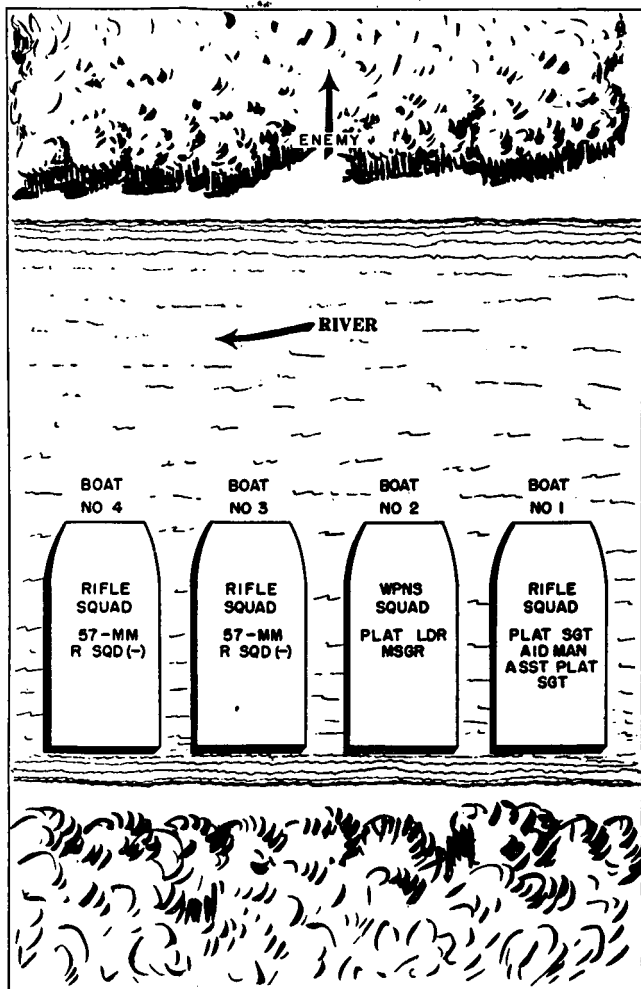


Figure 51. (Superseded.) A typical boat grouping, showing assignment of assault boats to a rifle platoon reinforced with a 57-mm rifle squad.

RESTRICTED

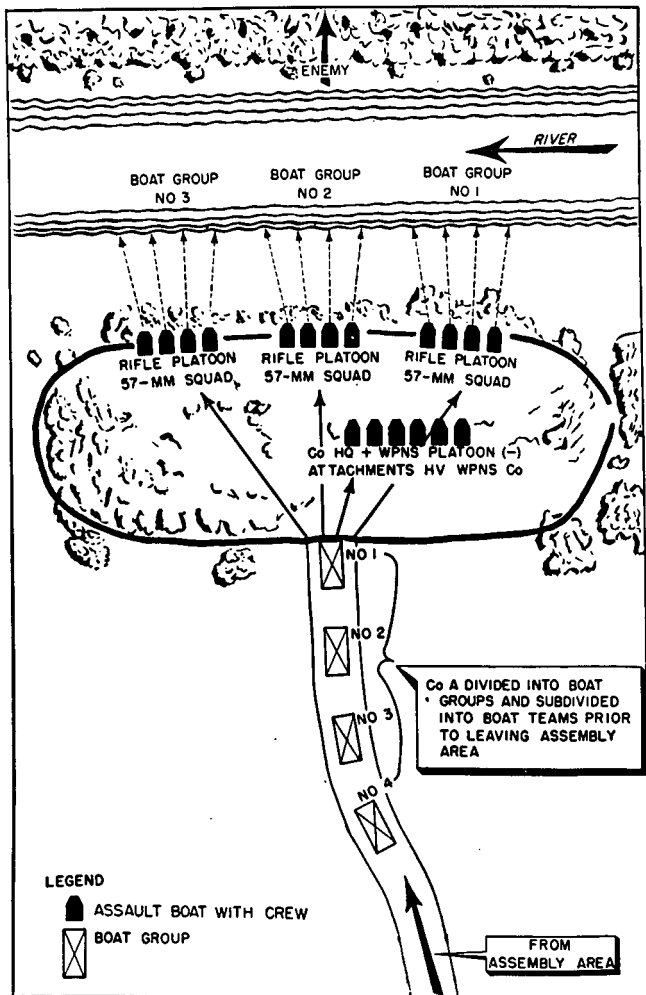


Figure 52. (Superseded.) Movement to a river, showing at-attack position and a typical organization of boat groups.

RESTRICTED

b. Tactical unity within * * * is as follows:

- (1) *Leading wave.* Assault platoons (with attachments) and forward observers from the 81-mm mortar platoon.

* * * * *

232. FORMATION FOR THE CROSSING

(Superseded)

The rifle company usually crosses with the three rifle platoons abreast, each reinforced with a 57-mm rifle squad. Company aid men are attached to each platoon. The remainder of the weapons platoon, the company command group, and all attachments to the company normally cross in the second wave. Immediately after crossing, the squads of the 60-mm mortar section are usually placed in direct support of, or attached to, assault-rifle platoons.

243. PLANS

* * * * *

c. *Supporting Fires.* (Superseded.) Because of control, coordination, and observation difficulties, weapons, such as heavy machine guns, 57-mm and 75-mm rifles, 60-mm mortars, and tanks, frequently are attached to the assault rifle platoons. Effective use of tanks depends primarily on the visibility in the woods and the presence of roads and trails. In this type of combat, tanks are protected closely by foot elements. Limited observation and the presence of tree masks reduce the effectiveness of close support by artillery. Consequently, the use of 60-mm and 81-mm mortars from open spaces in the woods assumes added importance.

* * * * *

RESTRICTED

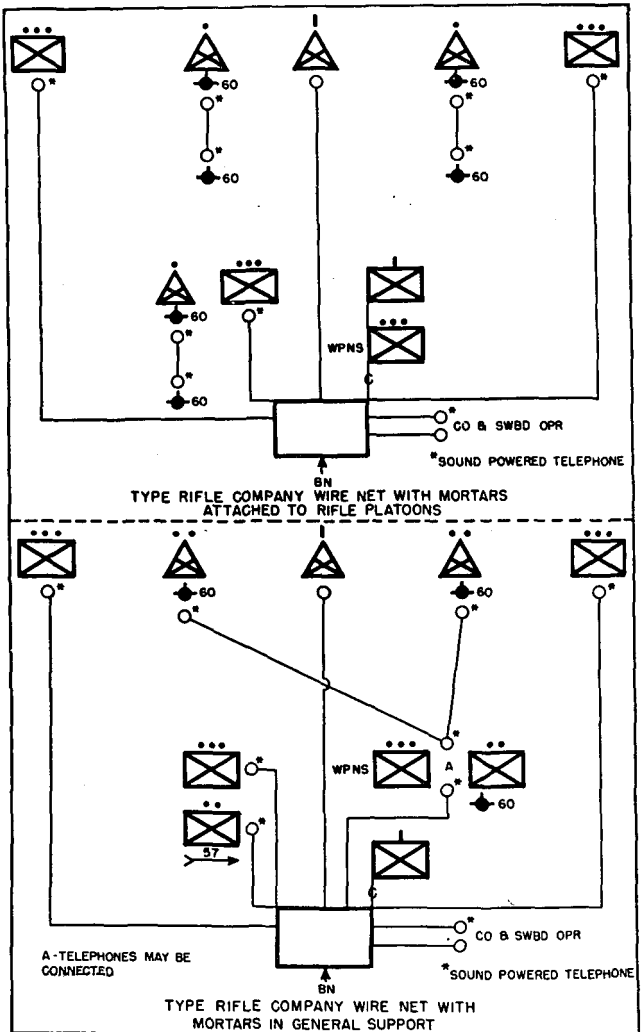


Figure 71. (Superseded) Type rifle company wire net.

REDACTED

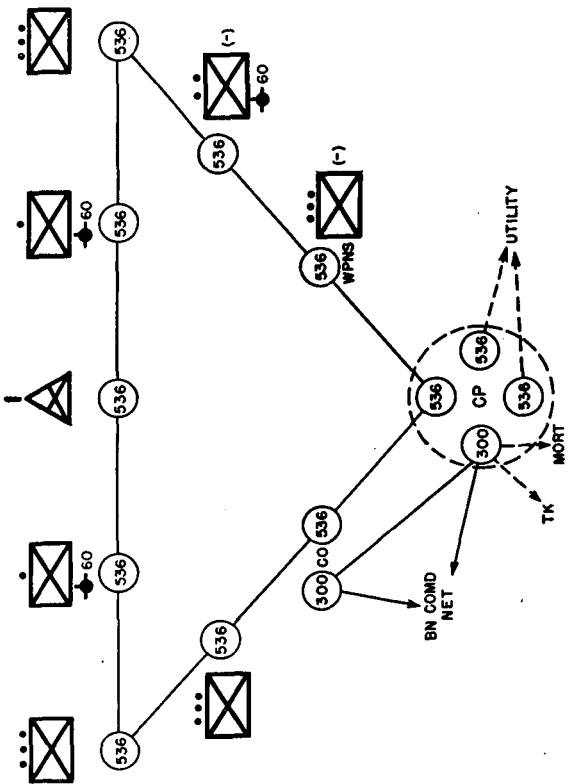


Figure 72. (Superseded.) Type rifle company radio net.

404. CONDUCT OF THE ATTACK

* * * * *

f. (Superseded.) As in any attack, supporting weapons give continuous close support to the assault echelon. They also are prepared to fire on dangerous approaches into the flanks and rear. Artillery and 81-mm mortar observers move with the company

REDACTED

to coordinate and adjust the fires requested by the company commander. The 60-mm mortar squads usually accompany the assault platoons. To simplify control during the landing, the reorganization, and the initial attack, battalion supporting weapons may be attached to the company for these periods, and company supporting weapons may be attached to assault platoons.

* * * * *

APPENDIX VI

TRAINING PROGRAM

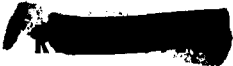
* * * * *

Section II. SQUAD PHASE

1. GENERAL

(Superseded)

The training program for the rifle squad is outlined in paragraph 2, this section. A program is not outlined for the other squads of the company (weapons, 57-mm rifle, and 60-mm mortar) because they ordinarily are not used as independent units. The rocket launcher team and the light machine gun team of the weapons squad usually operate with elements of the rifle platoon and on divergent missions; the 57-mm rifle squad and the 60-mm mortar squad ordinarily are placed in direct support of or attached to a rifle platoon. In the squad phase, these elements are given training which prepares them to operate efficiently during the platoon phase.



This training includes as much of the following as is applicable to the various squads:

- a.* Selection, occupation, and organization of positions in normal terrain, in woods, and in towns.
- b.* Preparation of range cards.
- c.* Establishment of observation posts.
- d.* Use of communication.
- e.* Ammunition supply.
- f.* Displacement.
- g.* Night occupation of positions.
- h.* Night movement.

Section III. PLATOON PHASE

1. GENERAL

* * * * *

b. (Superseded.) The squads of the 60-mm mortar section train with the rifle platoons in their normal role of direct support or attachment. A training program for the 60-mm mortar section is outlined in paragraph 3, this section. Of its total time (64 hours), 32 hours are allotted to the section for independent training, and 32 hours are allotted for combined training with rifle platoons. The squads of the 60-mm mortar section function in direct support of rifle platoons or are attached to rifle platoons during specified field exercises.

[AG 300.7 (29 Sep 50)]


UNCLASSIFIED

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY OF THE ARMY :

OFFICIAL :

EDWARD F. WITSELL
Major General, USA
The Adjutant General

J. LAWTON COLLINS
Chief of Staff,
United States Army

DISTRIBUTION :

Tech Svc (2) ; Arm & Svc Bd (1) ; AA Comd (2) ; OS Maj Comd (2) ; MDW (2) ; A (20) ; CHQ (2) ; D (10) except 17 (2) ; B (2) ; R 7, 71 (10) ; Bn 7, 71 (5) ; C 7, 71 (3) ; Sch (10) except USMA (50) ; PMS&T (1) ; Tng Cen (3) ; T/O & E 7-17N (10) ; 7-37N (10).

For explanation of distribution formula, see SR 310-90-1.

UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED

RES [REDACTED] Security Information

FM 7-10

C 3

FIELD MANUAL

RIFLE COMPANY, INFANTRY REGIMENT

CHANGES } DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
No. 3 } WASHINGTON 25, D. C., 3 December 1952

FM 7-10, 3 October 1949, is changed as follows:

The term "reserve squad" or "reserve platoon" is substituted for the term "support squad" or "support platoon" throughout this manual in all instances in which the term is used as a designation for one of the rifle squads or rifle platoons of the rifle company.

4. ORGANIZATION

(Superseded)

a. The rifle company (T/O&E 7-17) is the basic infantry fighting unit with tactical, administrative, and supply functions. Its organization (fig. 1) is characterized by its triangular structure. There are three identical rifle platoons which can be employed in different combinations to find and fix, to maneuver, and to close with the enemy and destroy or capture him. In addition to these three elements, there is a weapons platoon which furnishes close fire support to the rifle platoons and a company headquarters.

b. The company headquarters is organized for combat into a command group and an administrative group. The command group consists of the company commander, executive officer, first sergeant, company clerk, communications sergeant, radio op-

UNCLASSIFIED

REDACTED—Security Information

erators, messengers, and an orderly. The administrative group consists of a warrant officer administrator, mess personnel, supply sergeant, and an armorer. Filler personnel are distributed as needed.

9. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT

(Superseded)

a. Upon receiving the battalion order, the rifle company commander makes his own plan. This plan is based upon his mission, his evaluation of the enemy, and a detailed study of the terrain from a map, on the ground and, when practicable, from the air. Critical terrain features such as ridges and high ground are seized at the earliest opportunity and utilized to further the operation. Frontal attacks are avoided whenever possible. As a general concept, a commander must seize the dominant terrain if he expects to impose his will on the enemy.

b. Attacks to secure dominating terrain should generally be made along the ridge lines running into the dominating position rather than up the draws or ravines leading into the position. By attacking up the ridge lines, the attacker gains successively higher ground for observation and for the location of his fire support units.

c. Zones of action or sectors indicated by boundaries between units must be established in such a manner as to favor maneuver and to insure that the dominating terrain or other key feature, such as a small village, lies within the boundaries of a single unit.

RE [REDACTED] Security Information [REDACTED]

d. The company commander coordinates the actions of his platoons, and plans the fires of his organic and attached weapons. He requests fires from other supporting weapons to assist the advance of his maneuvering elements and to destroy the enemy in his zone of action or area of responsibility. He notifies the battalion commander of major decisions and frequently reports his company location and progress.

11. COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

a. *Command Group.*

* * * * *

(7) (Rescinded)

(8) (Superseded) The *company messengers* are trained to install, operate, and maintain all items of communication equipment in the company. They must be capable of operating switchboards and serving as linemen. One messenger drives a company headquarters vehicle, one is stationed at the company command post, and one operates from the battalion command post.

(9) (Superseded) The *orderly* drives the company commander's vehicle and is also trained to operate company communication equipment.

* * * * *

14. GENERAL

* * * * *

c. (Added) During all ground movement in the combat zone, the company should be prepared for enemy ground and air action. The disposition of a column often decides the outcome of an engagement.

37. ASSEMBLY AREAS

* * * * *

e. In the assembly area, individuals and units use natural cover and concealment for protection from aerial and ground observation. Individuals use existing holes or ditches, or they dig slit trenches. The primary activity * * * rations are issued. (See fig. 7).

38. ATTACK POSITIONS

(Superseded)

a. The attack position is the last covered and concealed position occupied by the assault units before crossing the line of departure. The assault company commander selects the attack position after the battalion commander prescribes the line of departure. He bases his selection on the terrain and the plan of attack. When the need for special coordination makes it necessary, the battalion commander, rather than the company commander, may select the attack position. In addition to providing cover from small arms fire and concealment from both ground and aerial observation, the attack position should facilitate the movement to the line of departure and, where

possible, be large enough to accommodate the entire company in the initial formation which the company commander intends to adopt for the attack. Assault platoon attack positions and the initial position of the reserve platoon are located within this area and are designated by the company commander in general terms to conform to his plan of maneuver. The exact location of each platoon within the designated area is selected by the platoon leader.

b. Attack positions are occupied for the minimum time required for deployment, coordination, and last minute preparations for the attack. When the situation and the terrain permit, vehicles may be brought forward to the attack position with any required heavy equipment or weapons. However, vehicles should remain in the assembly area, initially, if their movement forward will jeopardize secrecy. The movement forward to the attack position by the assault elements may be under either battalion or company control.

47. SNIPING

(Superseded)

a. Snipers are specially trained riflemen, who are expert marksmen as well as expert infantrymen. Their mission is to kill key enemy personnel, weaken the enemy's resistance and morale, and assist intelligence agencies by timely reports of enemy activities. For data on the equipment and training of snipers, see FM 21-75.

b. The unit commander may employ the snipers in his unit as a group, in pairs, or individually.

Snipers may continue sniping and intelligence tasks during darkness when they are equipped with electronic night firing and viewing equipment.

c. Snipers are best used in pairs, especially when operating from a stationary post. Thus they are able to alternate as killer and observer. When large sectors must be covered and frequent movement is necessary, it may be more practical for snipers to operate singly. Firing positions should be selected that take advantage of available cover and concealment with particular attention to fields of fire. The routes to these positions must be considered in relation to the visibility at the time the routes will be used. Snipers engage such profitable targets as enemy officers and noncommissioned officers, observers, snipers, weapons crews, and communication personnel. Targets will be most plentiful when the enemy relaxes his guard, such as at dawn, at dusk, on moonlight nights, and at mealtimes.

d. In the attack, snipers normally operate as members of their organic squads, but at times it may be desirable for the company commander or platoon leader to use them singly or in pairs. They may be used to the rear of or on the flanks of the assault rifle platoons. When so employed, they seek any appropriate target which is holding up the attack. In the assault phase, snipers select such targets as key personnel, pillbox or bunker embrasures, and weapons crews. During reorganization they occupy positions from which they can kill the leaders of the enemy counterattack.

e. In the defense, snipers normally occupy prepared and camouflaged positions and operate in pairs as stationary observers and snipers. When observation is restricted or large areas of responsibility are assigned, it may be more desirable for them to operate as mobile snipers. In such cases, they usually operate singly.

f. When snipers are operating under company control, their positions and activities are coordinated with the rifle platoon leader in whose area they operate. Snipers operating under company control are assigned definite sectors of responsibility, with the size of the sector depending upon the unit frontage, the presence of dangerous avenues of approach, likely enemy observation posts and firing positions, and suitable sniper positions. In retrograde movements, snipers remain on the position as long as possible to cover the withdrawal of their unit.

g. Snipers may accompany patrols whenever it is considered necessary by the unit commander. Normally they are used for the protection of the patrol. The snipers operate within the patrol formation, and in the event the enemy engages the patrol, the snipers assist the patrol in breaking contact by moving away from the vicinity of the patrol and taking the enemy under fire, thus allowing the patrol to continue with its mission. The snipers rejoin the patrol as soon as the resistance is neutralized.

h. Because of his special training and the observation afforded by his firing position, the sniper can make a valuable contribution to intelligence agencies. He can also call for and adjust other fires on

profitable targets. Intelligence officers should assist in the briefing of snipers prior to their movement into position, and it may be appropriate at times to interrogate them after they are relieved. However, the primary mission of the sniper is to kill the enemy, and his use as an intelligence agent is secondary.

61. GENERAL

Before the attack * * * and enemy fire. Men use existing holes or ditches or they dig slit trenches.

67. DUTIES OF SQUAD MEMBERS

* * * * *

b. The *riflemen* move * * * them by fire. The squad sniper acts as a rifleman in the squad unless he is given a special sniping mission.

73. REORGANIZATION

As soon as * * * the platoon objective. The squad leader checks his squad for casualties, the condition of weapons, and the status of ammunition. He redesignates key * * * continuing the attack.

79. SELECTION OF FIRING POSITIONS

* * * * *

c. (Added) The squad sniper may function as a member of his squad or of a special sniping team under the control of a platoon leader or the company commander. In the absence of special instructions,

~~RESTRICTED~~ — **Security Information**

the squad leader employs the sniper in the same manner as the other riflemen.

79.1 CONCEALMENT

(Added)

a. Each firing position (including alternate and supplementary positions) must be concealed and camouflaged by the individuals occupying the position. For additional information, see FM 5-20 and FM 5-20A. The squad leader must supervise his men closely to make sure that unnecessary noise or movement does not disclose their position. Take the following actions to facilitate concealment:

- (1) Stay within shadowed areas whenever possible.
- (2) Utilize branches and leaves to break up the outline of individuals, weapons, and equipment.
- (3) Break up solid areas of color and blend them with the natural surroundings.
- (4) Conceal mess gear, range cards, and all other light-colored or glittering objects. Darken faces and hands to avoid detection by enemy snipers.
- (5) Hide fresh earth uncovered while digging foxholes and weapon emplacements. Change the regular outline of foxholes and emplacements by camouflaging them with natural material.

b. Enforce strict camouflage discipline at all times to make sure that positions remain concealed. Give particular attention to the following:

RESTRICTED—Security Information

- (1) Use existing paths and roads if possible. If it becomes necessary to move across country, remove or conceal all evidence of the movement.
- (2) Fresh earth and refuse should be buried or hidden. Constant supervision by squad leaders is necessary to make sure that refuse, such as ration and ammunition containers, does not disclose the location of the position.
- (3) The over-all appearance of the ground should not be changed.

82. CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE

* * * * *

d. When the attacking * * * of the tanks. Men resume their firing positions as soon as the tanks pass, and they fire on approaching foot troops. Maximum effort is * * * from the tanks.

84. ORGANIZATION

(Superseded)

The weapons squad consists of two light machine gun teams under the command of a squad leader. Each team consists of a gunner, an assistant gunner, and two ammunition bearers.

85. DUTIES OF LEADERS

a. The weapons squad leader * * * from the platoon leader. The rocket launcher * * * which it operates.

* * * * *

93. GENERAL

Before the attack * * * observation and fire. Men use holes and ditches or dig slit trenches. When an enemy * * * leader's attack order.

98. TARGETS

a. *Appropriate targets for the light machine gun* are crew-served weapons, small groups of enemy, pillbox embrasures, and lightly armored vehicles. Enemy whose general * * * machine gun fire. In built-up areas, light machine guns are used against definitely located targets in buildings and to deny the use of streets to the enemy.

* * * * *

110. ORGANIZATION

(Superseded)

The organization of the rifle platoon, like the rifle company, is characterized by its triangular structure. It has three identical rifle squads and, in addition, there is a weapons squad and a platoon headquarters. The platoon is commanded by a lieutenant (platoon leader) who is assisted by a platoon sergeant, an assistant platoon sergeant, and two messengers. A rocket launcher team of four men is also in the platoon headquarters and an aid man is normally attached. The organization of the platoon is designed for maximum efficiency in fixing the enemy by fire, closing with him by maneuver, and killing or capturing him by a combination of fire, maneuver, and shock action.

124. TROOP LEADING PROCEDURE

* * * * *

c. Reconnaissance.

* * * * *

- (5) *Avenues of approach.* Studies the terrain * * * of the platoon. He avoids a route which prematurely masks direct fire supporting weapons **but strives to select an approach along a dominant terrain feature (ridge, high ground).** Determines which avenues * * * provides better cover.

d. Estimate of the Situation.

* * * * *

- (2) Decides upon his method of attack which will include how, when, and where he will employ his fire support, his maneuvering force and his reserve.

* * * * *

125. METHOD OF ATTACK

a. (Superseded)

- (1) In any attack the first thing the platoon has to do, unless it is already in close contact with the enemy, is to find the enemy and to pin him down or fix him in position. One element of the platoon must find and fix the enemy in place and hold his attention so that a second element can maneuver against him. While this is being done, the maneu-

ver can be against one or the other flank of the enemy; or, if the enemy is widely dispersed, the platoon leader may decide to hit him in the middle. Usually, however, this maneuver should be around one flank or the other. A reserve squad is designated for the purpose of exploiting the maneuver or to drive home the attack. Each squad is given a specific mission and is committed at the proper time by the platoon leader to further the attack of the platoon. The platoon leader must be prepared at all times to counter any unexpected enemy action.

- (2) The platoon advances from the line of departure to the assault position by fire and maneuver. In addition to the heavy indirect fires furnished by the artillery and mortars, the platoon is supported by its own weapons and by many others. These include the 57-mm rifles from the weapons platoon, the machine guns and 75-mm rifles from the heavy weapons company, and at times the fires of a tank platoon.

* * * * *

f. Timely coordination of * * * in infantry combat. The termination of supporting fires is indicated to the riflemen of the assault echelon by a visual signal fired by the assault squads or by the supporting unit. Squads not already * * * endanger friendly troops.

126. ORDERS

(Fig. 36.)

a. The platoon leader * * * includes the following:

- * * * * *
- (3) Line or area * * * on the objective. The platoon leader may also include special instructions to the sniper teams ordered by the company commander to operate in his area.

* * * * *

128. CONDUCT OF THE ATTACK

a. The principles outlined * * * and move rapidly. When the assault elements are within assaulting distance of the objective, the supporting fires are lifted on call by the platoon leader, or the company or battalion commander. Then the advance * * * direct-fire weapons.

* * * * *

c. *Advance Against Short-Range Fires,*

* * * * *

- (2) Specific targets holding up the advance are pointed out to the leaders of supporting weapons units, accompanying forward observers, the snipers, and to the company commander. At the same * * * the other element,

* * * * *

129. ASSAULT

* * * * *

b. As the supporting * * * and recoilless rifles. Snipers will select targets such as key personnel, pillbox or bunker embrasures, and weapons crews. Snipers should operate to the rear or flanks of the assault rifle platoon. Ammunition is used * * * the next objective.

130. REORGANIZATION

a. The platoon leader's * * * their assigned locations. Snipers are placed in a position that will enable them to kill the key enemy personnel leading a counterattack. The platoon leader * * * meet enemy resistance.

* * * * *

135. FRONTAGE AND DEPTH

* * * * *

c. (Superseded) Platoons should endeavor to achieve maximum depth possible to add strength to the position and aid in limiting penetrations. Supplementary positions are usually necessary in order to provide all around defense. Therefore, dependent on the terrain and any need for supplementary positions, the depth of the platoon area may vary from 50 to 200 yards.

137. FIRE PLAN

a. The *rifle platoon leader* * * * of his area. He also procures a map or overlay which shows **mortar and** artillery concentrations by positions and designating numbers. When time and * * * of the platoon.

* * * * *

139. ORGANIZATION OF GROUND

a. The organization of * * * permit effective fire. The company order states the sequence **and time limit** in which the tasks are done. This sequence is—

* * * * *

140. CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE

* * * * *

d. It usually is * * * local security elements. **Once contact is gained, movement within the position at night is held to the minimum.**

181. SUPPORTING FIRES

(App. IV.)

* * * * *

f. (Added) *Close Air Support.* The infantry regimental and battalion commanders, with forward air controllers, will include the use of close air support, if available, in the fire support plan. Weather limitations may deny a commander the use of air support even though it is available and included in the planning. The control of air strikes is accom-

plished by the forward air controller. Because the forward air controller is normally located in, or in communication with, the battalion or regimental fire support coordination center, he may be assisted in the control of air strikes by artillery forward observers with front line rifle companies. For details pertaining to close air support, see section VI, appendix IV.

185. ORDERS

a. The company commander * * * company order includes—

- * * * * *
- (3) Specific instructions for each assault rifle platoon, for the weapons platoon, for attached elements, and for snipers.
- * * * * *

199. COMMITTING THE RESERVE

(Superseded)

When the battalion commander decides to commit the reserve company and it is impractical for him to assign a line of departure, he will prescribe an area from which the reserve company is to launch its attack and have the company commander select and report a line of departure. The battalion commander also prescribes the objective, a tentative time of attack, the direction or zone of attack, and any changes in the battalion plan of fire support. He coordinates other elements of the battalion so that the reserve will not have to wait in the area of departure once it has arrived there, and so that its attack coin-

cides with the effort that is to be made by the remainder of the battalion. When the reserve arrives in the forward area, the company commander reports that fact to the battalion commander and prepares to launch the attack.

206. RECONNAISSANCE FOR A NIGHT ATTACK (Superseded)

Daylight reconnaissance by all leaders is highly desirable before all night operations, and is essential for a night attack against a well-organized defensive position. It is supplemented by reconnaissance patrols during darkness, and by the study of maps and aerial photographs. To preserve secrecy, it may be necessary to limit reconnaissance.

212. NIGHT ATTACK POSITIONS

The last minute * * * in an attack position. This position is usually selected by the assault company commander during his daylight reconnaissance but may be designated by the battalion commander if the need for coordination with other friendly forces in the area dictates this procedure. The attack position * * * and preserve secrecy.

214. ROUTES TO OBJECTIVE (Superseded)

Routes to the objective are carefully selected. The commander weighs the advantage of ease of control gained by selecting a route which follows easily

recognized landmarks (roads, fences, streamlines, and similar terrain features) against the disadvantages of the possibility that the enemy's locations and prearranged fires cover these landmarks or other obvious routes of approach.

230. ASSIGNMENT OF CROSSING MEANS

* * * * *

b. Tactical unity within * * * is as follows:

- (1) (Superseded) *Leading wave*. Assault platoons (with attachments).
- (2) (Superseded) *Second wave*. Company command group, weapons platoon (less detachments), support platoon (if any), attachments from the heavy weapons company; and artillery, heavy mortar company, and 81-mm mortar platoon forward observers.

236. SUPPORT OF CROSSING

a. Air, artillery, heavy * * * the far side. The commander's order may include the organization and tactical employment of special sniper teams. Snipers may be employed either as a group, in teams, or individually. They should occupy their positions prior to the crossing and, upon completion of the crossing, rejoin their units.

* * * * *

241. GENERAL

* * * *

b. (Superseded) When woods are attacked frontally, the attack consists of three phases:

- (1) Attack of and reorganization within the near edge.
- (2) Advance through the woods.
- (3) Exit from the far edge.

244. CONDUCT OF ATTACK

a. Seizure of the * * * any other attack. While the reorganization in the near edge of the woods takes place, the company commander issues any necessary additional instructions for the advance through the woods. The company starts * * * on an azimuth.

* * * *

251. ORGANIZATION FOR A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID

The company commander * * * with automatic weapons. Snipers, if equipped with night viewing and firing devices, should be employed with the assault party. Support parties normally * * * of the company.

263. GENERAL

* * * *

d. The size of * * * a large group. On the other hand, units as large as a rifle company may be directed to infiltrate through the enemy lines and

attack the rear of the hostile position. A coordinated frontal assault by another unit may be used in this type of operation.

* * * * *

273. RIFLE COMPANY DEFENSE ORDER

* * * * *

g. Priority of construction and time limit in which tasks are to be completed.

* * * * *

n_a (Added) Patrol plan.

276. BOUNDARIES

The battalion commander * * * responsibility, or depth. Boundaries must be established so as to favor the defense and to insure that critical terrain features (ridges, high ground) and avenues of approach are the responsibility of a single unit.

279. LOCATION OF FRONT-LINE PLATOON

The width of * * * blocks that approach. To provide sniper coverage for the entire area, snipers are assigned definite sectors of responsibility. The size of the sector depends on the frontage covered by a unit, the presence of dangerous avenues of approach, terrain suitable for enemy observation posts and suitable sniper positions. Snipers select positions which provide best available cover and concealment, and they pay special attention to fields of fire. The routes to these

[REDACTED]

positions must be considered in relation to the conditions of visibility that will prevail when these routes are used.

280. DISPOSITION OF RESERVE PLATOON

a. The *primary mission* * * * the battle position. Snipers of the reserve platoon may be detached from their squads and employed as teams within the battle position.

* * * * *

284. COMMAND POST

The company command * * * battalion command post. The command post is so organized that it will function as a coordination center with or without the presence of the commanding officer.

285. ORGANIZATION OF GROUND

a. The organization of * * * and facilities available. The battalion order gives the sequence and time limit in which the tasks are executed. These may include—

* * * * *

c. Organization of exposed * * * postponed until darkness. Overhead cover is constructed for foxholes and emplacements for protection against enemy fire and friendly close-in artillery and mortar fires.

289. CONDUCT OF DEFENSE

a. As the enemy * * * the outpost positions. The snipers employed with the general and combat outposts remain on position as long as practicable, covering the withdrawal of these outposts into the battle position.

* * * * *

c. When the massed * * * the battalion commander. Snipers can often prepare and camouflage adequate primary and secondary positions from which they can operate to prevent removal of obstacles in front of the main line of resistance and to kill the leaders in the enemy attack.

* * * * *

e. When the attacking * * * crushing action of the tanks. They resume their firing positions as soon as the tanks pass and fire on the rear of the tanks. Defenders also fire * * * other attacking tanks.

* * * * *

h. The conduct of a night defense resembles that of a day defense except that it is characterized by more close-in fighting and less movement within the position. It can be * * * locating these targets.

290. RELIEF

a. If the defense is prolonged or if units on the battle position have suffered heavy casualties, periodic relief of units in the line may be made. The front-line * * * executed at night.

* * * * *

312. DEFENSE IN WOODS

Defense in woods * * * infiltrate the position. A distinct advantage can be gained when snipers are employed in woods. Because of their specialized training they can deny to the enemy the use of certain areas, disrupt his communications, and act as observers.

335. COVERING FORCE FOR NIGHT WITHDRAWAL

a. The strength and * * * forward rifle companies. Snipers, if equipped with the night viewing and firing devices, operate in the same manner as for a daylight withdrawal (par. 342d). As soon as * * * battalion rear area.

* * * * *

342. DAYLIGHT WITHDRAWAL

d. Supporting weapons in * * * platoons for the withdrawal. Snipers are employed in the same manner as described in defensive operations (par. 279). Because their accurate fires can be utilized to cover the withdrawal of a unit from a position, they remain on the position as long as possible. Their principal targets are enemy officers and noncommissioned officers leading the attack.

343. DELAYING ACTION IN SUCCESSIVE POSITIONS

Since a delay * * * with automatic weapons. Because of their ability to deliver accurate fire, snipers may be used to an advantage in de-

laying actions. They are employed in much the same manner as for a daylight withdrawal (par. 342d).

346. COMMUNICATION PERSONNEL

* * * * *

c. The *communication noncommissioned officer* * * * in the company. He transmits information contained in **extracts of current communication orders**; for example, signal operation instructions (SOI) and standing signal instructions (SSI). He makes recommendations * * * pertaining to communication.

d. Rescinded

e. The *radiotelephone operators* operate and maintain the **man-packed radio sets** in the company. Their training includes * * * to the company.

* * * * *

g. The **orderly** and other men designated by the company commander are trained to install, operate, and maintain the company communication system. These men are * * * packed radio sets.

347. EQUIPMENT

* * * * *

b. (Superseded) Radio equipment includes low-powered portable voice sets. Two types are issued; one type is hand-carried and the other is man-packed. Man-packed radios have a range of three to five miles. Hand-carried radios have a range of approximately 1 mile. Both radios are frequency-modulated

(f-m) and will net with radios mounted in all tanks. Frequencies (channels) on the man-packed radios can be changed by the operator.

* * * * *

348. MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

a. The company commander directs the use of communication available to the company. **Flexibility of communication is achieved by using as many of the means of communication as are applicable so that if one means of communication fails, the company can effectively use other means. The success or failure of a unit often depends on its ability to communicate.**

b. *Wire* communication depends on the time available to install and recover the wire. (See fig. 71.) In fast-moving * * * be recovered quickly. **In an attack on a limited objective, wire is often laid forward as the unit advances. In defensive situations * * * control of units.**

c. *Radio* is limited only by the characteristics of the sets, such as range, frequency, security restrictions, and interference from static, jamming, or terrain obstacles. (See fig. 72.) Radio is an * * * on operator training.

* * * * *

349. COMMUNICATION COORDINATION

The company communication * * * battalion communication plan. A man-packed radio (PRC-10) is netted with the battalion command net. In

defensive situations and in attack situations, when circumstances permit, the battalion communication platoon installs wire from the battalion command post to the company command post.

350. COMMUNICATION ORDERS

The rifle company commander's order contains instructions for communication. Frequently, such instructions refer to the company SOP or indicate the location of the company commander or his command post. Other instructions relative * * * by pyrotechnic signal. In the attack, instructions are given for pyrotechnic signals for prearranged fires, lifting of supporting fires, location of units, and for capture of objectives. Platoon leaders acquaint * * * a higher commander.

371. ROLE OF THE AIRBORNE RIFLE COMPANY

The airborne rifle company is trained and equipped to enter combat by parachute or assault transport. It normally uses * * * of a battalion.

373. EQUIPMENT

* * * * *

c. The weapons carriers of the company can be delivered by parachute or assault transport. They may accompany * * * of captured transportation.

* * * * *

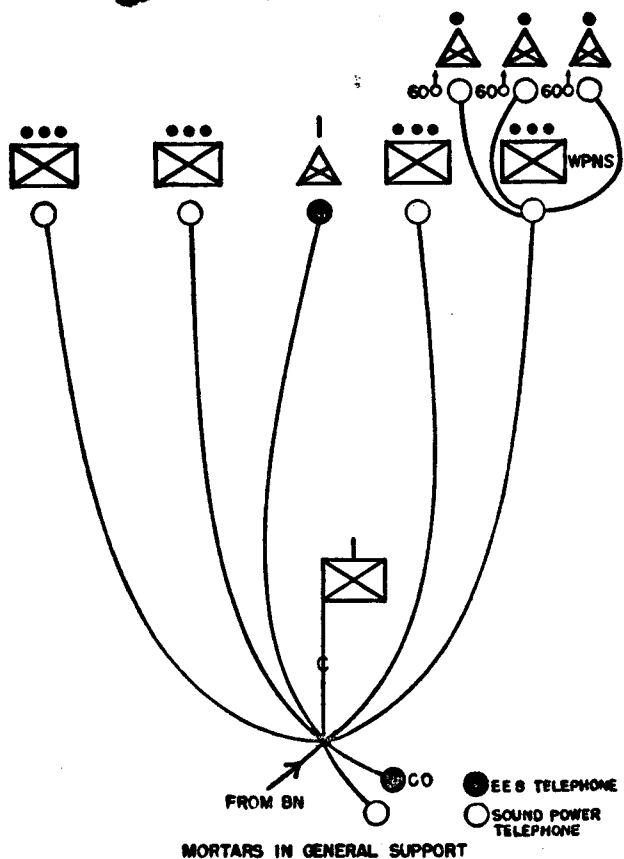
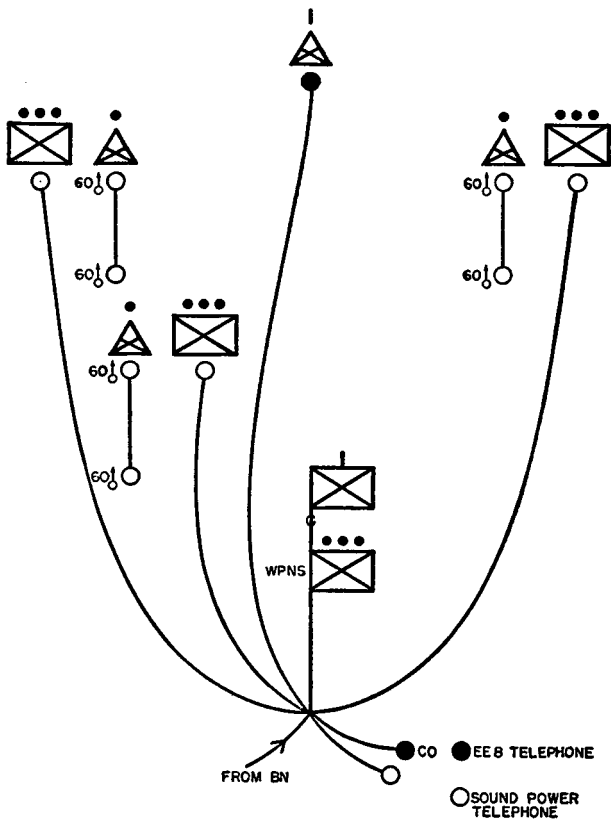


Figure 71. (Superseded) Type rifle company wire nets.



MORTARS ATTACHED TO PLATOONS

Figure 71—Continued.

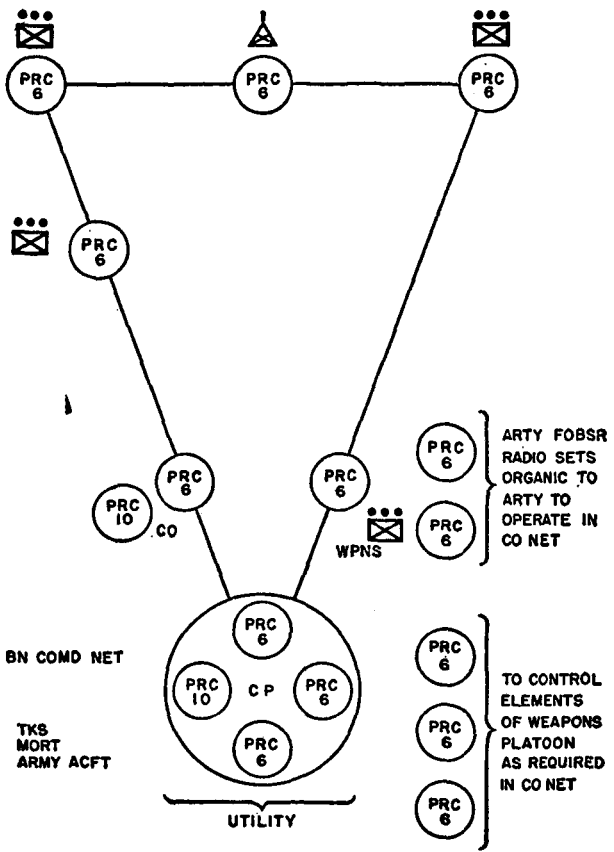


Figure 72. (Superseded) Type rifle company radio net.

375. SUPPORTING ARMS AND WEAPONS

a. *Artillery.* Light artillery landed by parachute or assault transport accompanies or closely follows the assault landing of the infantry troops. Forward observers land * * * reorganization after landing.

* * * * *

c. *Tanks.* Although the airborne **regiment** has no organic tank units, it is normal to attach tank units from one of the airborne division's two tank **battalions** for sustained combat. The attachment of these units makes the airborne **regiment** equivalent to the infantry **regiment** in tank strength. Tank reinforcements usually join the airborne **regiment** when it contacts friendly forces after its airborne assault landing. Tanks attached to * * * prescribed in FM 17-32.

* * * * *

379. BATTALION COMMANDER'S ORDERS

* * * * *

j. Rescinded.

* * * * *

380. ORGANIZATION FOR THE ATTACK

* * * * *

b. The *assault echelon* of the company consists of the troops and equipment initially landed by parachute or **assault transport** to seize the company objective. The entire airborne rifle company, with its organic weapons and transportation, can enter com-

bat by parachute or assault transport; however, it may be necessary to leave some personnel and equipment behind during the assault landing.

* * * * *

381. RECONNAISSANCE

a. The company commander's * * * his attack plans:

- (1) Nature of the drop zone, or landing zone if landing in **assault transport aircraft**.

* * * * *

383. BRIEFING

* * * * *

b. Platoon leaders brief * * * the company briefing. All troops are * * * the company mission.

* * * * *

388. LOADING PERSONNEL

a. The movement from * * * aircraft parking area. Upon arrival at the aircraft parking area, groups move to their assigned airplanes and prepare to load.

* * * * *

c. The following principles * * * for airborne operations:

- (1) Enough men ride in each **assault aircraft** to unlash and unload the **aircraft** at the destination. This prevents confusion * * * recovery of equipment.

* * * * *

390. AIR MOVEMENT TABLE

* * * * *

b. Pathfinder serials precede * * * operate navigational aids. Parachute serials normally precede **transport** serials. This permits the * * * the pilot's signal.

391. ASSAULT LANDING

* * * * *

c. (Superseded) When a company lands by assault transport, it usually lands on a single landing zone as part of the battalion. The time required for landing the company depends on the aircraft type, altitude, number, speed and formation, the skill of the pilots, the terrain, and the landing characteristics of the aircraft. The ground dispersion of the aircraft inside a landing zone depends on the number of aircraft, the obstacles to landing, the landing characteristics of the aircraft, and the skill of their pilots.

d. (Superseded) Upon landing, personnel in the aircraft promptly unload all equipment and supplies.

e. (Superseded) When the company enters combat by parachute, weapons carriers may land by assault aircraft. When this is the case, they may land on the drop zone used by the company and battalion—after the drop zone is cleared of personnel and equipment that would obstruct assault aircraft landings. The weapons carriers may land in separate landing zones under the control of the regimental or higher commander.

396. IDENTIFICATION OF PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT

Positive, rapid, identification * * * identify the contents. Assault transports may be marked to identify the type of equipment they carry and the unit to which the equipment belongs. The airborne division * * * to the enemy.

397. ASSEMBLY

a. Using assembly aids * * * respective assembly areas. Parachutists may also move directly to their unit assembly area without assembling on the drop zone.

b. (Superseded) Troops landed by assault transport promptly unload and move by aircraft loads directly to their assembly areas. There they are organized into tactical units under their own officers. They pass to regimental or higher unit control as soon as the situation permits.

APPENDIX I

RIFLE COMPANY ORDERS FOR ATTACK AND DEFENSE

Section I. ATTACK

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL MATTERS

(Superseded)

Information or instructions to include—

a. A reference to the signal annex if issued with the operation order, or, if no signal annex is issued,

RESTRICTED—Security Information

a reference to the index to the SOI currently in effect. This subparagraph will also include general instructions on the employment of signal communication (wire, radio, messenger, sound, and visual).

b. The location of battalion and company command posts; the tentative subsequent locations of the company commander during the attack; and the axis of signal communication.

c. The location and time of opening advance message centers, march control points, or other places to which messages may be sent.

Section II. DEFENSE

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL MATTERS

(Superseded)

Information or instructions to include—

a. A reference to the signal annex if issued with the operation order, or, if no signal annex is issued, a reference to the index to the SOI currently in effect. This subparagraph will also include general instructions on the employment of signal communication (wire, radio, messenger, sound, and visual).

b. The location of battalion, company, and platoon command posts, and alternate locations.

APPENDIX IV

SUPPORTING FIRES

Section I. GENERAL

3. COMBAT CONTROL

a. General Support. Supporting units are * * * provide maximum support. The heavy weapons company is considered to be in general support when its fires are controlled by the battalion commander, the heavy tank and heavy mortar companies by the regimental commander, the tank battalion and the battalions of the division artillery by the division commander.

* * * * *

Section VI. CLOSE AIR SUPPORT
(Added)

1. MISSION

The mission of close air support units is to give close support to ground units by attacking targets which cannot be effectively engaged by other means, and by augmenting the fires of other supporting weapons.

2. CONTROL

a. Forward Air Controller. Normally, a tactical air control party (TACP) works with an infantry battalion. The TACP consists of a forward air controller (FAC) who is a combat-experienced

~~RESTRICTED~~—Security Information

fighter pilot, his enlisted assistants, and equipment. This team is organized to direct, by visual methods, close air support strikes in the vicinity of forward ground elements. It is a highly mobile element having air-to-ground communication to direct aircraft to targets, and point-to-point communications with the tactical air control center or pertinent tactical air direction centers and the division air liaison officer. At times a forward air controller may be airborne to facilitate control and direction of air strikes. Under these conditions the controller is referred to as a tactical air coordinator.

b. *Functions.* Functions of the TACP are to—

- (1) Direct offensive air support aircraft to targets in the vicinity of friendly positions and to direct visual reconnaissance of specified areas.
- (2) Receive information from reconnaissance or other aircraft for transmission to interested ground force elements.
- (3) Report the observed results of an air strike to the tactical air control center or to the division air liaison officer and to the supported unit.
- (4) Advise the immediate ground commander and his staff on matters pertaining to tactical air operations.
- (5) Assist in making known the location of friendly front line units.

c. *Employment.* The forward air controller normally works in the battalion or regimental FSCC. Frequently it will be necessary for him to accompany

a command group to a forward vantage point or observation post; wherever he may be located he should have ready access to both infantry and artillery communications such as those found in the FSCC or at an observation post. Through artillery communications, the forward air controller can frequently utilize the assistance of the artillery forward observer in marking targets with artillery fire or otherwise directing the aircraft to the target.

3. TARGETS

a. The selection of targets for tactical air strikes is governed by such factors as—

- (1) Availability of tactical aircraft for close support missions.
- (2) Availability and capabilities of other supporting weapons.
- (3) Over-all effect to be realized from destruction or neutralization of the target.
- (4) The capability of available air weapons.
- (5) The potential accuracy of available air weapons.
- (6) Probable air losses compared to expected results.
- (7) Accuracy of intelligence concerning nature and location of target.

b. Typical close air support targets are—

- (1) Gun positions.
- (2) Vehicles, including armor.
- (3) Command posts.
- (4) Concentration of troops.
- (5) Strongly defended positions.

- (6) Pill boxes.
- (7) Defended road blocks.
- (8) Targets which artillery may not be able to engage effectively.

4. METHODS OF MARKING TARGETS

Close air support targets located between the bomb line and friendly troops must be properly identified to the striking aircraft prior to attack. The forward air controller normally accomplishes the target identification and control for these strikes. He must coordinate with, advise, and receive assistance from ground elements. He should work closely with the artillery liaison officer. A forward air controller may identify a target for aircraft through any one or a combination of the methods indicated below.

a. Reference to grids or coordinates on large scale maps or photographic mosaics.

b. Reference to nearby landmarks or terrain features readily discernible to the aircraft pilot.

c. Establish reference points with smoke shells, such as artillery, mortar, grenade, recoilless rifle, and rocket. Colored smoke is preferable.

d. Use of tracers from small arms fire.

e. Use of illuminating shells; for example, artillery, mortar, and naval.

f. Use of searchlights.

g. Use of pyrotechnics.

h. Use of colored panels and other markings to assist navigation of attacking aircraft in the target area and to identify friendly positions.

~~RESTRICTED~~—Security Information

i. Verbal description of the target radioed through a forward air controller to the aircraft.

j. Adjustment of dry-run air attacks to guide the pilot to the target.

k. Radio communication from friendly unit to Army light aircraft which can in turn lead attacking aircraft to the target.

l. Use of electronic equipment (radio homing devices, beacons, etc.).

m. Use of any one or a combination of the above methods to control a tactical air coordinator who in turn, leads attacking aircraft to the target. The tactical air coordinator should be provided a means for marking targets, such as smoke grenades.

5. REQUESTS

a. Requests for close air support normally are submitted through air-ground operations system channels. Since this system does not include personnel at company level, requests are forwarded by the company commander to the battalion S3 or the battalion assistant S3 should he be designated the battalion S3 (Air). In the event infantry communications are inoperative, requests may be submitted through the artillery forward observer, utilizing his artillery communications.

b. Requests for offensive air support from a rifle company commander should include the following information:

- (1) Exact target location.

RESTRICTED—Security Information

- (2) Target description, including sufficient detail to permit selection of appropriate armament.
- (3) Results desired.
- (4) Location of nearest friendly troops with respect to the target.
- (5) Time over target.
- (6) Tactical significance.

[AG 300.7 (11 Oct 52)]

UNCLASSIFIED

RESTRICTED—Security Information

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY OF THE ARMY:

OFFICIAL:

WM E. BERGIN
*Major General, USA,
The Adjutant General*

J. LAWTON COLLINS,
Chief of Staff, United States Army

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army:

Tech Svc (1); Tech Svc Bd (1); AA Comd (2); OS Maj Comd (10) except FECOM (200); Base Comd (2); MDW (2); Log Comd (2); A (10); CHQ. (2); Div (10) except 17 (2); Brig (2); Regt 7 (5); Bn 7 (5); Co 7, 57 (3); Sch (10); USMA (50); PMS&T (1); RTC (3); Mil Mis (1); Arma (1); Mil Dist (3); T/O&E's, 7-17N (10); 7-37N (10).

NG: Same as Active Army.

ORC: Same as Active Army.

For explanation of distribution formula, see SR 310-90-1.

UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED

REDACTED—Security Information

WARNING NOTICES

Authority for release of this document to a foreign government must be secured from the Assistant Chief of Staff, G-2, Department of the Army.

When this document is released to a foreign government, it is released subject to the following conditions: This information is furnished with the understanding that it will not be released to another nation without specific approval of the United States of America, Department of the Army; that it will not be used for other than military purposes; that individual or corporation rights originating in the information whether patented or not will be respected; and that the information will be afforded substantially the same degree of security as afforded by the United States of America, Department of the Army.

This document contains information affecting the national defense of the United States within the meaning of the Espionage Laws, Title 18, U. S. C., sections 793 and 794. The transmission or the revelation of its contents in any manner to an unauthorized person is prohibited by law.

REDACTED

RESTRICTED

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY FIELD MANUAL

FM 7-10

This manual supersedes FM 7-10, 18 March 1944, including C 1, 16 January 1945; and C 2, 5 September 1946; and DA TC 5, 1948

RIFLE COMPANY,
INFANTRY REGIMENT



DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY




OCTOBER, 1949

United States Government Printing Office

Washington : 1949

RESTRICTED


DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
WASHINGTON 25, D. C., 3 October, 1949

FM 7-10 is published for the information and guidance of all concerned.

[AG 300.7 (13 Jun 49)]

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY OF THE ARMY:

J. LAWTON COLLINS

Chief of Staff, United States Army

OFFICIAL:

EDWARD F. WITSELL


Major General

The Adjutant General

DISTRIBUTION:

Tech Sv (2); Arm & Sv Bd (1); OS Maj Comd (2); MDW (2); A (ZI) (20), (Overseas) (5); CHQ (2); D (10) except 17 (2); B (2); R 7, 71 (10); Bn 7, 71 (5); C 7, 71 (3); USMA (50); Sch (10); PMS&T (1); Tng Ctr (3); T/O & E 7-17N (10); 7-37N (10); SPECIAL DISTRIBUTION.

For explanation of distribution formula, see SR 310-90-1.



CONTENTS

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| CHAPTER 1. GENERAL | 1- 13 | 1 |
| CHAPTER 2. TACTICAL MOVEMENTS. | | |
| <i>Section I.</i> General | 14 | 15 |
| <i>II.</i> Movement to contact | 15- 19 | 15 |
| <i>III.</i> Foot marches | 20- 28 | 20 |
| <i>IV.</i> Motor marches | 29- 34 | 29 |
| <i>V.</i> Movement to contact during darkness | 35- 36 | 32 |
| <i>VI.</i> Assembly areas and attack positions | 37- 39 | 35 |
| CHAPTER 3. RIFLE SQUAD. | | |
| <i>Section I.</i> General | 40- 50 | 41 |
| <i>II.</i> Movement to contact | 51- 60 | 45 |
| <i>III.</i> Preparation for the attack | 61- 68 | 61 |
| <i>IV.</i> Attack | 69- 76 | 72 |
| <i>V.</i> Defense | 77- 83 | 85 |
| CHAPTER 4. WEAPONS SQUAD. | | |
| <i>Section I.</i> General | 84- 90 | 94 |
| <i>II.</i> Movement to contact | 91- 92 | 96 |
| <i>III.</i> Preparation for the attack | 93- 99 | 97 |
| <i>IV.</i> Attack | 100-103 | 102 |
| <i>V.</i> Defense | 104-109 | 105 |
| CHAPTER 5. RIFLE PLATOON. | | |
| <i>Section I.</i> General | 110-115 | 110 |
| <i>II.</i> Movement to contact | 116-121 | 112 |
| <i>III.</i> Preparation for the attack | 122-126 | 118 |
| <i>IV.</i> Attack | 127-131 | 131 |
| <i>V.</i> Defense | 132-141 | 141 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| CHAPTER 6. WEAPONS PLATOON. | | |
| <i>Section I.</i> General | 142-150 | 154 |
| II. Movement to contact | 151-152 | 160 |
| III. Preparation for the attack | 153-159 | 161 |
| IV. Attack | 160-163 | 170 |
| V. Defense | 164-170 | 174 |
| CHAPTER 7. RIFLE COMPANY, OFFENSIVE COMBAT. | | |
| <i>Section I.</i> Preparation for the attack | 171-173 | 184 |
| II. Method of attack | 174-187 | 188 |
| III. Attack | 188-194 | 205 |
| IV. Reserve rifle company in the attack | 195-199 | 214 |
| V. Night attack | 200-225 | 217 |
| VI. Attack of a river line | 226-240 | 234 |
| VII. Attack in woods | 241-244 | 245 |
| VIII. Raids | 245-262 | 250 |
| IX. Infiltration | 263-265 | 257 |
| X. Other offensive operations | 266 | 262 |
| CHAPTER 8. RIFLE COMPANY, DEFENSIVE COMBAT. | | |
| <i>Section I.</i> General | 267-269 | 263 |
| II. Front-line rifle company | 270-293 | 268 |
| III. Reserve rifle company | 294-307 | 295 |
| IV. Other defensive operations | 308-316 | 302 |
| V. Security missions | 317-327 | 311 |
| VI. Retrograde movements | 328-344 | 324 |
| CHAPTER 9. COMMUNICATION | 345-350 | 336 |
| CHAPTER 10. ADMINISTRATION. | | |
| <i>Section I.</i> Personnel administration | 351 | 344 |
| II. Supply | 352-360 | 345 |
| III. Medical service | 361-365 | 353 |
| IV. Motor maintenance | 366-368 | 355 |
| CHAPTER 11. AIRBORNE RIFLE COMPANY. | | |
| <i>Section I.</i> General | 369-377 | 357 |
| II. Preparations for the airborne attack | 378-388 | 363 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| <i>III.</i> Air movement, landing, and reorganization . . . | 389-402 | 373 |
| <i>IV.</i> Accomplishment of ground mission | 403-410 | 381 |
| | | |
| APPENDIX I. RIFLE COMPANY ORDERS FOR ATTACK AND DEFENSE | | 388 |
| II. COMBAT FORMATIONS | | 393 |
| III. SIGNALS | | 413 |
| IV. SUPPORTING FIRES | | 419 |
| V. WEAPONS EMPLACEMENTS | | 433 |
| VI. TRAINING PROGRAM | | 451 |
| VII. FIELD EXERCISES | | 471 |
| VIII. REFERENCES | | 534 |
| INDEX | | 538 |

RESTRICTED

This manual supersedes FM 7-10, 18 March 1944, including C 1, 16 January 1945, and C 2, 5 September 1946; and DA TC 5, 1948

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL

1. PURPOSE AND SCOPE. a. This manual is a guide to the tactical employment of the rifle company and its elements. It covers organization, weapons, individual duties, movement to contact, offensive action, defensive action, retrograde movements, operations under special terrain conditions, supply evacuation, maintenance, and communication. Chapter 11, which pertains to the airborne rifle company, is included as an additional guide for the airborne rifle company commander.

b. The procedures described in this manual are based on normal conditions. They represent the best methods of accomplishing the mission. In battle, ideal conditions do not exist. Battlefield confusion and the lack of adequate time for planning and carrying out plans require positive leadership, initiative, and flexibility by leaders.

2. MISSION. The mission of the rifle company in the attack is to close with the enemy and destroy or capture him. The mission of the rifle company

in defense is to repel the enemy assault by fire or close combat.

3. CHARACTERISTICS OF INFANTRY. a. The infantry essentially is an arm of close combat. It fights by combining fire, maneuver, and shock action. By fire, it inflicts losses on the enemy and neutralizes his combat power; by maneuver, it closes with the enemy and makes its fire more effective; by shock action, it completes the destruction of the enemy in close combat.

b. Infantry is capable of limited independent action by the use of its own weapons. Its offensive power decreases when its freedom of maneuver is limited or when it is opposed by an organized defense. Under these conditions or against a force of combined arms, infantry fire power is reinforced by the support of artillery, tanks, and other arms. The defensive power of infantry reaches its maximum when it occupies an organized defensive position or when the enemy's freedom of maneuver is limited.

c. Infantry maneuvers on difficult ground by moving in small, inconspicuous formations and by taking advantage of covered routes of approach and small irregularities in the terrain. By skilled use of the terrain, infantry units achieve maximum fire effect, conserve personnel, conceal movement, and permit the maneuver of their reserve.

4. ORGANIZATION. The rifle company is the basic infantry unit with tactical, administrative, and supply functions. It consists of a company head-

quarters, three rifle platoons, and one weapons platoon (see fig. 1). (For details of organization and equipment, see the current Table of Organization and Equipment 7-17.)

a. The *company headquarters* consists of a command group and an administrative group. The personnel of these groups help the company commander perform his tactical, administrative, and supply duties.

b. The *rifle platoon* consists of a platoon headquarters, three rifle squads, and one weapons squad.

c. The *weapons platoon* consists of a platoon headquarters, one 60-mm mortar section, and one 57-mm rifle section.

5. INDIVIDUAL WEAPONS. Individual weapons of the company are the rifle, bayonet, carbine, pistol, hand grenades, and rifle grenades. (For description and characteristics of these weapons see FM's 23-5, 23-7, 23-25, 23-30, and 23-35.)

a. **Rifle.** The rifle is the principal individual weapon. Because of its range, ease of operation, and light weight, it is well adapted for use in all types of infantry combat. These characteristics enable a rifleman or a group of riflemen to deliver quickly a large volume of accurate fire on a desired target within range.

b. **Sniper's rifle.** One rifle equipped with a telescopic sight is furnished each rifle squad. It is used by the sniper.

c. **Bayonet.** The bayonet is a weapon of close combat. Skill in its use, acquired by training, gives

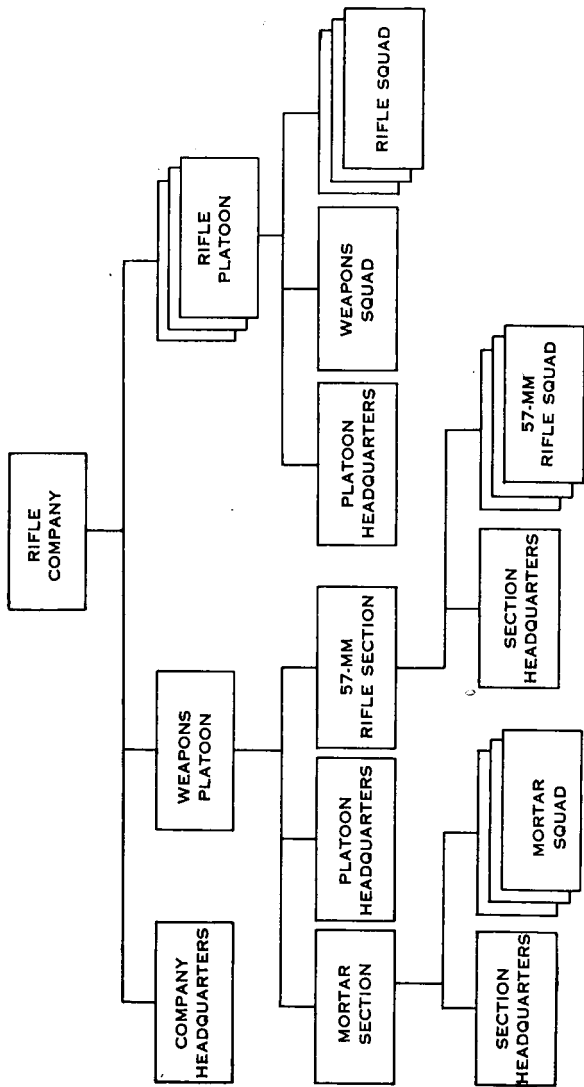


Figure 1. Infantry rifle company..

the infantryman confidence in his ability to close with the enemy.

d. Carbine. The carbine can fire in greater volume and more accurately than the pistol. Its effective range is 300 yards. It is used to protect the men of crew-served weapons and others who are armed with it.

e. Pistol. The automatic pistol is used for individual defense by men not armed with the rifle or carbine. It is effective at ranges less than 50 yards.

f. Hand grenades. The fragmentation hand grenade is used against enemy personnel, particularly those manning crew-served weapons, who are protected from rifle fire and are within the minimum range of the high-angle rifle grenade.

g. Rifle grenades. Rifle grenades, propelled by the rifle or carbine from a launcher attached to it, are more accurate than hand grenades and have a longer range. Rifle grenades are effective against armored vehicles, emplacements, buildings, and personnel. Fragmentation hand grenades become rifle grenades when used with the launcher.

6. CREW-SERVED WEAPONS. Rifle company crew-served weapons are the 57-mm rifle, the 60-mm mortar, the light machine gun, the caliber .50 machine gun, the automatic rifle, and the rocket launcher. (For their description and characteristics, see FM's 23-15, 23-32, 23-55, 23-65, 23-80, and 23-85.)

a. The *57-mm rifle* is used in close support of rifle units for direct fire against definitely located point targets. It has a maximum range of 4,340

yards, but it seldom is used at ranges greater than 800 yards against moving targets and 1,900 yards against stationary point targets. Its cartridge HE, AT (high explosive, antitank) penetrates approximately 3 inches of armor.

b. The *60-mm mortar* is used for close-in support of rifle units. It may be used against area targets. Its maximum range is 1,985 yards. Because of dispersion, it rarely engages point targets more distant than 1,000 yards.

c. The *light machine gun* is used to supplement rifle fires by placing short, concentrated bursts of fire upon known or suspected enemy groups of men.

d. The *caliber .50 machine gun* is mounted on a vehicle and is used against enemy personnel, vehicles, and low-flying aircraft (see par. 12). The caliber .50 machine gun fires ball, armor piercing incendiary (API), tracer, and armor piercing (AP) ammunition. The machine gun can be mounted on a tripod and fired as a ground weapon.

e. The *automatic rifle* provides the rifle squad with an easily controlled and maneuverable weapon capable of a large volume of fire. It is used against ground targets in a manner similar to the light machine gun. Its light weight permits the automatic rifleman to maintain the same rate of advance as the riflemen.

f. The *rocket launchers* and high explosive rockets are used primarily against armored vehicles; secondary targets include crew-served weapons, pillbox embrasures, and groups of men.

7. TYPES OF POSITIONS FOR CREW-SERVED WEAPONS. a. **Firing positions.** The 57-mm rifle, the 60-mm mortar, the light machine gun, and the rocket launcher occupy firing positions to cover assigned sectors of fire or target areas. These firing positions are classified as primary, alternate, and supplementary.

- (1) A *primary* firing position offers the best conditions for the accomplishment of the assigned mission.
- (2) An *alternate* firing position is used for firing on primary targets when the primary firing position cannot be defended or is unsuitable for carrying out the assigned mission.
- (3) A *supplementary* firing position is used for firing on secondary targets which cannot be reached from the primary or alternate firing positions.

b. **Cover positions.** Whenever possible, leaders select cover positions providing defilade and concealment for men and weapons not actively fighting the enemy.

c. **Off-carrier position.** The off-carrier position is the point at which the weapons and the initial supply of ammunition of the weapons platoon are removed from the carrier for hand carry to the firing or cover position. The off-carrier position provides defilade and concealment for men and carriers, and it is as close to the firing position as possible.

8. TRANSPORTATION. The organic transportation of the rifle company consists of four 1/4-ton trucks,

four $\frac{1}{4}$ -ton trailers, one $2\frac{1}{2}$ -ton truck, and one 1-ton trailer. One $\frac{1}{4}$ -ton truck is used by the company commander for command and reconnaissance. Another is used during the movement phase to transport the weapons and extra ammunition of the weapons squads of the rifle platoons. This vehicle also is used for supply of ammunition to the rifle platoons, or for evacuation. One $2\frac{1}{2}$ -ton truck (with 1-ton trailer) is used as a company general utility vehicle. Two $\frac{1}{4}$ -ton trucks are assigned to the weapons platoon to transport its weapons and ammunition.

9. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT. The rifle company operates according to the battalion commander's plan. The company commander bases his plan on his mission, and coordinates the actions of his platoons and the fire of all weapons at his disposal. The rifle company may be assigned to the assault echelon or to the battalion reserve. When the company is acting alone, the company commander uses his company according to his mission, and he makes more decisions on his own initiative than he does when operating with the battalion. He notifies his commander promptly of major decisions and frequently reports his company's location and progress.

10. DUTIES OF THE COMPANY COMMANDER. a. The company commander commands his company. By his character and skill, he gives positive leadership to his command and maintains its discipline, welfare, and contentment. He actively supervises the training of all elements of his company and in-

sures proper administration and the procurement and maintenance of equipment. To assist him in carrying out these responsibilities, he makes full use of the company's chain of command. In assigning duties to his leaders, he considers their individual capabilities and personalities. In his leaders, he develops a high degree of initiative and personal responsibility—building his company into a well-coordinated team.

b. He continually estimates the situation, having in mind all practicable courses of action. By directive, or by recommendation to his commander, he initiates action on any matter pertaining to his company, and follows this action through by vigorous execution of the most simple effective course, until his mission is accomplished.

c. To accomplish his mission, he uses all means at his command and requests additional means whenever they can be well used in his area of responsibility. Without awaiting orders, he coordinates with any other unit or agency.

d. In the battle area, he uses observation, patrols, liaison, and personal reconnaissance to maintain security and prepare for future operations. He assigns definite missions to his leaders, and keeps informed of their actions in order to give assistance when needed and to insure the success of his plan. He goes where he can best control the action of his company as a whole, yet at critical times he is personally present where he can best influence the action. He alone is responsible to his commander for all that his company does or fails to do.

11. COMPANY HEADQUARTERS. a. Command group.

- (1) The *company commander* uses the command group to assist him in the control of his company.
- (2) The *executive officer* keeps abreast of the tactical situation and performs duties assigned to him by the company commander. He assumes command of the company if the company commander becomes a casualty. He takes charge of the command post and maintains communication with the platoons and with the company and battalion commanders. He notifies appropriate commanders of the change in the command post location. He controls the movement of vehicles within the company area and supervises the supply of ammunition to the platoons.
- (3) The *first sergeant* assists the company commander by executing any assigned duties. His duties may vary from administrative and supply matters to commanding a platoon. Ordinarily he assists the executive officer and represents him during his temporary absence from the command post.
- (4) The *company clerk* is the chief assistant to the first sergeant.
- (5) The *communication sergeant* is trained in the use and maintenance of communication equipment in the company, and he trains his men to operate this equipment. He establishes the company communica-

tion system and receives and dispatches messengers.

- (6) The *radio operators* operate the two company radios which are in the battalion net (one at the company command post and one with the company commander), and they receive and transmit messages to and from the company commander.
- (7) The *bugler* is the chief assistant to the communication sergeant. He operates the company switchboard.
- (8) The *company messengers* are alternate radio operators, linemen, and switchboard operators. One messenger accompanies the company commander and drives his vehicle; one is stationed at the company command post; and one operates from the battalion command post.
- (9) The *orderlies* perform duties assigned to them by the company commander. One may be used as a radio operator, switchboard operator, lineman, or messenger. The other orderly, a member of the administrative group, assists supply personnel.

b. Administrative group. For a discussion of the duties of the administrative group, see paragraph 352.

12. ANTI-AIRCRAFT SECURITY. In defense against an enemy air attack, the rifle company usually relies on passive means of defense, such as dispersion, concealment, camouflage, and the use of cover.

(See fig. 2.) The success of such means depends on an adequate warning system, closely coordinated with the general aircraft warning system of the area. In some situations, a rifle company may be permitted to fire at positively identified enemy aircraft. The caliber .50 machine gun is the company's most effective weapon for this purpose; however, all small arms may be used.

13. ANTITANK DEFENSE. a. The rifle company defends itself against tanks by using antitank weapons to destroy the tanks and obstacles. Timely warning is the key factor in defense against a tank attack; maximum means of communication are used to alert all men of the company. Antitank weapons in the rifle company include antitank and white phosphorous (WP) rifle grenades, rocket launchers, and 57-mm rifles. Additional means which may be provided by higher commanders include tanks, 75-mm rifles, and antitank mines. In close combat with enemy tanks, white phosphorous grenades, particularly white phosphorous rifle grenades, are extremely effective in denying observation to tank crews and in the psychological effect upon these crews.

b. Individual passive means of defense against tanks include the use of all natural obstacles such as streams, stumps, large trees, boulders, and swampy or marshy ground. In static situations, fox holes may be dug. When attacked by tanks, defending riflemen continue to fire on enemy infantry until forced to take cover to protect themselves and their weapons from the crushing action



Figure 2. The company defends against aircraft by the use of dispersion, concealment, camouflage, and cover.

of the tanks. When enemy infantry is not present, small-arms fire is directed against tank vision slits and tank crews operating with open hatches.

CHAPTER 2

TACTICAL MOVEMENTS

Section I. GENERAL

14. GENERAL. a. For doctrines governing troop movements, see FM 100-5. For details of march hygiene, see FM 21-10.

b. Tactical movements consist of—

(1) Movement to contact.

(2) Relocation of troops according to operational plans. (The principles and technique of movement, as outlined in this chapter, are applicable to movements involving the relocation of troops.)

(3) Retrograde movement (see pars. 328 to 344).

Section II. MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

15. DEFINITION. Movement to contact is the ground movement in a theater of operations just before combat to place troops in a position to close with the enemy. It does not include troop movement by air or by sea when security during the movement is provided by the Air Force or by the Navy.

16. CLASSIFICATION. Movements to contact are

uncovered or covered. An *uncovered movement* to contact is one made when little or no security is provided by friendly forces. It ends when direct ground contact with the enemy is gained. A *covered movement* to contact is one made behind security forces. It is used to move a unit to an assigned location to relieve or reinforce troops already in contact with the enemy. It ends when the location is occupied.

17. PHASES. a. Movement to contact normally is conducted in three phases—

- (1) First phase (contact remote)—enemy direct ground action is remote.
- (2) Second phase (contact improbable)—enemy direct ground action is improbable.
- (3) Third phase (contact imminent)—enemy direct ground action is imminent.

b. These phases may or may not follow this sequence; the phase depends on the commander's estimate of the situation. The commander makes a continuous estimate of the situation in order to adequately dispose the units of his column at the proper time and place to meet the enemy situation. The passage from one phase to another is made when the commander decides that the enemy is close enough to increase his readiness for action.

18. FORMATIONS. a. **Route column.** During the contact remote phase of movement to contact, administrative considerations govern and the movement is made in route column. In route column, the company normally moves by rail or motor. Route col-

umn ends when the commander decides that he must group his units tactically before continuing the movement.

b. Tactical column. During the contact improbable phase of movement to contact, both tactical and administrative considerations govern, and the movement is made in tactical column. Units are grouped tactically to permit the prompt use of combat formations or the orderly occupation of and departure from an assembly area. The company moves as a unit, either by foot or motor. Within the company, the grouping depends on the probable future mission of the company. (For example, elements of the weapons platoon may move with the rifle elements which they support.) Tactical column ends when the company deploys or when it occupies an assembly area.

c. Approach march. During the contact imminent phase of movement to contact, tactical considerations govern and the movement is made in the approach march. Elements whose contact with the enemy is imminent are deployed in a suitable tactical formation. Other elements continue in tactical column, and they in turn move in the approach march when their contact with the enemy is imminent. Any deployed formation, including deployment in depth, may be used. For example, the leading company of an advance guard battalion normally uses the deployed formation described in paragraph 22. Such a formation varies according to the strength of the screening force, the terrain, the enemy disposition and strength, and other existing conditions. The approach march ends when

contact is made with the enemy or when an attack position is occupied.

19. CONTROL. a. Control of the company during movement to contact depends primarily on communication. All of the company's communication facilities are used to the maximum, consistent with security, to assist in maintaining this control.

b. March objectives and phase lines assist the commander in controlling his unit. A march objective is a recognizable place toward which the march of a single column is directed. Frequently, high ground, road junctions, streams, and similar features identify usable march objectives. A phase line is a line generally perpendicular to the direction of advance. It usually passes through the march objectives of several columns marching abreast. When a phase line is reached, commanders report the fact to the next higher commander. Columns usually continue to the next phase line; however, they may be directed not to go beyond a given phase line until a specified time or until the occurrence of a particular event. Thus the phase line is a means of control and coordination. (See fig. 3.)

c. Phase lines for the company ordinarily are prescribed by the battalion commander. Distances between phase lines depend on the type of movement, the terrain, the visibility, and the imminence of enemy contact. The company usually reports its progress periodically.

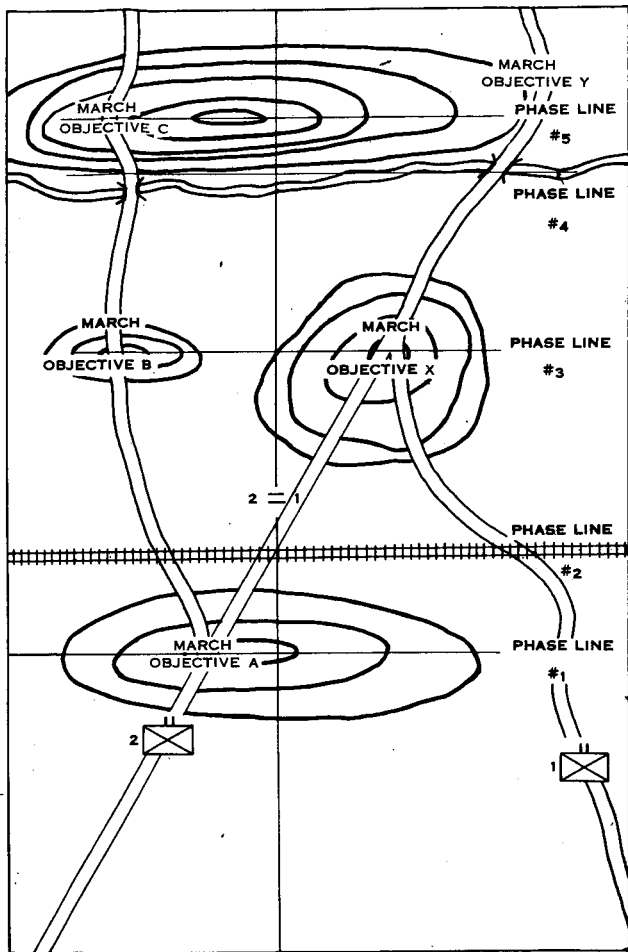


Figure 3. March objectives and phase lines help control the column during movement.

Section III. FOOT MARCHES

20. GENERAL. During a foot march, the company may form a part of the main body, it may act as security for a larger unit, or it may move as an independent unit.

21. THE COMPANY AS PART OF THE MAIN BODY.

a. The movement is in tactical column. The company usually marches in a column of two's, one file on each side of the road, and maintains its tactical unity. The company's officers and noncommissioned officers enforce march discipline. The leading company maintains the rate of march prescribed by the battalion commander; other companies maintain their position in the column. Ordinarily the company commander is at the head of his company; however, he goes wherever his presence is required.

b. Company motor vehicles march in separate serials under regimental or battalion control. When under regimental control, the serials usually move by bounds in rear of the regimental foot column; when under battalion control, the serials usually move by bounds in rear of the battalion foot elements.

c. The march ends upon arrival in the assembly area or attack position; however, the company may be forced to go directly into the attack from the tactical column.

22. THE COMPANY AS THE SUPPORT OF AN ADVANCE GUARD BATTALION.

a. The mission of a

company as the support of an advance guard battalion is to prevent unnecessary delay of the battalion and to protect the battalion against surprise and enemy ground action from the front. For details concerning the company as the support of a rear guard battalion, see paragraph 327.

b. The support company usually is reinforced by tanks, machine guns, 75-mm rifles, and 81-mm mortars. A tank platoon (rarely a section) may be attached; machine gun and 75-mm rifle sections or platoons normally are attached. The 81-mm mortar platoon usually is placed in direct support of the company, and a mortar observer moves with the advance party. Reconnaissance elements of engineers, artillery forward observers, heavy mortar observers, and elements of the battalion pioneer and ammunition platoon march with the support.

c. The advance guard battalion, less the support, constitute the advance guard reserve. The support marches in three groups ahead of the advance guard reserve. From rear to front, these groups are: the *support proper*, the *advance party*, and the *point*. (See fig. 4.) The support commander sends forward an advance party, which seldom exceeds a platoon in strength. The advance party sends forward a point, usually a squad. Distances between elements of the advance guard vary according to the situation, the terrain, and the visibility. These distances are great enough to allow each succeeding element to deploy without serious interference from the enemy when contact is made. However, the distances are not great enough to

prevent each element from rapidly assisting the element in front of it.

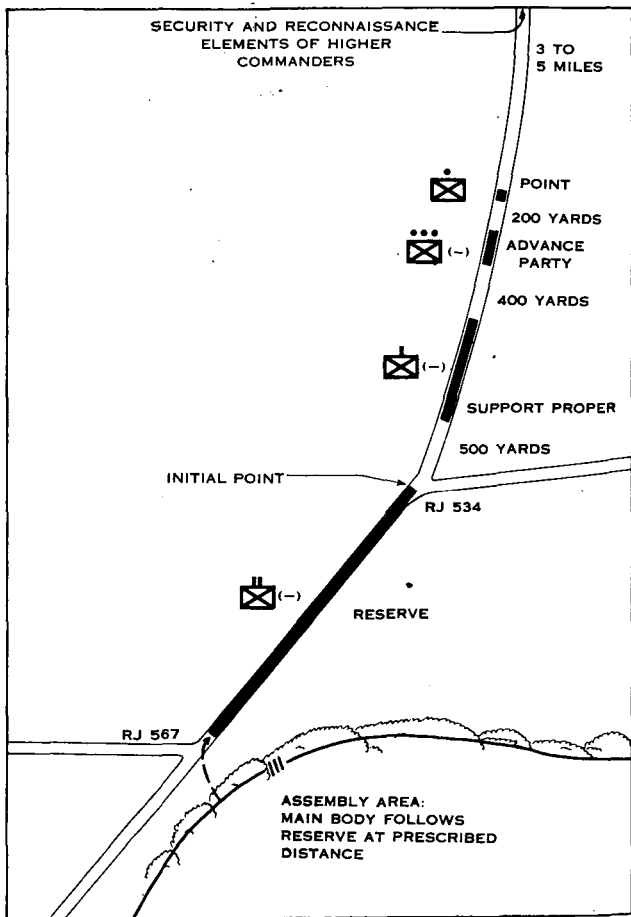


Figure 4. An initial advance guard formation.

d. Average road spaces and distances between elements of an advance guard in a daylight march are approximately as follows:

| Element | Strength | Average road space in yards | Average distance to next succeeding element in yards, daylight |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Point | Squad | 50 | 200 |
| Advance party . . | Platoon (less one squad). | 75 | 400 |
| Support proper . | Rifle company (less one platoon). | 150 | 500 |

At night or under conditions of poor visibility, distances may be considerably less; in open country, distances may be greater.

23. THE SUPPORT PROPER. The support proper usually consists of a reinforced rifle company less the platoon sent forward as the advance party. Contact with the advance party is maintained by radio and by connecting files sent forward from the support proper. The support proper usually marches in two single-file columns, one on each side of the road, with approximately two paces between men. The support commander ordinarily marches at the head of the support proper; however, he goes wherever his presence is required. He rapidly informs the advance guard commander of any changes in the situation.

24. THE ADVANCE PARTY. The advance party consists of one rifle platoon, reinforced, less one squad sent forward as the point. Contact is maintained with the point by radio and by connecting files sent forward by the advance party. The advance party usually marches in two single-file columns, one on each side of the road, with approximately five paces between men. Reinforcements to the advance party may include attached 57-mm rifles, machine guns, and tanks. Observers from the artillery, heavy mortars, and 81-mm mortars may march with the advance party. The advance party commander usually marches at the head of the advance party.

25. THE POINT. The point consists of one rifle squad, which normally is not reinforced. It is the leading element of the advance guard. The point marches in two single-file columns, one on each side of the road, with at least ten paces between men. (See fig. 5.)

26. ACTION OF THE SUPPORT. a. Conduct. Unless otherwise ordered, the support company attacks without hesitation to drive off the enemy or envelop his position. The point immediately deploys and attacks the resistance. The advance party platoon leader joins the point squad leader. After making a rapid reconnaissance and an estimate of the situation, the platoon leader commits the advance party if the point cannot overcome the resistance. The support company commander comes forward and, through similar action, when the

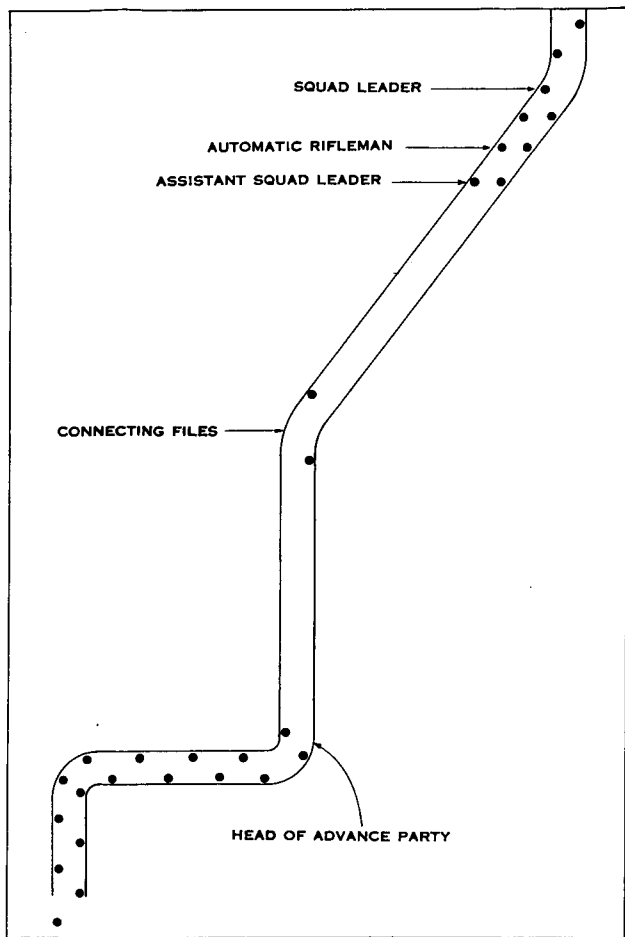


Figure 5. Disposition of the point of an advance party.

situation warrants, commits the support. Whenever possible, the advance party and support attack by a quick envelopment rather than by frontal attack. If the support is unable to reduce the enemy's resistance, it immobilizes him by fire and locates his flanks. If the enemy withdraws or is destroyed without requiring the advance guard reserve to fight, the support company promptly resumes its advance.

b. Security. The commander of each element of the support company always is responsible for the close-in security of his command. The security used depends on the mission, the terrain, and the expected enemy action.

- (1) *Frontal security* may be provided by elements of the intelligence and reconnaissance platoon or by motorized detachments from the advance guard. The support commander usually receives information from these advanced elements through the advance guard commander.
- (2) *Flank security* for the point and the advance party normally is limited to observation to the flanks. When possible, protection up to 500 yards is provided by motorized flank guards from the support proper. Flank guards are sent to points which allow observation of the support or which provide concealment for hostile reconnaissance or harassing detachments. If the terrain is such that vehicles cannot move cross country, the flank guards leave their vehicles on the road and go on

foot to selected observation points on the flanks. When the support proper passes, the flank guards move rapidly by vehicle to the head of the column.

- (3) During halts, the support establishes its own security. Each element promptly posts observers to the front and flanks to prevent enemy forces from approaching undetected.

27. THE COMPANY AS ADVANCE GUARD OF A BATTALION MARCHING ALONE. When a battalion conducts an independent march, the battalion commander designates one rifle company as the advance guard company. The mission, formation, and operation of this advance guard company resemble those of a rifle company designated as the support of an advance guard battalion.

28. THE COMPANY AS FLANK GUARD OF A LARGER FORCE. a. The mission of a flank guard company is to protect the main body from hostile ground observation and surprise ground attack from the flank. In the event of an attack from the flank, this mission requires action which permits the uninterrupted passage of the main body from the area or gives the main body time to deploy.

b. The flank guard company may be reinforced by elements of the regimental intelligence and reconnaissance platoon, the tank company, the heavy weapons company, and the engineers. Forward observers from the heavy mortar company and artillery also may accompany the flank guard

company. Ordinarily the flank guard company has special matériel such as antitank mines, demolitions, and means for constructing obstacles.

c. The formation used by the flank guard company depends on the terrain, the availability of parallel routes, the expected enemy action, and the method of travel. When the flank guard company marches on foot, its formation usually resembles that used by a company acting as the support of an advance guard battalion. (See par. 22.) The company commander maintains a centrally located reserve which he uses to influence the action whenever necessary. Because of the difficulty in keeping up with the main body, flank guard companies usually are motorized.

d. Movement is made either by maintaining a rate of march equal to that of the main body or by occupying successive objectives. Close liaison with the main body is maintained by patrols and radio.

e. Depending on the terrain and the expected enemy action, the flank guard company may march parallel to the main column or it may occupy a series of defensive positions on the flank. When the flank guard company maintains a rate of march equal to that of the main body, it operates like the support company of an advance guard battalion. When occupying a series of defensive positions, it covers routes of expected enemy approach until the main body passes. It may construct road blocks and obstacles along ridges, stream lines, and defiles. In this type of operation, the flank guard is partially motorized and occupies its positions by a series of leap-frog movements. A flank guard com-

pany maintains ground security measures similar to an advance guard support company. (See par. 22.)

Section IV. MOTOR MARCHES

29. GENERAL. When moving by motor, the company may form part of the main body, may act as a security force of a larger unit, or it may move as an independent unit. When it acts as a security force of a larger unit, it may be detailed as an advance or flank guard or a motorized detachment.

30. THE COMPANY AS PART OF THE MAIN BODY OF A LARGER FORCE. In tactical column when moving by vehicle as part of the main body, the rifle company conducts its march according to orders and standing operating procedure. The vehicles normally move with the company. Caliber .50 machine guns are mounted for antiaircraft protection, and each vehicle maintains an air guard. Additional antitank protection normally is provided by elements of the regimental tank company.

31. THE COMPANY AS SUPPORT OF THE ADVANCE GUARD BATTALION. For missions and composition, see paragraph 22.

a. The reinforced rifle company, as the motorized support of the advance guard battalion, usually is preceded by the regimental intelligence and reconnaissance platoon or reconnaissance elements of higher commanders. These reconnaissance elements have the mission of finding the enemy and

are followed by the support at enough distance (3 miles or more) to allow the support to detruck and deploy.

b. The support sends forward an advance party (reinforced rifle platoon), which precedes the support proper by approximately 5 minutes. The advance party does not send forward a point as it does on a foot march. However, the company commander maintains contact with the advance reconnaissance elements by patrols and radio.

c. The methods of control and operation are similar to those used by a company on foot (see par. 22). Because of the rapid rate of movement, close liaison between column elements is maintained to prevent closing up at unexpected halts. Distance between vehicles and elements within the support depends on the visibility, the terrain, and the expected enemy action.

32. THE COMPANY AS ADVANCE GUARD OF A BATTALION MARCHING ALONE. The mission, formation, composition, and operation of a motorized advance guard company resemble those of the support of a motorized advance guard battalion. (See par. 31.)

33. THE COMPANY AS FLANK GUARD OF A LARGER FORCE. a. *When the larger force is motorized,* the mission and organization of a motorized flank guard of a larger motorized force resemble those of a flank guard company on foot. (See par. 28.) This flank guard company moves on a suitable parallel route in a formation similar to that of a support of a motorized advance guard battalion.

b. *When the larger force is on foot*, the mission and composition of the motorized flank guard company resemble those of a flank company on foot. The formation is a series of motorized detachments. The control, as for a flank guard on foot, is as described in paragraph 28. The motorized flank guard company operates by having each motorized detachment block an avenue of expected enemy approach. Since roads are the best route of approach, they are given priority. The occupation of these flank positions normally is made in advance of the march of the main body. Engineers are used to help construct road blocks and obstacles. When the tail of the main column passes a particular flank position, the motorized detachment occupying that position leapfrogs to another position. In case of an enemy attack, the main body commander is notified and the flank guard delays the advance of the enemy until the main body deploys, or passes a designated point. The motorized flank guard company commander normally maintains a central reserve, located to reinforce any detachment as the need arises.

34. THE COMPANY AS A MOTORIZED DETACHMENT.

a. The rifle company detailed as a motorized detachment has the mission of reconnoitering the route of advance and protecting the main body. The company may be reinforced by elements of the regimental intelligence and reconnaissance platoon, the tank company, the battalion heavy weapons company, engineers, communication and medi-

cal personnel, and forward observers from the heavy mortar company and the artillery.

b. The formation used depends on the terrain and the expected enemy action. Elements are arranged in the column in the order of their expected use. This arrangement allows immediate action when small enemy detachments are met, and it assists in the rapid development of the enemy position when resistance is deliberate. Control is maintained by the assignment of successive march objectives and phase lines. Radio is the principal means of communication within the motorized detachments and with the main body commander.

c. The motorized detachment operates ahead of the advance guard at a distance prescribed by the main body commander. Advances are made by bounds from one terrain feature to the next. A small element, covered by the other elements of the detachment, moves rapidly to a selected terrain feature. After the small element reaches the terrain feature, it is followed by the remainder of the detachment. If corps or division reconnaissance elements are operating to the front of the motorized detachment, the motorized detachment maintains liaison with them. A motorized detachment maintains ground security similar to the support of an advance guard. (See par. 22.)

Section V. MOVEMENT TO CONTACT DURING DARKNESS

35. UNCOVERED MOVEMENT DURING DARKNESS.

a. **General.** Although an uncovered movement to contact normally is made in daylight, it may be

necessary or desirable in some situations to make the movement or continue it during darkness. The movement may occur during a period of enemy air superiority or during an envelopment, exploitation, or pursuit. To preserve secrecy, to seize terrain by surprise, or to deny the enemy the time to organize delaying positions, a company may be ordered to begin or continue its movement, either on foot or in vehicles, during darkness.

b. March rate. On good roads, the march rate for foot troops approximates that of the day rate of march under the same conditions. On poor roads, on dark nights, or in unfavorable weather, the rate of march may be reduced considerably. If the movement is made by vehicles, the speed is reduced greatly.

c. Formations. The formation used for an uncovered movement to contact at night depends on enemy information, the method of travel, the visibility, and the terrain. Usually a compact column is used, and the distance between elements is less than in a daylight move.

d. Control.

- (1) Measures are taken to maintain direction and control at night. The loss of direction may split a column into several parts, or it may result in loss of secrecy or in failure to reach the march objective before daylight. It may cause the company to fail to accomplish its mission.
- (2) If time and the situation permit, a reconnaissance of the route is made during daylight. If a daylight reconnaissance is

impossible, the company commander makes a thorough map reconnaissance to pick out march objectives and any other definite terrain feature which assists in maintaining direction during a night march.

- (3) During the march, leaders closely check march discipline, maintenance of contact, control, and direction. Routes are marked carefully and guides are posted by leading elements to assist successive elements. Company elements are well closed up, and the distances between men are greatly reduced.
- (4) During movement on a dark night, special means of identification may be used to prevent men from becoming lost. For instance, each man can tie a white handkerchief or undershirt on the rear of his belt to guide the man to his rear.

e. **Secrecy.** In an uncovered movement to contact at night, secrecy is of paramount importance. Measures for preserving secrecy during an uncovered night march include—

- (1) Prohibiting smoking.
- (2) Prohibiting the use of lights.
- (3) Holding noises to a minimum.
- (4) Maintaining radio silence until enemy contact is made.
- (5) Refraining from firing upon hostile aircraft.

f. **Security.**

- (1) Particular attention is paid to security

during an uncovered movement to contact at night. Factors determining the strength of the security elements include—

- (a) Imminence of the enemy.
 - (b) Strength and type of screening force (if any) and the distance it is operating ahead of the company.
 - (c) Terrain.
 - (d) Company mission.
- (2) Ordinarily, the rifle company sends out security elements to the front and flanks. These security detachments prevent the enemy from ambushing or surprising the column.

36. COVERED MOVEMENT DURING DARKNESS. a.

When made at night, the covered movement to contact is conducted like that used in daylight. Night movements are made when enemy air superiority or artillery prevents daylight movements, or when it is desirable to relocate troops during darkness to maintain secrecy.

b. A covered movement during darkness usually is preceded by a daylight reconnaissance of the route. Guides are posted to keep the column on the route. The rate of march, formations, control measures, and secrecy measures resemble those discussed in paragraph 35.

Section VI. ASSEMBLY AREAS AND ATTACK POSITIONS

37. ASSEMBLY AREAS. a. Assembly areas are loca-

tions where the elements of a command are assembled preparatory to further tactical action. If possible, assembly areas are located within easy marching time (approximately 1 hour) of the attack position.

b. Desirable characteristics of an assembly area include—

- (1) Concealment from hostile air and ground observation.
- (2) Cover from direct fire.
- (3) Enough space for the proper dispersal of all organic and attached or supporting elements of the unit.
- (4) More than one good route of entrance and exit.
- (5) Turn-arounds and hard standing for vehicles.
- (6) Natural obstacles for protection against a tank attack.

c. The battalion commander assigns the company an assembly area within the battalion assembly area. He selects it after considering the probable future use of the company. The company commander similarly assigns platoon assembly areas. (See fig. 6.)

d. To avoid confusion and to prevent delaying other units, the company commander designates a noncommissioned officer and guides to accompany the battalion quartering party. The noncommissioned officer is responsible for suballotting the area to platoons and posting guides to lead them to their respective areas.

e. In the assembly area, individuals and units

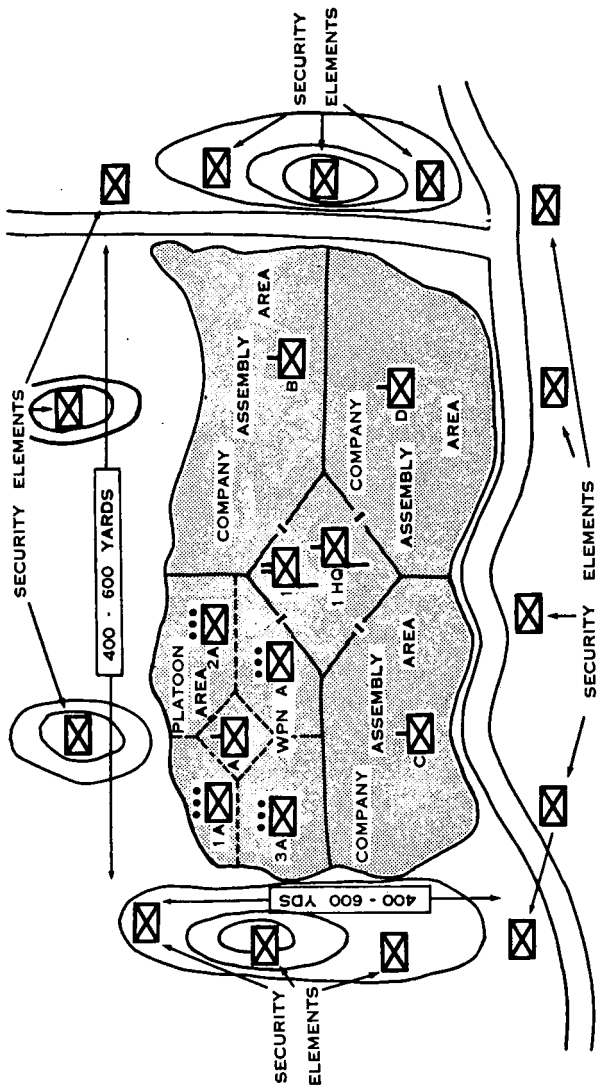


Figure 6. Assembly area.

establish and maintain camouflage and security. The primary activity in the assembly area is the preparation for tactical action. Reconnaissance, detailed plans, and coordination are made as complete as possible, and attack orders usually are issued while the troops are in the assembly area. Equipment not needed for combat is collected and stacked. Necessary vehicles join their units. Troops are given the maximum rest consistent with adequate briefing and preparation for the contemplated operation. Combat loads of ammunition and rations are issued. (See fig. 7.)

38. ATTACK POSITIONS. a. The company attack position is the last covered and concealed position occupied by the company before crossing the line of departure. Within the company position are the assault platoon attack positions and the support platoon location. Based on the plan of attack and the terrain, the company is assigned an attack position by the battalion commander. The company commander designates platoon attack positions within the company position.

b. The selection of an attack position is based on the expected use of the unit; its selection aids the movement to the line of departure. The desired characteristics of an attack position resemble those of an assembly area. Cover from enemy small-arms fire is available.

c. The primary activity in the attack position is the final preparation and coordination for the attack. When the situation permits vehicles to be brought forward to the attack position, special



Figure 7. In the assembly area, camouflage and security are maintained and preparations are made for tactical action.

heavy equipment for certain types of operations is given to the troops in this position. The attack position is occupied for a minimum time before the attack. The movement may be made under battalion or company control. Particular attention is given to the maintenance of secrecy during the movement to the attack position.

39. SECURITY. When the company occupies a portion of the battalion assembly area, security measures are coordinated by the battalion commander. Security measures depend on the length of time the area is to be occupied, the expected enemy action, the security provided by forces to the front, the terrain, and the weapons and equipment available. Security measures may vary from the establishment of observation posts (when adequate security is provided by forces to the front) to an elaborate perimeter defense including all weapons (when inadequate security is provided by forces to the front and a strong enemy attack is possible). For anti-aircraft security and antitank defense, see paragraphs 12 and 13.

CHAPTER 3

RIFLE SQUAD

Section I. GENERAL

40. ORGANIZATION. The rifle squad consists of a squad leader, an assistant squad leader, an automatic rifle team (automatic rifleman and assistant automatic rifleman), and five riflemen.

41. DUTIES OF LEADERS. **a.** The *squad leader* is responsible for the discipline, training, control, and conduct of his squad. His squad is trained to use and care for its weapons and equipment, to move and fight efficiently as individuals, and to function effectively as part of the fighting team.

b. The *assistant squad leader* performs duties assigned by the squad leader and takes command of the squad in his absence. The assistant squad leader usually controls the automatic rifle team.

42. TARGET DESIGNATION. Battlefield targets generally are not clear. Point targets and area targets are designated with accuracy and simplicity by fire commands or by other means, such as firing tracer rounds.

43. FIRE CONTROL. Fire control is the ability of the squad leader to open fire when desired, adjust

the fire of his squad upon the target, shift the fire of all or part of the squad from one target to another, regulate the rate of fire, and cease firing when he wishes. The squad leader designates the target and gives the command for opening fire. He controls the fire by oral orders and signals and by requiring men of the squad to transmit his orders along the front of the squad. He concentrates the fire of the squad on the assigned target. At times, the squad leader moves from man to man and personally directs their fire to make sure that all men fire. On orders of the platoon leader or on his own initiative, he shifts the fire of all or part of his squad to new targets. Even though the exact target is not definite, a volume of fire helps closing with the enemy and saves lives. Squad leaders exert strong leadership to produce and maintain this volume of fire, especially in the final stages of the attack.

44. FIRE DISCIPLINE. Fire discipline in the rifle squad is achieved through training in the use of weapons and the exact execution of orders. It requires skill in sight setting, aiming, and trigger squeeze; close attention to the squad leader; and change in the rate of fire on the squad leader's order or signal.

45. FIRE DISTRIBUTION. a. Each man fires his first shot on the part of the target corresponding to his position in the squad (fig. 8). (The term "target" refers to definitely located enemy or to the area where the enemy is believed to be located.) He then distributes his fire to the right and left of his

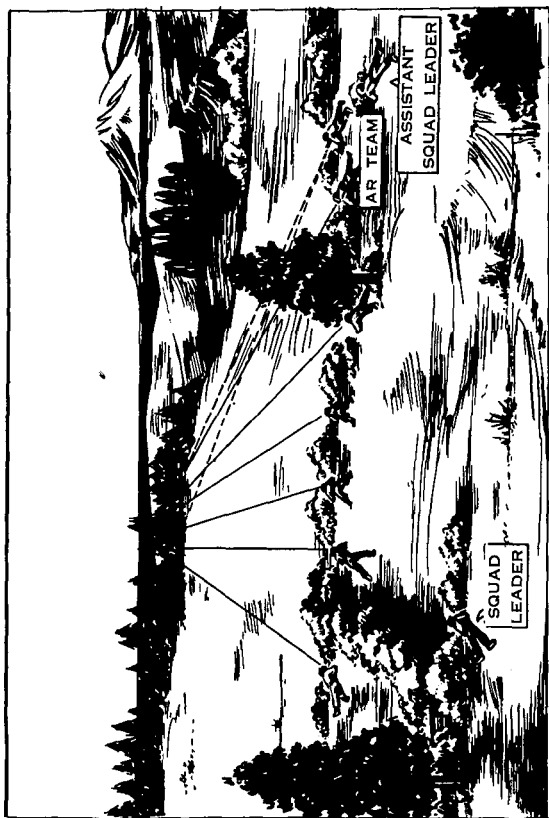


Figure 8. In fire distribution each rifleman fires his first shot on the part of the target corresponding to his position in the squad. The automatic rifleman distributes his fire over the entire target.

first shot, covering that part of the target where he can deliver accurate fire without changing his position. The part of the target which one man can cover is limited by the range and the position of the firer. Often each man can cover the entire target with accurate fire; he does this whenever possible.

b. The *automatic rifleman* distributes his fire over the entire target or on any target which best supports the advance of the squad. The automatic rifleman fires rapid single shots or bursts of two or three rounds; he does not fire longer bursts unless he can deliver enfilade fire on a profitable target or unless the target is at very close range.

c. The *squad leader* controls the squad fire so that the entire target is kept under fire. If new targets appear, he changes the fire distribution as necessary.

d. All men are trained to estimate ranges. This lets the squad place surprise fire on a target. Ranges can be determined by tracer or by sighting shots when the strike of bullets can be observed; however, this method often causes loss of surprise.

46. FIRE AND MANEUVER. Infantry fights by fire and maneuver. One element fires while another element moves under the cover of this fire, making the maximum use of cover. One man may engage the enemy by fire while another moves to a new firing position closer to the enemy. A part of the squad may cover by fire the movement of the remainder of the squad to new firing positions. The rifle squad may move as a unit to assault the hos-

tile position while other rifle elements and supporting weapons fire at the enemy to limit his movement and neutralize his fires.

47. SNIPING. Snipers shoot enemy who expose themselves. By eliminating enemy leaders and harassing their troops, sniping weakens enemy morale. Snipers are expert riflemen, and they are most effective in defensive situations. (See FM 21-75.) Sniping is not confined to specially trained and selected men; all riflemen act as snipers whenever the occasion demands.

48. AMMUNITION SUPPLY. Each member of the squad carries an initial supply of ammunition for his individual weapon. Hand grenades and extra ammunition are issued when needed. When necessary, the squad leader requests ammunition from the platoon leader, and he sees that his squad collects ammunition from casualties. The squad leader is responsible that ammunition (including grenades) is not discarded by men of his squad, either on the march or after contact is made.

49. ANTI-AIRCRAFT SECURITY. For antiaircraft security, see paragraph 12.

50. ANTITANK DEFENSE. Antitank defense is covered in paragraph 13. Antitank grenadiers are placed to provide close-in antitank defense for the squad.

Section II. MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

51. GENERAL. During the movement to contact,

the rifle squad generally marches as a part of the platoon. During foot marches, the squad usually uses a march column formation which consists of a column of files on each side of the road. (See app. II.) This formation provides maximum speed and control, and it is used to move the squad from one location to another behind friendly front lines. Reconnaissance and security missions which may be assigned to a rifle squad during the approach march include the point of an advance guard, a flank guard, or a march outpost.

52. POINT OF AN ADVANCE GUARD. a. The point is a rifle squad sent forward by the advance party to act as security. Motorized reconnaissance and security elements from larger units may precede the point.

b. The point of an advance guard moves along the route of advance and protects the column from enemy near the route of march. The point precedes the advance party by a distance varying with the terrain; however, it is usually within 200 yards. The point marches in a diamond formation or in a column of two's with one file on each side of the road, and there is a minimum of 10 paces between men (fig. 9). The leading two or three riflemen increase this distance to about 20 paces. Either of these formations provides adequate control by the squad leader, reduces the danger from enemy small-arms fire, and permits prompt fire action toward the front or either flank. The squad leader goes where his presence is required, but he is usually just in rear of his leading riflemen. The

assistant squad leader marches at the rear of the point.



Figure 9. The point may march in a column of two's with one file on each side of the road and at least 10 paces between men.

c. The point fires on all hostile elements within range. Observed enemy beyond effective rifle range are reported by the signal ENEMY IN SIGHT (fig. 10). The point continues to advance until within effective range and then it opens fire and attacks (fig. 11). Rapid, aggressive fire and maneuver by the point may drive off small enemy groups. It also may force a large enemy group to commit itself and disclose its locations, thus aiding the use of the advance party. When unable to drive off the enemy, the point holds its position and covers the action of the advance party. The point observes toward the front and flanks but makes no physical flank reconnaissance. Except to open fire, the point stops only on the order of the advance party commander. When the column halts, the point sends out security to protect itself against a surprise attack.

53. CONNECTING FILES. A connecting file is one or two men placed between units on the march to maintain contact between the units. It is furnished by the larger unit to keep contact with the smaller unit. The number of connecting files placed between units depends on the interval between units, the terrain, and the visibility. Connecting files pass forward all orders, messages, and signals received from the unit sending them (fig. 12). They halt only on orders or signals from that unit, or when the smaller unit halts. The signal ENEMY IN SIGHT and special signals previously agreed upon are passed back to the larger unit. If a connecting file consists of one man, he



Figure 10. The point signals back ENEMY IN SIGHT when the enemy is sighted but is beyond effective range.

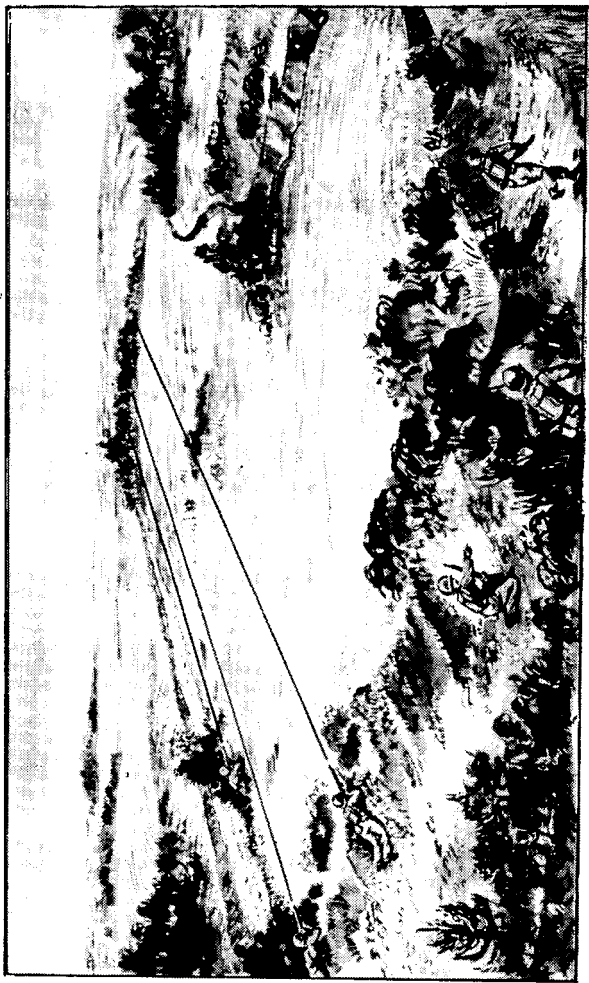


Figure 11. When the enemy is within effective range, the squad opens fire and attacks.

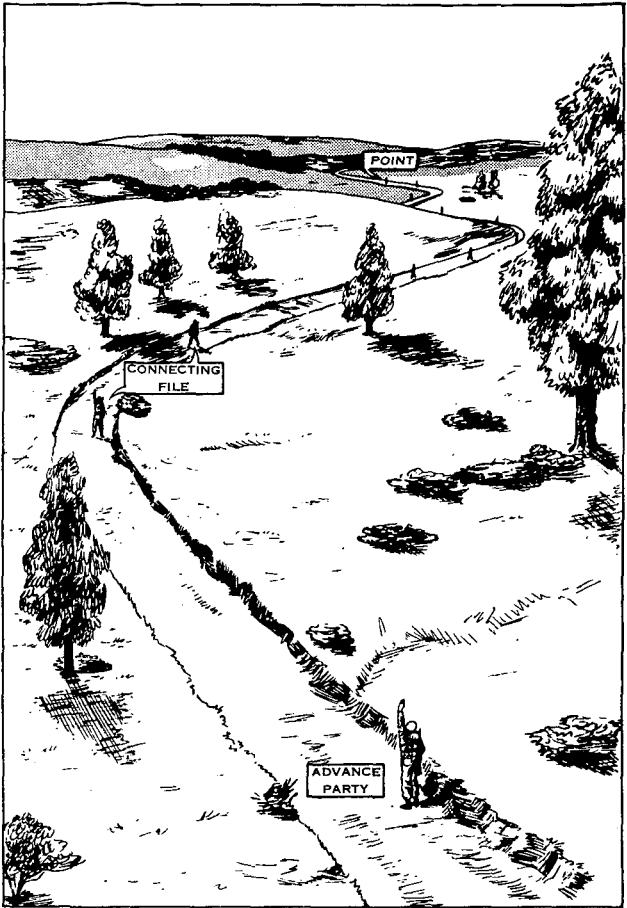


Figure 12. Connecting files pass forward all orders, messages, and signals received from the unit sending them.

looks alternately to the rear and to the front for signals. To overcome the difficulty of one man keeping both forward and rear elements in view, a two-man connecting file ordinarily is used. One man watches the larger unit for signals, the other watches the smaller unit, and they remain within speaking distance of each other.

54. FLANK GUARD. a. A rifle squad often is used as a motorized flank guard to protect a unit on the march. (See par. 26.) The flank guard occupies positions to prevent the enemy from firing on the column within midrange (400-600 yards). It checks areas likely to conceal hostile troops or observers. When the squad remains for a time at one locality, the leader provides for all-around security by selecting one or more firing positions for each man. The squad usually posts two or more men as observers and for local security; one man is designated to watch for signals from the parent unit. The remainder of the squad remains under cover, prepared to move immediately into firing positions. (See fig. 13.)

b. Enemy are reported by signal or messenger and, if within effective range, they immediately are attacked by fire. If the enemy is beyond effective range, the squad leader acts according to his orders or on his own initiative in the absence of orders. Contact with the squad is maintained by the commander of the unit sending it out.

55. MARCH OUTPOST. When a squad acts as a march outpost during a halt and is assigned an



Figure 18. The flank guard occupies positions to prevent the enemy from firing on the column within midrange (400-600 yards.)

area of security, the squad leader places his men to observe the assigned area. (See fig. 14.)



Figure 14. All-around security is established during a halt.

56. FORMATIONS. When the platoon leaves the tactical column to take up the approach march, the squad marches with the platoon. Squad formations used during the approach march and the attack are squad column, squad diamond, and as skirmishers (see app. II). The initial formation usually is prescribed by the platoon leader; thereafter, the squad leader changes his formation to meet changes in the situation and the terrain.

a. *Squad column* usually is the best formation for movement in woods, fog, smoke, and darkness, when control is the governing factor. It also is used for moving along narrow trails and through defiles. The squad column is controlled easily; it gives observation in all directions and permits immediate action toward the flanks. (See fig. 15.)

b. *Squad diamond* is used for situations which require readiness for action in any direction; for example, when a squad is acting alone, or where a squad is the leading element of the platoon. It is an excellent formation to use when contact is imminent, since this formation provides good control, all-around security, flexibility, and dispersion. (See fig. 16.)

c. *As skirmishers* is an initial fighting formation, it generally is used after contact with the enemy is gained, but before the squad leader completes his reconnaissance to determine the most favorable location for the automatic rifle. This formation provides flexibility and lets the squad leader carefully place the automatic rifle team. As soon as the squad leader determines the best location for the automatic rifle, he directs the



Figure 15. The squad column is easy to control.

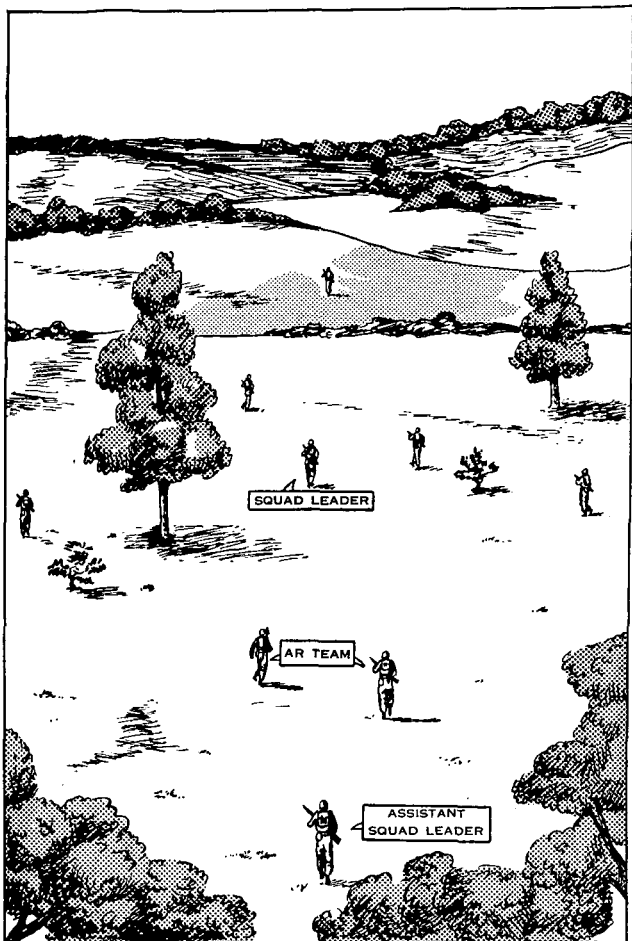


Figure 16. The squad diamond provides all-around security.

squad to form as skirmishers, AR right (left). After the automatic rifle team is committed, all squad weapons fire to the front. This formation is used primarily during the assault. It is good for dashing across open areas, particularly in areas exposed to enemy fire. (See fig. 17.)

57. PASSING THROUGH LONG-RANGE FIRE. When the enemy covers a zone across the line of advance with long-range machine gun or artillery fire, the squad disperses and the entire squad rushes across this fire-swept area in a single bound. This action is taken by the squad leader upon his own initiative or when directed by his platoon leader. Troops do not stop until they pass through the area covered by fire; this is particularly important when crossing crests or passing through defiles. The squad leader leads his squad across the area and re-forms it beyond the area.

58. POSITION AND DUTIES OF LEADERS. During the approach march, the squad leader is where he best can control his squad. He studies the ground to the front to choose the best route of movement for the squad. He varies his squad disposition according to the circumstances. He maintains the prescribed direction, yet makes minor detours to use better routes. (See fig. 18.) The assistant squad leader usually is in rear of the squad to supervise its advance.

59. SECURITY. When a squad is in the approach march, it protects itself by using the correct for-

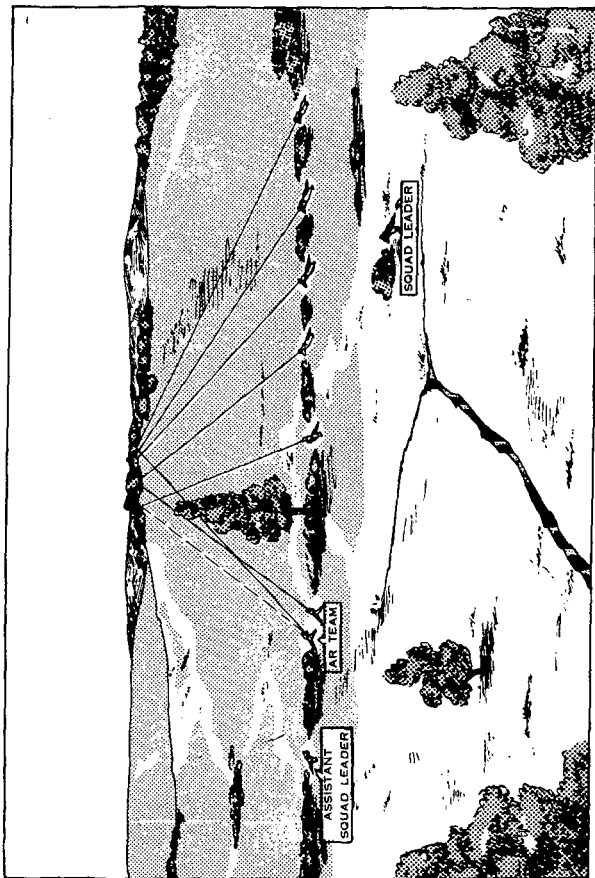


Figure 17. As skirmishers, AR left.

mation, by observation, and by dispersion. Often it is necessary to check dangerous localities. This is done by sending out security elements.



Figure 18. The squad leader studies the ground and selects his squad's route.

60. ACTION WHEN CONTACT IS ESTABLISHED. a. When the point squad is fired upon, the riflemen immediately move into firing position and return the fire. (See fig. 19.) The squad leader makes a quick reconnaissance, decides upon the best po-

sition for the automatic rifle team, and tells the assistant squad leader to move it to the selected position. Particularly at close range, instant fire from rifles (white phosphorous, antitank, and fragmentation rifle grenades, as well as ball ammunition) and, from the automatic rifle, often destroys or neutralizes the enemy element which discloses its position by fire. When the enemy strength prevents such a quick local success, the squad leader builds up fire superiority and moves his squad forward, using fire and maneuver. The platoon leader may use this squad for a frontal attack while he maneuvers with the remainder of the platoon.

b. When a squad is protected from enemy small-arms fire, the squad leader may move his squad to a firing position where he can flank or surprise the enemy. He uses the fires of supporting weapons and the cover and concealment provided by the terrain, and he moves his squad as close to the enemy as possible before opening fire. When there is a covered route to the position, the squad leader advances the squad as a unit, using a column or diamond formation. He issues his fire order under cover. The men creep or crawl to their firing positions and, when all are in position, they deliver a surprise volume of accurate fire. Then, according to the platoon's plan of attack, the squad moves into the assault.

Section III. PREPARATION FOR THE ATTACK

61. GENERAL. Before the attack, a squad may halt in a covered area selected by the platoon leader.

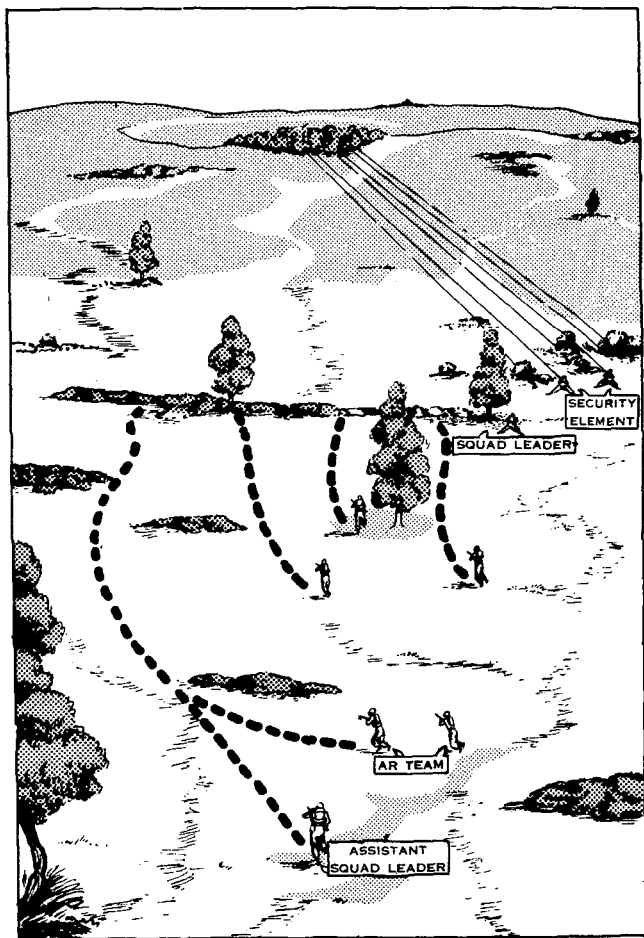


Figure 19. When the point squad is fired on, the riflemen immediately move into firing positions and return the fire.

This area usually is part of a company or battalion assembly area. Immediately on arrival in this area, the squad leader disperses his men. He checks the condition of his squad to make sure that the weapons are in working condition, that each man has the required amount of ammunition and rations, and that all special equipment is issued. He uses the natural cover and concealment to protect his squad from aerial and ground observation and enemy fire. Men use existing holes or ditches and, in many situations, they dig slit trenches.

62. PLATOON LEADER'S ORDER. The platoon leader states whether the squad will be initially in the assault or in support. If the squad is in the assault, it is given a definite part of the platoon objective to capture and a zone of action or a direction of attack. The zone of action is given by assigning the squad a particular part of the line of departure. The time of attack or the signal for the attack is stated. (See par. 126.)

63. TROOP LEADING PROCEDURE. While the squad is in the assembly area or moving to the attack position, the squad leader goes forward to receive the platoon leader's attack order. After receiving the attack order the squad leader makes his reconnaissance, which often is an observation made from the point where he receives the attack order. He studies the terrain—paying particular attention to his route to the line of departure, positions for his automatic rifle, and known or possible

enemy positions. During this reconnaissance he plans his attack—deciding upon the formation, the specific route to the objective, and actions required to accomplish his mission.

64. METHOD OF ATTACK. a. In general, attacks by rifle units consist of two successive phases: first, the advance from the line of departure to the assault position; and second, the advance from the assault position to the objective.

- (1) The *line of departure* is the line from which the attack starts. It may be the line along which the squad is in contact with the enemy or the line held by other friendly troops. Physically, it may be a road, a stream, the crest of a hill, the edge of a woods, or a similar terrain feature. The squad crosses the line of departure as a part of the platoon. (See par. 177.)
- (2) The *objective* is a terrain feature which usually is part of the platoon objective. It may be a portion of a hill, woods, or village. The distance from the line of departure to the objective may vary from 300 or 400 yards to 1,000 yards.
- (3) The *assault position* is located between the line of departure and the objective. At this position, many of the supporting fires (direct and indirect) which cover the forward movement of the squad are lifted, and the squad uses its own maxi-

mum fire power for the final assault of the enemy position. The distance from the assault position to the objective varies from 100 to 150 yards, depending on how close the squad can move to its own supporting fires without suffering casualties from these fires. The assault position may be in front of or to the flank (rarely to the rear) of the objective. The determining factors are the enemy disposition and the location of covered and concealed routes of approach in the vicinity of the objective. There is no delay or hesitation at the assault position. The timing of the lifting of supporting fires is coordinated closely by higher commanders with the movement of the assault echelon; this permits the uninterrupted movement through the assault position. (See pars. 71 and 72.)

b. Squad attack as part of the platoon. The rifle squad most often attacks as a part of the platoon which attacks frontally as an interior unit. Under these conditions, the squad moves forward in the platoon formation. The advance consists of a rapid movement under the cover of heavy supporting fires to the assault position where the squad deploys as skirmishers for the assault. When the platoon advances with one platoon element covering by fire the movement of another platoon element, the rifle squad may attack frontally or it may form all or part of the platoon's maneuvering element. If the squad attacks frontally, it advances

by fire and maneuver as a unit to cover the forward movement of the remainder of the platoon. Whenever possible, the squad advances to the assault position itself where it joins in the assault. If the squad is used as part or all of the maneuvering element of the platoon, it maneuvers as a unit under covering fires of other elements. The squad then uses any available covered route to the assault position, preferable at the flank or rear of the objective. (See par. 125.)

c. Squad attack on an independent mission. The squad may attack frontally by fire and maneuver when on an independent mission; for example, a combat patrol or the point of an advance guard. If the terrain permits, part of the squad executes a frontal attack to hold the enemy in position and neutralizes his fires while the remainder of the squad advances by a covered route to a position where it assaults the enemy's flank or rear. However, since the rifle squad seldom fights at maximum strength, this method rarely is used because reduced strength in the squad makes ineffective either or both the frontal attack element and the maneuver element.

65. POSITION AND DUTIES OF THE SQUAD LEADER.

a. During the attack, the primary duty of the squad leader is to direct his squad in advancing and placing effective fire on the enemy. To do this, he makes the maximum use of his automatic rifle team, thus supporting the advance of other men of the squad. He enforces fire discipline, taking a position from which he best can control his men

and observe the effect of their fire. In selecting his position, he considers the need for maintaining contact with the platoon leader. At times, because of battle noise and confusion, he moves from man to man, giving instructions. He fires only in an emergency or when he considers that his fire power or example outweighs the need for close control of his squad.

b. When the squad leader personally cannot maintain effective control over the fire of the squad as a whole, he may retain control over a part and temporarily give control of the remainder to the assistant squad leader. The squad leader also—

- (1) Directs the fire of his squad to positions where enemy troops are known or believed to be located.
- (2) Looks ahead for new firing positions for his squad, and he is constantly on the alert to advance his squad toward the enemy.
- (3) Seeks a position for his automatic rifleman to fire on any target blocking the squad's advance; this position should permit automatic rifle fire across the entire front, where practicable.
- (4) Maintains contact with the platoon leader or assigns this duty to the assistant squad leader, and he keeps the men of his squad informed of the situation of adjacent and supporting units.
- (5) Maintains dispersion, yet prevents his men from scattering beyond control. He

prevents several men from bunching behind cover suitable for only one man; isolated trees, stumps, bushes, or other well-defined objects are avoided.

- (6) Observes units on his flanks and makes a prompt report to the platoon leader whenever wide gaps occur (see fig. 20).
- (7) Attacks important or dangerous targets without orders, when necessary.
- (8) Resists, by fire, sudden attacks from the flanks. In the event of an enemy tank attack, he uses antitank and white phosphorous grenades to disable the tanks.
- (9) Joins the nearest troops, if his squad is separated from the platoon, and takes orders from the leader of these troops. At the first favorable opportunity, he rejoins his platoon.

66. POSITION AND DUTIES OF ASSISTANT SQUAD LEADER. The assistant squad leader's position is not fixed; he takes the position where he best can assist the squad leader. He may be ordered to place the automatic rifle team in position and control its fire. He assists in enforcing fire discipline, supervising ammunition supply, and maintaining contact with the platoon leader. He replaces the squad leader in the squad leader's absence.

67. DUTIES OF SQUAD MEMBERS. a. The *automatic rifleman* and his assistant function as a team. The automatic rifleman selects the exact position where he best can cover the target. The team is alert for

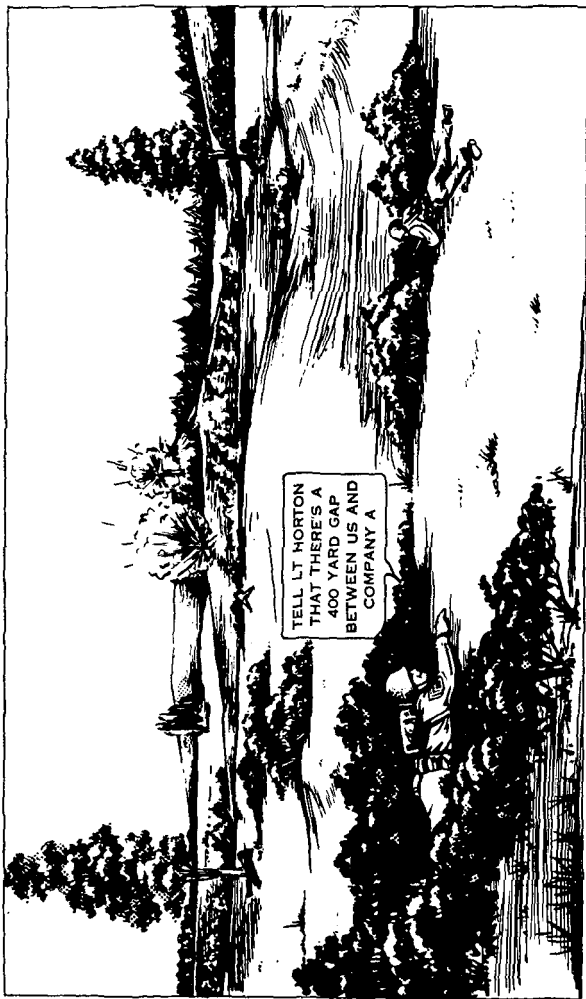


Figure 20. Flank contact is maintained and wide gaps are reported.

surprise targets, particularly automatic weapons. It maintains eye contact with the squad leader or his assistant to fire at new targets rapidly. (See fig. 21.)

b. The *riflemen* move forward in the attack, as ordered by the squad leader, and remain alert for instructions. They pass on instructions from the squad leader to other riflemen. When some men of the squad are advancing, the remaining men cover them by fire.

68. ORDERS. The squad leader gives his attack order to all men of his squad. When his men cannot see their route of advance before the attack starts, the squad leader supplements his order with a sketch showing the important terrain features. Orders are clear and definite so that all men in the squad understand the squad's mission and the plan for accomplishing the mission. The squad leader's order includes—

a. Information of the enemy and friendly forces, including the location and proposed action of adjacent squads.

b. Mission of the squad and the plan for accomplishing it.

c. Duties of squad members to include instructions for the reorganization on the objective.

d. Administrative details, including ammunition supply and the location of the battalion aid station.

e. Prearranged signals.

f. Location of squad and platoon leaders.



Figure 21. The squad leader selects the automatic rifleman's firing position.

Section IV. ATTACK

69. MOVEMENT ACROSS THE LINE OF DEPARTURE.

The squad, as a part of the platoon, moves from the attack position to the line of departure. Before leaving the attack position, the squad leader checks to see that each man is in his assigned place and ready to move forward at the prescribed time. On a signal, the squad crosses the line of departure in an appropriate formation (par. 56), and it does not deploy further until it is necessary to fire on the enemy. (See fig. 22.)

70. CONDUCT OF THE ATTACK. After crossing the line of departure, the squad moves to the assault position as rapidly as the situation permits. Unnecessary halts are avoided since the longer the squad is exposed to enemy fires the more casualties it is likely to receive. The squad advances in a formation which allows speed and control under conditions of terrain and enemy fires.

a. Maximum use of supporting fires. When attacking as a part of a larger force, the squad is supported by the heavy fires of higher units. These fires, including smoke, tend to neutralize the enemy, and they let the assault elements move rapidly to the assault position. The neutralization is most effective during the initial stages of the attack. By using these fires, the squad often can advance by a quick forward movement to the assault position with few, if any, casualties. Conversely, halts or even hesitation give the enemy time to recover from the shock of the fires and allow him to bring

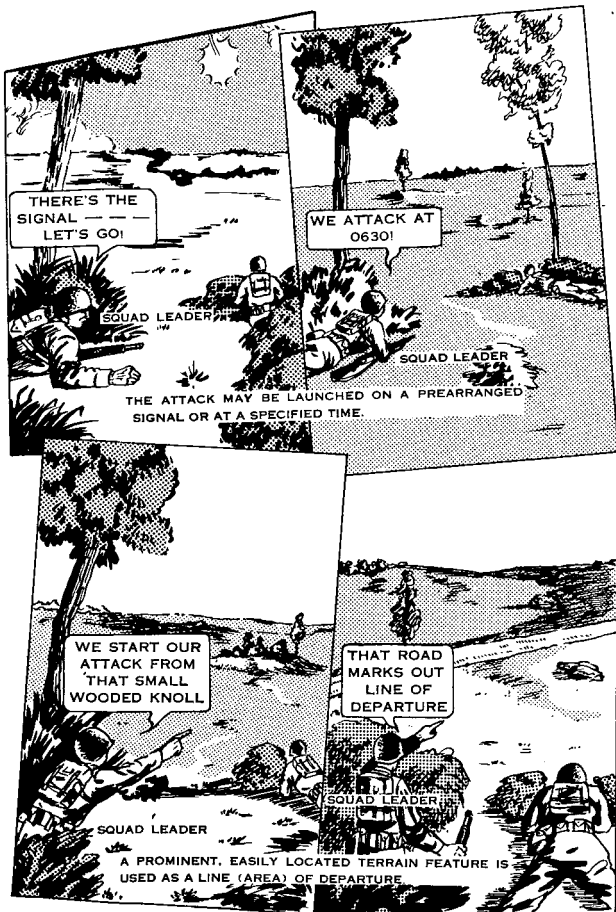


Figure 22. Movement across the line of departure.

down defensive fires, thus increasing the probability of casualties.

b. Use of cover and concealment. During movement from the line of departure to the assault position, the squad usually is limited to a route prescribed by the platoon leader. However, most terrain has some irregularities which provide cover from enemy fire and growths which give some concealment from enemy observation. Even in open terrain, the well-trained rifleman can locate and use limited cover such as that furnished by slight depressions or rises. By using the available cover and concealment, the squad obtains some protection from hostile fire.

c. Hostile fire.

- (1) Mortar and artillery concentrations and long-range machine gun fires often can be bypassed. Concentrations at times are so small that the squad can pass quickly to either side without too much turning away from its prescribed route of advance. Long-range machine gun fire often can be bypassed by using folds of the ground after making a quick study of the fire pattern, particularly when the enemy's observation is obscured by haze, fog, dust, or smoke.
- (2) In some situations, enemy fire is received which cannot be neutralized by small arms, and it prevents the squad from advancing by its own fire. Often this enemy fire cannot be bypassed. Under these conditions and when the effectiveness of

the enemy's fire would result in excessive casualties, the squad halts under cover until supporting fires or the action of adjacent units permit the advance to be resumed. However, the squad leader does not halt when receiving light indirect or long-range direct fires. To accomplish his mission at the least possible cost in lives, he quickly moves his squad forward through the fire-swept area. He bears in mind that usually a rapid movement through such fire costs far less in casualties than does indecision and useless halting.

d. Fire and maneuver.

- (1) At times, the squad receives short-range direct fires from the enemy before it reaches the assault position. When receiving effective small-arms fire, all men of the squad instantly saturate the enemy with rifle and automatic rifle fire. When the enemy is within range, rifle grenades are effective in destroying, blinding, or otherwise neutralizing his gun crews. The squad's fire power often beats down the enemy element which discloses its position.
- (2) When the immediate application of the squad's maximum fire power fails to destroy the enemy, the squad advances by fire and maneuver. The squad leader first establishes fire superiority. Fire superiority is gained and maintained by keep-

ing the enemy under heavy and accurate fire so that his fire is ineffective. Until supporting weapons or other units maintain fire superiority without assistance from the squad, enough men of the squad fire to maintain fire superiority. Here the automatic rifle can do much to produce the desired effect. Meanwhile, other men of the squad move forward, take up firing positions closer to the enemy, and they cover by fire the forward movement of the remaining men. When the squad leader advances with additional men, he gives the remaining men to the assistant squad leader. The assistant squad leader moves those men on the squad leader's orders. By this combination of fire and maneuver, the squad advances to the assault position. (See fig. 23.)

e. Taking advantage of enemy's distraction. The squad leader looks for opportunities of taking advantage of any distraction of the enemy by a friendly unit. Frequently, such distraction results from success by an adjacent friendly unit. At other times, after an enemy element has stopped the squad, it turns its attention and fire toward others of friendly troops. In either case, the leader of the halted squad takes advantage of the enemy's preoccupation to resume his advance energetically.

71. ASSAULT. a. The final phase of an attack is the assault. In preparation for the assault, the squad works its way up to the objective by keep-



Figure 23. The squad attacks by use of fire and maneuver.

ing as close as possible to the supporting fires, taking maximum advantage of the shock effect of these fires on the enemy (fig. 24). When the men reach the assault position (par. 64) and the supporting fires are lifted, they start the assault and close rapidly, delivering assault fire on the objective until it is captured.

b. The squad is deployed as skirmishers. The riflemen and the automatic rifle team take up the fire. The assistant automatic rifleman does not fire but assists the automatic rifleman. The squad leader and assistant squad leader seldom fire but take positions several paces in rear of the squad to enforce the continuity of fires and to control the alinement of the men.

72. ASSAULT FIRE. a. Assault fire is the violent and heavy fire by assault elements as they close on the enemy at close range. The men fire from the hip or shoulder, walking forward steadily and rapidly as the terrain permits. Each man fires at least one shot every two or three paces. He holds his fire in the general direction of his advance, shooting at every little rise in the ground, bush, tree, or point which possibly might conceal an enemy. (See fig. 25.)

b. Assault fire is characterized by violence and volume rather than by accuracy. Its purpose is not only to kill and wound the enemy but also to terrify and demoralize him. It keeps the enemy deep in his hole where the shock effect of the supporting fires put him—hugging the ground

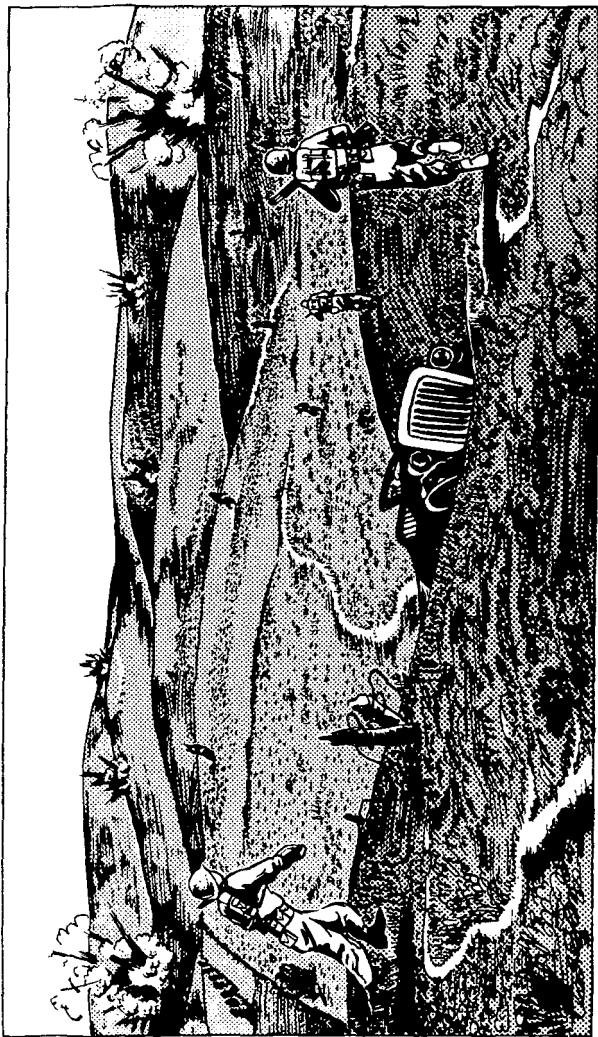


Figure 24. Advance is made under the cover of supporting fires.

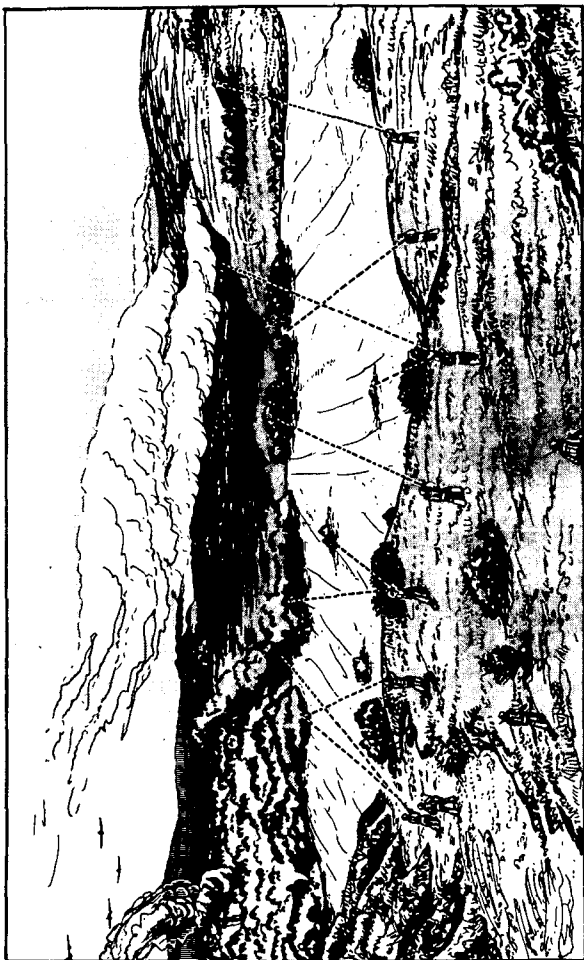


Figure 25. Assault fire is used when closing with the enemy.

with his weapon idle—or it forces him into a hurried and disorderly retreat.

c. The squad does not stop on the near edge of the objective but drives rapidly to the far edge or to the squad's part of the objective. The enemy is given no time to recover from the shock of the assault. In addition to rifle fires, hand and rifle grenades are used to blind and destroy stubborn pockets of resistance in the direct path of the advance.

73. REORGANIZATION. As soon as the hostile position is captured, the men move into position to repel an enemy counterattack. The squad defends its assigned part of the platoon objective. When the position is occupied to repel a counterattack, the squad leader checks his squad for casualties, the condition of weapons, and the status of ammunition. He redesignates key men, redistributes ammunition, and reports his strength and requirements for weapons and ammunition. Reconnaissance is continued and, after receiving instructions from the platoon leader, the squad leader issues orders for continuing the attack.

74. FLANK PATROL. Throughout the various attack situations, a rifle squad may be sent out as a flank patrol. Such a patrol is given a specific mission to accomplish and, on completion of the mission, it rejoins its unit.

75. CONNECTING GROUP. A connecting group is any group used to maintain contact between forces. It moves and operates so that it knows the

location of the near flank of the unit with which it is maintaining contact. The primary mission of a connecting group is to tell the parent commander the location and situation of the unit with which it maintains contact. As secondary missions, it tells the commander of the contacted unit of the parent unit's situation and covers gaps between units by resisting any hostile penetration. If the adjacent unit falls behind, an immediate report is made to the parent commander (see fig. 26). The connecting group may consist of small patrols to cover a wide interval and maintain contact with both units. If contact with the adjacent unit is lost, the fact is reported at once and, unless ordered to return, the connecting group fires only for self-protection or to give warning of a flank attack.

76. SUPPORT SQUAD. a. Before the attack, the squad leader of a support squad tells his men the situation and the proposed action of the platoon. He advances his squad on order of the platoon leader or the platoon sergeant, keeping his squad under cover and preventing it from merging with the assault squads. During the attack, the squad leader keeps abreast of the situation and makes tentative plans for the probable use of his squad (see fig. 27).

b. If ordered to attack the flank of a definitely located hostile position, the squad leader selects an assault position for the attack and the best covered route of approach to it. He then moves the squad to the position and attacks by opening sur-



Figure 26. Connecting groups protect the flanks by maintaining contact with adjacent units or by becoming flank patrols.



Figure 27. The leader of the support squad makes tentative plans for the probable use of his squad.

prise fire and assaulting from an unexpected direction. (See fig. 28.)

c. When directed to reinforce the assault squads, the support squad leader shows his squad the positions of the enemy and the assault squads. He points out the part of the line to be reinforced, then moves his squad there in a formation to fit the terrain and the enemy fire.

Section V. DEFENSE

77. GENERAL. The rifle squad is used as a part of the rifle platoon in the organization and defense of the platoon defense area. The platoon leader coordinates the use of the rifle squad with adjacent squads within and adjacent to the platoon defense area and also with supporting weapons. The platoon defense order assigns the exact squad areas to be organized, the general trace of the line to be occupied, specific sectors of fire, and the general location and principal direction of fire for the automatic rifles of each squad.

78. MISSION. The mission of the rifle squad as a part of a front-line platoon is to defend its assigned part of the platoon defense area by fire and by close combat. The rifle squad, with the support of other fires, stops the enemy by fire in front of the main line of resistance and repels him by close combat if he reaches it. Squad elements protect supporting weapons within the platoon defense area and exchange mutual fire support with adjacent units. When necessary, the squad (or ele-



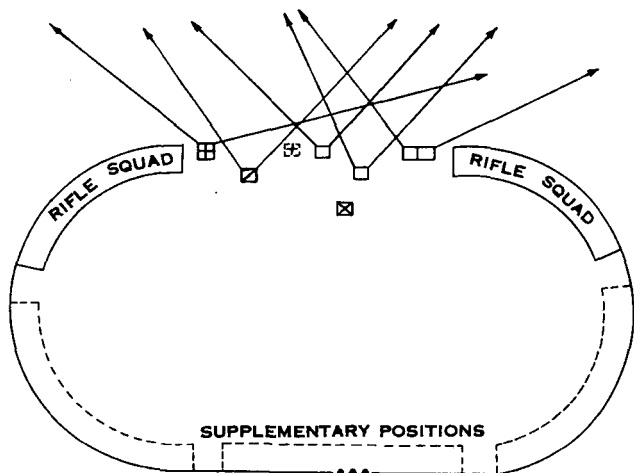
Figure 28. The support squad may attack the flank of a hostile position.

ments of it) moves to supplementary positions to protect the flanks or rear of the platoon defense area.

79. SELECTION OF FIRING POSITIONS. a. Primary and alternate position areas for the automatic rifleman are selected by the platoon leader. A position area for the automatic rifleman is selected to cover the major part of the squad sector of fire or a specific approach. Supplementary positions are selected when the flanks and rear of the defense area cannot be protected from primary or alternate positions. Exact positions for the automatic rifleman are selected by the squad leader.

b. Positions for the riflemen are selected so that adjacent individual sectors of fire overlap and use the best available fields of fire. The interval between fox holes may be from 5 to 20 yards. In open terrain, single fox holes may be as much as 10 yards apart and double fox holes, as much as 20 yards apart. In close terrain, the interval may be reduced to 5 yards between single fox holes and 10 yards between double fox holes. The choice between single or double fox holes is limited by such factors as morale, fields of fire, and unit strength. The double fox hole provides continual observation and gives increased individual morale and, therefore, it is used whenever conditions permit. The squad leader selects primary individual positions so that each man can cover the desired sector of fire. Supplementary positions to protect the flanks and rear are designated if required. (See fig. 29.)

80. SQUAD DEFENSE ORDER. On receiving the platoon defense order, the squad leader makes a re-



- AR AND ASSISTANT
- ALTERNATE POSITION FOR AR
- ASSISTANT SQUAD LEADER AND ONE RIFLEMAN
- SINGLE FOXHOLE FOR RIFLEMAN
- DOUBLE FOXHOLE FOR TWO RIFLEMEN
- SQUAD LEADER

Figure 29. Rifle squad defense area.

connaissance of his assigned area and notes the location of adjacent squads with which he coordinates and any supporting weapons which he

protects. He then issues his order to the squad. When practicable, the squad defense order is given on the position to be organized. The defense order follows the outline indicated for the squad attack order (par. 68) with additional instructions to include—

a. Primary position and sector of fire for each man of the squad.

b. Alternate positions and principal direction of fire for the automatic rifleman.

c. Organization of the ground, including the type of emplacements (app. V), other constructions, and work priority.

81. ORGANIZATION OF THE POSITION. After issuing the squad defense order, the squad leader moves his men directly to their firing positions. The automatic rifle is mounted temporarily to cover its assigned sector, and a sentinel is posted. Before construction work is started, the squad leader has each man lie down at the place his fox hole will be dug, and has him personally verify the observation and sector of fire permitted by each position. The squad leader verifies that sectors of fire are overlapping within and on the flanks of the squad. Work then is started on the position, and the squad leaders' responsibilities during the preparation of the position include—

a. Supervising the clearing of fields of fire.

b. Locating the initial ammunition supply and selecting supply routes.

c. Preparing range cards to include estimated ranges to important landmarks.

d. Selecting and preparing a position where he can observe his assigned frontage, controlling his squad, and maintaining contact with the platoon leader.

e. Selecting and supervising the preparation of alternate and supplementary positions.

f. Inspecting cover and concealment of men and weapons to check closely that the position is concealed from enemy ground and air observation.

g. Preparing a sketch in duplicate of the squad's sector of fire, showing prominent terrain features and the estimated ranges to them. He gives one sketch to the platoon leader and keeps a copy for himself.

82. CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE. a. Initial fires of weapons used within the squad area are withheld until the enemy comes within effective rifle range (maximum 500 yards) or when the enemy reaches a designated terrain feature. This gives maximum surprise and avoids the premature disclosure of the battle position. During hostile preparatory fires, the squad takes cover in its prepared positions. As soon as these fires lift, the men take firing positions to meet the hostile attack.

b. During the defense, the squad leader's primary duty is to control the fires of his squad. Only in the close-in defense of the squad does he take part in the fire fight. The assistant squad leader fights as a rifleman and as a grenadier, and he assists in the control of the squad.

c. Squad members open fire upon the approaching enemy on command of the squad leader as

given in the platoon leader's order or when the enemy reaches a predetermined line. As the enemy approaches the position, the rate of fire is increased to inflict maximum casualties and to stop the hostile attack before it reaches the position. If the enemy assaults and enters the position, he is driven out by fire, grenades, and the bayonet. The success of the defense depends on each squad defending its assigned area. A stubborn defense in place by a front-line squad breaks up enemy attack formations and makes him vulnerable to counterattack. The squad withdraws only on orders of a higher commander.

d. When the attacking force contains tanks as well as infantry, the primary targets for all squad weapons (except grenade launchers) are hostile foot troops and exposed men on the tanks. The rifle grenadiers fire at tanks which threaten the squad position. If the enemy infantry does not furnish a target, rifle fire is used against open turrets and vision slits of attacking tanks. Men continue firing unless forced to take cover to protect themselves and their weapons from the fire and crushing action of the tanks. Men return to their firing positions as soon as the tanks pass, and they fire on approaching foot troops. Maximum effort is made to separate the foot elements from the tanks.

83. SECURITY. In all types of defensive situations, security is maintained. The rifle squad, as any other unit, is responsible for its own local security. Measures to closely check and coordinate the se-

curity for the battle position are given by higher commanders. These measures consist of all or part of a system of sentinels or listening posts, outguards, patrols, supports, and reserves—depending on the force for which security is furnished. (See sec. V, ch. 8.) The rifle squad may be the security force itself or it may be a part of a larger security force. In either case, the squad may be responsible for one or more of the following: a sentinel post, a listening post, an outguard, and visiting patrols.

a. A *sentinel post* consists of one or two men and is established to give early warning of an enemy infantry, tank, or air attack. These posts may be inside or outside of an organized position. They furnish the maximum observation over hostile approaches and have cover, concealment, and good routes of withdrawal. Sentinels do not engage in close combat. Means of communication are established to alert troops for an enemy attack. For its own local security a squad has a sentinel post at all times.

b. A *listening post* normally consists of two to four men, and it functions when visibility is limited in order to give the early warning of a hostile attack. Listening posts are located to cover favorable enemy approaches. Selected positions furnish cover, concealment, and good routes of withdrawal. Listening post men are relieved often to maintain an alert warning system and, if frequent relief is impracticable, double sentries occupy the post. Both remain awake to prevent a surprise.

c. An *outguard* is a small group posted by an outpost to delay and disorganize the enemy and give warning of his approach. An outguard may vary in size from a half squad to a platoon with supporting weapons. Outguards organize defense areas permitting observation and long fields of fire. Each outguard organizes its position on a normal frontage so as not to sacrifice control. Fox holes are dug, the position is camouflaged, and routes of withdrawal are selected. Security for the outguard is obtained through the use of sentinel posts, listening posts, and patrols. As soon as desirable targets appear, outguards inflict maximum losses on the enemy by long-range fire. Normally, outguards withdraw before fighting in close combat, on orders of the outpost commander or according to prearranged plans.

d. *Visiting patrols* consist of two or three men, and they cover the intervals and maintain contact between stationary security elements. Visiting patrols operate from right to left and at irregular times and by different routes to prevent the enemy from discovering the patrol system.

CHAPTER 4

WEAPONS SQUAD

Section I. GENERAL

84. ORGANIZATION. The weapons squad consists of a squad leader, a light machine gun team, and a rocket launcher team. Each team consists of a gunner, an assistant gunner, and two ammunition bearers.

85. DUTIES OF LEADERS. a. The *weapons squad leader* is responsible for the discipline, training, control, and conduct of his squad. He uses his squad as directed by the platoon leader. He selects and assigns exact locations for the weapons within the general area assigned by the platoon leader. He regulates the displacement of weapons, controls the expenditure of ammunition, and supervises the supply of ammunition by the ammunition bearers. Whenever the ammunition bearers cannot maintain an adequate ammunition supply, the squad leader requests assistance from the platoon leader. In the attack, the light machine gun team and the rocket launcher team often operate at some distance from each other. When these units are separated, the light machine gun team usually is controlled by the squad leader. The rocket

launcher team is controlled by the leader of that element of the rifle platoon with which it operates.

b. *Team leaders* move their teams to selected locations, prepare and occupy firing positions, camouflage, observe and adjust fire, and use ammunition bearers to supply ammunition. Each team leader is also the gunner.

c. Squad and team leaders use voice and visual signals to control their units.

86. CONDUCT OF FIRE. a. The *light machine gun team* is assigned a definite target or a sector of fire. The squad leader determines the method of firing at a definite target, designates the target, specifies the rate of fire, and gives the command or signal for opening fire. He establishes contact with the rifle squad leaders to obtain information of their situation and plans.

b. The *rocket launcher team* is assigned a definite target or a sector of fire, or it covers a specific avenue of approach. The squad leader (or the leader of the rifle unit with which the team operates) designates the targets and gives the command or signal for opening fire. In the attack the team leader is alert to destroy enemy machine guns which may open short-range surprise fire on the advancing riflemen.

87. RANGE ESTIMATION. Men of the light machine gun and rocket launcher teams are trained in range estimation. Range estimations for the light machine gun may be verified by observing the strike of the bullets or by using tracer ammunition.

Gunners make bold adjustments to compensate for any initial errors in range estimation. The rocket launcher team estimates leads for firing on moving targets. Skill in range estimation allows accurate surprise fire.

88. AMMUNITION SUPPLY. During the movement phase, the company headquarters $\frac{1}{4}$ -ton trucks transport the weapons and ammunition of the weapons squads. In the assembly area or attack position, the light machine gun and rocket launcher, with an initial ammunition supply, are unloaded from the vehicle. Ammunition bearers hand carry supplies from a company ammunition supply point to the firing positions. In many instances, the ammunition is obtained from a $\frac{1}{4}$ -ton truck which is sent to the vicinity of the firing position

89. ANTI-AIRCRAFT SECURITY. For anti-aircraft security measures, see paragraph 12.

90. ANTITANK DEFENSE. The squad leader uses the rocket launcher team to cover avenues of tank approach. This weapon is sited so that short-range flanking fire can be delivered against enemy tanks using the approach. (Antitank defense for individuals is described in par. 13.)

Section II. MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

91. ROUTE AND TACTICAL COLUMN. In route column and tactical column, the squad moves in the

platoon formation as directed by the platoon leader.

92. APPROACH MARCH. During the approach march, the weapons squad is located where it rapidly can give close support fire when contact is made. Crew-served weapons and ammunition may be hand carried or they may be transported by weapons carrier. When conditions call for long-distance hand carry and for an expected great expenditure of ammunition, the weapons squad temporarily may be reinforced with riflemen to carry extra ammunition. If weapons and ammunition are transported on a carrier, they are readily available. Upon contact, the light machine gun team may reinforce the fires of the rifle squad which makes contact, or it may assist the maneuver of the remainder of the platoon. The rocket launcher team, in view of the launcher's limited range, normally joins that part of the platoon which is the maneuver element. However, the rocket launcher team is sent immediately to any sector within the platoon zone of action which is threatened with a tank attack.

Section III. PREPARATION FOR THE ATTACK

93. GENERAL. Before the attack, the weapons squad may be directed to halt in a covered area selected by the platoon leader. This area usually is a part of the company or battalion assembly area. Immediately on arrival in this area, the squad leader disperses his men in the area allotted

to him by the platoon leader. Normally, the platoon leader directs the squad to secure the light machine gun and rocket launcher and an initial supply of ammunition from a company weapons carrier. The squad leader checks the condition of his squad to determine that the weapons and ammunition are in proper condition, that each man has the proper amount of ammunition and rations, and that special equipment is issued. Existing cover and concealment are used to protect the squad from aerial and ground observation and fire. Men use holes, ditches, or slit trenches. When an enemy threat exists, the squad may be ordered to occupy positions to protect the assembly area. On this mission, the weapons are placed to cover avenues of approach. While the squad is in the assembly area or is en route to the attack position, the weapons squad leader moves forward with the rifle squad leaders to receive the platoon leader's attack order.

94. PLATOON LEADER'S ORDER. The platoon leader's decision as to the use of the weapons squad is given in the platoon attack order. The order states the mission, initial position areas, targets or sectors of fire, the time of opening fire, and the organization. It may state the conditions for displacement and ammunition supply.

95. TROOP LEADING PROCEDURE. On receiving the platoon leader's attack order, the squad leader makes his reconnaissance. Often this is an observation made from the point where he receives the

attack order. He studies the terrain, paying particular attention to the exact positions for weapons, routes to firing positions, and routes for displacement. Based on the platoon leader's order and the terrain study made while on reconnaissance, the squad leader formulates his attack order.

96. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT. a. The *light machine gun team* is used by the platoon leader to furnish close support for the platoon. It usually joins the element which makes a frontal attack. Its fires usually are under the direct control of the weapons squad leader. The team displaces as the need arises to continue close support. It has the following missions:

- (1) Supports by fire the units of the platoon or units of the adjacent platoon. To furnish this support, the team may be directed to follow a certain rifle element, or it may follow a general route along a flank of the platoon—occupying successive firing positions.
- (2) Protects the platoon flanks.
- (3) Covers the platoon reorganization.
- (4) Breaks up hostile counterattacks.

b. The *rocket launcher team's* primary mission is to destroy enemy tanks. If there is no tank threat, the rocket launcher team assists the advance of the rifle elements. Because of the rocket launcher's short range, the team usually moves with a maneuvering element; this also permits the antitank weapon to arrive early on the objective. When enemy tanks appear, the team reverts to its

antitank role, regardless of previously assigned targets or missions.

97. SELECTION OF FIRING POSITION. a. The platoon leader assigns a general position area and the squad leader selects the exact primary and alternate firing positions. (See par. 7.) Desirable characteristics of firing positions are:

- (1) Affords observation of the assigned targets or assigned sector of fire.
- (2) Affords observation of friendly troops.
- (3) Permits direct fire without interference from friendly troops, trees, or other obstacles.
- (4) Gives maximum protection against hostile observation and fire.
- (5) Uses tank obstacles such as ditches, large trees, and boulders.
- (6) Permits covered routes for occupation and supply.

b. The *light machine gun* is placed in partial defilade. The squad leader controls the fire by voice or signal. Positions near other automatic weapons are avoided.

c. The *rocket launcher* firing site lets the gunner fire prone at stationary targets and sitting or standing at moving targets. Clearance to the rear is essential.

98. TARGETS. a. *Appropriate targets for the light machine gun* are crew-served weapons, small groups of enemy, pillbox embrasures, lightly armored vehicles, and tank vision slits. Enemy

whose general location is known may be engaged with short burst of light machine gun fire. In built-up areas, light machine guns are used against definitely located targets in buildings.

b. The *primary target for the rocket launcher* is an enemy tank. High explosive, antitank, and white phosphorous rockets may be used against such targets as crew-served weapons, pillbox embrasures, and small enemy groups. In fighting within built-up areas, targets include enemy personnel and weapons in buildings. The launcher also may be used against buildings to blast an opening for the entrance of assaulting infantry.

99. ORDERS. The squad leader gives his attack order to his men, and it covers the following items :

a. Information of the enemy.

b. Information of friendly troops, including the expected action of the leading rifle platoon and the missions and positions of supporting weapons.

c. Missions of each team to include initial firing positions and the routes to them or the unit to be followed; initial targets or sectors of fire; time of opening fire; subsequent action; and instructions for reorganization of the objective.

d. Administrative instructions, including the supply of ammunition and the location of the battalion aid station.

e. Communication instructions, including pre-arranged signals and the location of squad and platoon leaders.

Section IV. ATTACK

100. MOVEMENT INTO FIRING POSITIONS. a. The *light machine gun team* moves from the attack position to its firing position under the control of the squad leader. In moving the gun into its firing position, maximum advantage is taken of available cover and concealment to avoid being discovered by the enemy. If available, a covered position immediately in rear of the firing position is occupied first. The team moves from the covered position to the firing position just before opening fire. Ammunition bearers remain in the covered position when they are not supplying ammunition.

b. The *rocket launcher team* normally does not occupy a firing position at the start of the attack. It accompanies the assault team and is used as directed by the platoon leader.

101. SUPPORTING FIRES DURING THE ATTACK. a. The *light machine gun team* supports the advance of the platoon rifle elements. The weapons squad leader keeps continuous observation on the advancing riflemen as well as on the objective, so that the fire of the team does not endanger friendly troops. He looks for positions from which the team may deliver oblique, flanking, or enfilade fire on enemy groups holding up the advance of his platoon or adjacent units.

b. The *rocket launcher team* fires at suitable targets holding up the advance of the rifle elements when the threat of enemy tank attack is not present. If there is a threat of an enemy tank attack,

the rocket launcher team occupies positions covering avenues of tank approach (see fig. 30).

102. DISPLACEMENT. When the progress of the attack makes it impossible for the teams to execute their missions from initial positions, they displace to new firing positions. The teams move aggressively, closely behind or with the element of the rifle platoon with which they operate. Before displacement, the squad or team leader looks for new positions, and selects them by a visual or a physical reconnaissance. In moving to the new firing positions, the teams use the available cover, concealment, and defilade.

103. REORGANIZATION. As soon as a hostile position is captured or the attack is halted, the squad leader moves the weapons into firing positions which protect the platoon against a counterattack during the reorganization. Instructions for reorganization are given in the squad leader's attack order. When positions are occupied to repel a possible counterattack, the squad leader checks his squad for casualties, the condition of weapons, and the status of ammunition. Strength, weapons, and ammunition requirements are reported to the platoon leader. The squad leader receives orders from the platoon leader. Reconnaissance for positions to support a continuation of the attack is started promptly, and orders for further use of the squad are given by the platoon leader.



Figure 30. Rocket launcher teams cover likely avenues of tank approach.

Section V. DEFENSE

104. GENERAL. The weapons squad is used within the rifle platoon area to assist in the defense of the assigned platoon area. The platoon leader closely checks that the squad weapons furnish the maximum protection to the platoon defense area and coordinate with the over-all fire plans of the company and battalion.

105. MISSION. a. The *light machine gun teams* of front-line rifle platoons are assigned missions by the rifle platoon leader according to the battalion fire plan in order to form a band of fire across the battalion front. They are used within the platoon positions to protect the platoon areas, exchange mutual supporting fires with adjacent units, and deliver final protective fires. The light machine gun teams of the support platoon and of the platoons of the reserve company protect their platoon defense areas, cover dangerous avenues of approach with the battle position, and support adjacent units.

b. The primary mission of the *rocket launcher team* is to furnish close-in antitank protection for the platoon. This is equally applicable whether the rocket launcher is used in the front-line platoons, support platoons, or platoons of the reserve company.

106. SELECTION OF FIRING POSITIONS. Positions for the light machine gun and rocket launcher are selected by the platoon leader before the detailed

organization of the platoon position. Positions selected may be within a rifle squad defense area, between rifle squad defense areas, or on the flank of the rifle platoon. Supplementary positions to protect the flanks and rear of the platoon are prepared as required. (For additional information, see par. 97.)

107. SQUAD DEFENSE ORDER. On receiving the platoon defense order, the squad leader makes a reconnaissance of the position areas assigned to the teams of his squad and notes the location of the rifle squads and supporting weapons with which he coordinates. He then issues his order to the squad on the position to be organized when practicable. The defense order follows the outline indicated for the squad attack order (par. 99), and it has the following additional instructions:

a. Final protective fires of the light machine gun, to include the method of calling for these fires, the location where signals can be given, and rates and duration of fire.

b. Organization of the ground, including type of emplacements (app. V), other constructions, and work priority.

108. ORGANIZATION OF THE POSITION. After issuing the squad defense order, the squad leader moves his two teams directly to their firing positions. Each weapon is located temporarily to cover its assigned sector of fire. The squad leader personally checks the observation and sectors of fire allowed by the selected positions and completes the

coordination with the rifle squads. Work then is begun on the preparation of the positions. Responsibilities of the squad leader during the preparation of positions include—

a. Check of the final protective line of the light machine gun (see FM 23-55). The extent of the line and the dead space is reported to the platoon leader.

b. Supervision of the clearing of fields of fire.

c. Disposition of the initial ammunition supply and selection of routes for supply.

d. Preparation of range cards for each firing position.

e. Selection and preparation of his personal position, at a location where he can watch the platoon leader for orders and control both teams of his squad. When this cannot be done from one position, the platoon leader decides which team the squad leader controls. The other team is commanded by the gunner and receives its orders directly from the platoon leader.

f. Selection and supervision of the preparation of alternate and supplementary position.

g. Inspection of cover and concealment of men and weapons.

109. CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE. During the hostile preparatory bombardment of the position, the men of the squad take cover in their prepared positions. As soon as the artillery fire or the air bombardment lifts, men take firing positions to meet the attack.

a. Light machine gun team.

- (1) Initial fires of a light machine gun located in a front-line platoon defense area are coordinated with the rifle platoon fires. As the enemy attack advances, the light machine gun fires at suitable targets in its sector of fire. Rates of fire are increased as the enemy comes nearer the position. Final protective fires are delivered on call.
- (2) During periods of reduced visibility, the gun is laid on its final protective line. When final protective fires are called for, only those guns open fire whose final protective lines protect the unit calling for the fire. When visibility is good, the squad leader or gunner determines the rate and duration of fire on the final protective line. For conditions of reduced visibility, the platoon order gives the rate and the duration of fire. In the absence of instructions, the usual rate is 150 rounds per minute for 2 minutes and then 75 rounds per minute until ordered to cease firing. (See FM 23-55).
- (3) Light machine guns of the support platoon or of platoons of the reserve company are used to stop the enemy who break through the main line of resistance, to stop an enemy envelopment, or to support a planned counterattack.

b. Rocket launcher team. The rocket launcher team opens fire on hostile tanks when they come within

effective range. It continues to fire until forced to take cover to protect itself from the crushing action of the tank. The firing position is resumed as soon as the tank passes, and the team then fires at the rear of the tank. If there are no hostile tanks, the rocket launcher team fires at crew-served weapons and enemy groups. For maximum fire effect and to prevent early disclosure of its position, the rocket launcher opens fire only at short range.

CHAPTER 5

RIFLE PLATOON

Section I. GENERAL.

110. ORGANIZATION. The rifle platoon consists of a platoon headquarters, three rifle squads, and one weapons squad. The platoon headquarters includes the platoon leader, platoon sergeant, assistant platoon sergeant, two messengers, and an aid man attached from the regimental medical company.

111. DUTIES OF PLATOON HEADQUARTERS PERSONNEL. a. The *platoon leader* is responsible for the training, discipline, control, and tactical employment of his platoon. He develops responsibility and leadership in his squad leaders by giving instructions through his chain of command.

b. The *platoon sergeant* is the second-in-command. He assists the platoon leader in controlling all operations and takes a position where he best can assist in that control. He takes command when the leader is absent.

c. The *assistant platoon sergeant* enforces orders concerning cover, concealment, and discipline. He usually is in rear of the platoon where he observes the situation on the flanks and rear. He

supervises the ammunition supply and distribution.

d. *Messengers* maintain liaison between the company commander and the platoon leader. When the company prepares for action, one messenger reports to the company commander and one remains with the platoon leader.

e. The *attached aid man* provides first-aid treatment for men of the platoon.

112. CONTROL AND COMMUNICATION. The platoon leader controls his platoon by oral orders and by arm-and-hand signals. Communication with company headquarters is by radio, telephone, messenger, or visual signals.

113. AMMUNITION SUPPLY. Before combat, ammunition is issued in the assembly area. During combat, the platoon and its attachments draw ammunition either from a company ammunition supply point or from a designated company vehicle. The assistant platoon sergeant supervises ammunition replenishment.

114. ANTI-AIRCRAFT SECURITY. For anti-aircraft security, see paragraph 12.

115. ANTITANK DEFENSE. Antitank defense for men is covered in paragraph 13. Antitank weapons of the platoon are used as noted in paragraphs 50 and 90.

Section II. MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

116. GENERAL. During the advance in route or tactical column, the rifle platoon moves as part of the company. During foot marches, the usual formation for the platoon is a column of files on each side of the road (march column formation, app. II). This formation gives maximum speed and control. It also is used to move the platoon from one location to another in a combat area behind friendly front lines. During the approach march, the rifle platoon, or elements of it, may perform reconnaissance and security missions—for example, an advance party, a flank guard, or a march outpost.

117. ADVANCE PARTY. a. When the platoon is used as an advance party (fig. 31), it is sent forward from the support. (See par. 22.) The advance party in turn sends forward a squad as the point. The mission of the advance party is to secure the uninterrupted forward movement of the support.

b. The advance party is disposed in a column of squads, each squad in a column of two's with one file on each side of the road, and there is a distance of not more than 5 paces between men. The advance party commander usually marches at the head of the advance party or between the point and the advance party. He goes where he best can observe the ground and direct the action. He is responsible that the assigned route or direction of march is followed. He usually is responsible for the rate of march of the advance guard, and he prescribes the distance at which the point is to

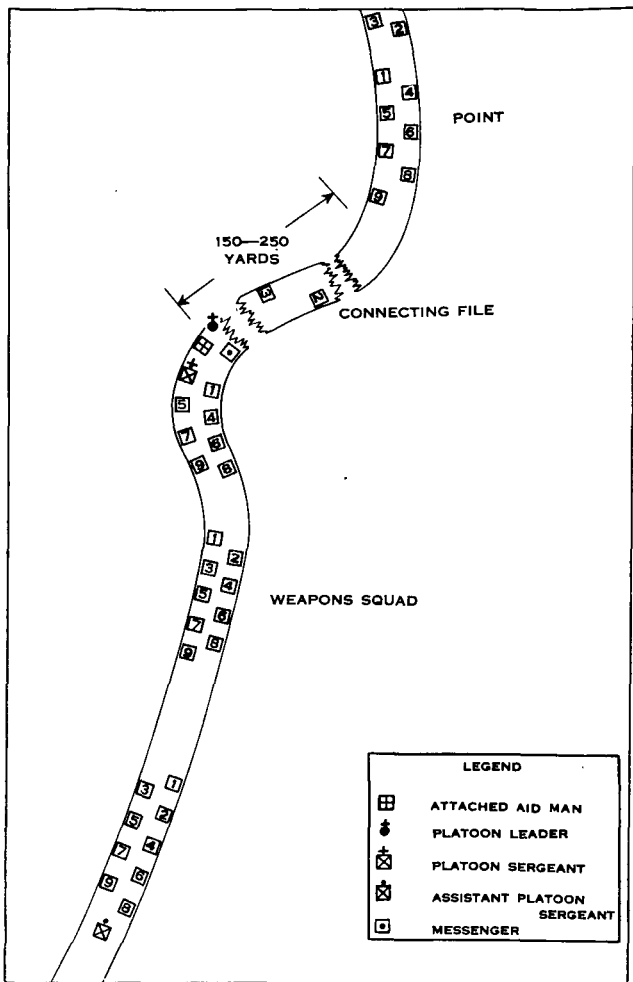


Figure 31. Platoon as the advance party.

precede the advance party. In open country, this varies between 150 and 250 yards. At night or under conditions of poor visibility, distances are reduced considerably. The advance party sends forward connecting files to maintain contact with the point. (See par. 53.)

c. Because of the small size and the mission of the advance party, its flank security normally is limited to visual reconnaissance. Distant dangerous localities on the flanks are reported to the support commander, who sends out the necessary flank protection from the support.

d. When the column halts, the advance party provides security to the front. It immediately sends observers to nearby points, giving observation to the front and flanks.

118. FLANK GUARD. The platoon, acting as a flank guard for a marching column, conforms in general to the doctrine governing the use of a rifle squad as a flank guard. (See par. 26.)

119. MARCH OUTPOST. The rifle platoon may establish the security for a marching column during a temporary halt. It occupies critical terrain features controlling the approaches to the route of march. Its actions depend upon the duration of the halt, the nearness of the enemy and likelihood of early contact, and the terrain. The rifle platoon leader receives specific instructions from the company commander.

120. COMBAT FORMATION. In the approach march,

after the initial contact is made or as it is being made, the leading rifle platoon (advance party) and other selected platoons deploy and use suitable formations. These formations, which are used in the attack as well as in the approach march, vary with the terrain and enemy situation. The company commander ordinarily prescribes the initial formation and allows the platoon leader to change the formation as necessary. The usual formations are the platoon column, vee, line, wedge, and echelon (see app. II).

a. The *platoon column* is used to approach an enemy position which is believed to be directly to the front but not yet located. It normally is the best formation for movement in woods, smoke, fog, at night, and through defiles and along trails. It is easy to control and is flexible; it provides some all-around protection and permits the immediate action toward the flanks.

b. The *platoon vee* is used when the enemy is believed to be directly to the front and his approximate strength and location are known. The bulk of the firepower of the platoon can be directed to the front. It provides security to both front and flanks and favors maneuver and control.

c. The *platoon line* is used when the location and strength of the enemy is known. It lets the platoon deliver the greatest firepower to the front in the shortest time. It is used primarily during the assault phase of an attack. It also is used to rapidly cross an area exposed to mortar, artillery, or long-range machine gun fire.

d The *platoon wedge* is used when little is

known of the enemy strength and disposition or when the platoon is acting alone. It provides a high degree of flexibility, gives all-around protection, and is easy to control.

e. The *platoon echelon right (left)* is used to protect an open or exposed flank. It permits heavy fire to the front and in the direction of the echelon.

121. ACTION WHEN CONTACT IS ESTABLISHED. a.

When the point meets enemy resistance which it is unable to overcome, the advance party deploys and attacks aggressively without hesitation or prolonged reconnaissance (see fig. 32). Maximum effort is made to clear the way quickly for the remainder of the column. The advance party leader moves forward rapidly when the initial contact is made and decides upon the best method of attack. He may use the point squad for a frontal attack and maneuver with the remainder of the platoon, or he may make a direct frontal attack with the platoon. The method of attack and the formation used (par. 120) depends upon the terrain and enemy situation. When the resistance is overcome, the march is resumed promptly. If the platoon is deployed extensively, it may be replaced by another platoon from the support.

b. If the advance party is unable to overcome the enemy resistance, it makes maximum effort to immobilize the enemy by fire and to locate his flanks. Further action is taken according to instructions from the support commander.

c. Once contact is established, the support commander may find it necessary to deploy laterally



Figure 32. When the point is unable quickly to overcome enemy resistance, the advance party immediately deploys and attacks.

across the axis of advance to guard against a surprise attack from the flank or definitely to locate the enemy. In this case, the advance party platoon or a rifle platoon from the support proper may be assigned a zone of reconnaissance and successive objectives within this zone. The width of the zone depends upon the terrain and the observation. When moving to successive objectives in a zone of reconnaissance, the platoon leader often moves ahead with a security squad to a specific terrain feature. Having reconnoitered the terrain feature, he signals the platoon forward, and then, with the security squad, he moves on to another terrain feature.

Section III. PREPARATION FOR THE ATTACK

122. GENERAL. Before the attack, the platoon may halt in a covered area selected by the company commander. This area usually is part of the company or battalion assembly area. While the platoon is preparing for the attack, the platoon leader, accompanied by the platoon sergeant and a messenger, moves forward to receive the company attack order. The assistant platoon sergeant supervises the preparation of the platoon. (See pars. 61 and 93.)

123. COMPANY COMMANDER'S ORDERS. The company commander decides whether the platoon initially will be in the assault or in the support echelon. If the platoon is in the assault echelon, it is given a section of the line of departure or an area

from which to start its attack, a direction of attack, and a terrain objective or a series of objectives to capture. The width of the zone may be shown by assigning a frontage between 100 and 250 yards. The platoon seldom is assigned boundaries; thus, it uses covered routes in adjacent platoon zones of action, provided this is coordinated with the adjacent unit. The time of attack normally is given in the company order.

124. TROOP LEADING PROCEDURE. After the platoon leader receives the company attack order, his actions usually follow a logical sequence called troop leading procedure. The leader uses this procedure because it saves him time and helps him remember just what to do. Upon receiving the attack order, the platoon leader takes the following actions:

a. Reconnaissance plan.

- (1) Studies his map and plans his reconnaissance.
- (2) Coordinates with the other platoon leaders before they leave the vicinity. His plan includes the establishment of liaison with the leader of any friendly unit in contact with the enemy and through which the platoon will pass. Valuable first-hand information of the enemy's strength and location can be obtained from leaders of these units.

b. Observation post. (See fig. 33.)

- (1) Selects an observation post that gives maximum observation of his zone of ac-

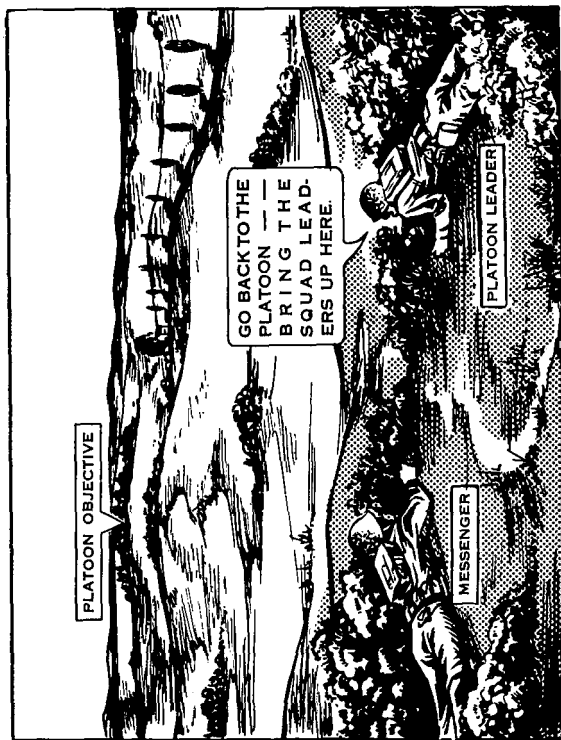


Figure 38. The platoon leader sends for the squad leaders to give them his attack order at the observation point.



Figure 34. During his reconnaissance, the platoon leader makes his estimate of the situation and formulates his plan of attack.

tion and adequate cover and concealment.

- (2) Sends his messenger back to guide the squad leaders to the platoon observation post to receive his attack order. If appropriate, he directs that the assistant platoon sergeant move the platoon forward to the platoon attack position.

c. **Reconnaissance.** (See (fig. 34.) Goes on a personal reconnaissance, during which time he makes a continuous estimate of the situation to include a terrain analysis. In this terrain analysis, the military aspects of the area are interpreted and evaluated in terms of five factors: critical terrain features, observation and fields of fire, obstacles, cover and concealment, and avenues of approach.

- (1) *Critical terrain features.* Studies the terrain from both the enemy's viewpoint and the viewpoint of his platoon. He decides which elements of the terrain are vital and will have a marked influence on the operation. He considers which terrain features his platoon must seize or use or deny the enemy in order to accomplish the platoon's mission. Examples of critical terrain features are the platoon objective, high ground, a clump of trees, a draw, a ditch, or a road embankment. The study is not limited to the platoon's zone of action. The use of adjacent critical terrain features is requested if they will further the success of the operation.
- (2) *Observation and fields of fire.* Studies the terrain to find observation and fields of

fire that are available to the enemy as well as to his platoon. He notes points that need to be neutralized to limit the enemy's observation or fields of fire on his route of advance. He considers fields of fire of enemy weapons in adjacent platoon zones from which the enemy can place fire on the advance of his platoon. He notes the good points of observation available to him which will aid control as he advances with his platoon. He notes fields of fires available for the weapons within his platoon and for any attached weapons. If indicated, he requests supporting mortars or artillery to cover terrain where his weapons have poor fields of fire.

- (3) *Obstacles.* Studies the natural features of the terrain which will stop or delay the advance of his platoon. He considers which natural obstacles may give his platoon flank security. Studies artificial obstacles such as minefields, wire entanglements, and blown-up bridges to determine their possible influence on the operation. He considers the enemy's observation and fields of fire available to protect the obstacle. He considers special equipment needed to breach the obstacle. He studies the terrain to determine if there is a way of avoiding the obstacle.
- (4) *Cover and concealment.* Considers each

possible route that his platoon may use in moving to its objective. First, he tries to find a route that will give him cover from enemy fire and, at the same time, concealment from enemy observation. Since this combination rarely can be found, he next considers routes which include irregularities of the terrain providing cover and concealment for part of the way to his objective. He considers the use of smoke to provide concealment. Determines the cover and concealment available to his own supporting or attached weapons. Considers covered or concealed positions from which he can launch the assault. He also considers the cover and concealment available to his platoon after the capture of the objective.

- (5) *Avenues of approach.* Studies the terrain to determine the best avenues of approach from the line of departure to the objective. He looks for a route which provides cover and concealment and aids control and speed of movement of the platoon. He avoids a route which prematurely masks direct fire supporting weapons. Determines which avenues of approach the enemy may use in counterattacking with foot troops or tanks. Looks for routes he can use to evacuate his casualties and to resupply his platoon and uses those which are best protected by cover and concealment. He tries to find a

direct route, but he selects a longer route if it provides better cover.

d. Estimate of the situation.

(1) Considers throughout his reconnaissance his company's and platoon's mission in relation to the terrain. He now examines in detail the courses of action which the platoon may follow in accomplishing its mission. He estimates the enemy's strength and disposition and estimates what the enemy can do in his zone of action. He considers his own strength and planned locations, the capabilities of friendly supporting units, and the missions of adjacent platoons. His estimate of the situation is a continuous process, through all phases of combat.

(2) Decides upon his method of attack (see par. 125).

e. Orders. Gives his attack order (see par. 126).

f. Supervision. Supervises the preparation for the attack after he gives his order.

125. METHOD OF ATTACK. **a.** The platoon advances from the line of departure to the assault position by fire and maneuver. In addition to the heavy indirect fires furnished by the artillery and mortars, the platoon is supported by many direct-fire weapons. These include the 57-mm rifles from the weapons platoon, the machine guns and 75-mm rifles from the heavy weapons company, and at times the fires of a tank platoon.

b. In some cases, prearranged supporting fires are adequate to keep the enemy down and neutral-

ize his resistance throughout the advance from the line of departure to the assault position. In this event, the platoon advances rapidly as a unit across the line of departure to the assault position under the protection of these heavy fires. Under these conditions, it is unnecessary to add to these fires the fire power of riflemen until the assault starts. If there is a suitable firing position near the line of departure, the light machine gun may add its fire to those of the other supporting weapons.

c. The platoon uses a covered approach if one is available. If there is no covered approach, the platoon makes a rapid frontal advance to the assault position, taking maximum advantage of available supporting fires and smoke. Occasional enemy weapons encountered are taken under fire immediately by the advancing riflemen. This situation occurs often when the platoon attacks as a part of the company, battalion, and regiment in a coordinated attack.

d. Prearranged supporting fires may not neutralize all enemy direct-fire weapons. The rifle platoon then reinforces the supporting fires with a portion of its own fires to let other platoon elements advance. If this condition is determined before crossing the line of departure, a part of the rifle platoon (for example, a rifle squad and the light machine gun team) may execute a frontal attack to make the enemy's fires ineffective and hold him in position. At the same time, the remainder of the platoon advances to the assault position under the protective fires of the first element, using maximum cover. However, in most cases where

the supporting fires are unable to neutralize enemy weapons or to keep them neutralized throughout the advance to the assault position, the effect of those weapons will become apparent after the platoon crosses the line of departure. When the platoon receives the fires of such weapons, the areas of the weapons not neutralized are taken under fire immediately by the advancing riflemen. If this enemy fire continues, it then is necessary for the platoon leader to use fire and maneuver within the platoon itself. He uses the fire of his organic light machine gun, any attached supporting weapons, and a portion of the rifle elements to neutralize the enemy weapons and let the remainder of the platoon maneuver. (See fig. 35.) He also adjusts supporting fires of higher commanders on the enemy weapons not neutralized.

e. The platoon also attacks other than as an assault element of a larger unit. To gain fire superiority when attacking as a unit, the platoon uses a portion of its fire power to replace or add to the supporting fires normally furnished by higher commanders. This usually is done in the following situations:

- (1) When the platoon acts as a combat patrol and only artillery or mortar concentrations are available on call by radio.
- (2) When the leading platoon in the approach march makes contact and heavy supporting fires are not available immediately. The platoon then attacks aggressively, using fire and maneuver within itself to rapidly overcome minor resistance.

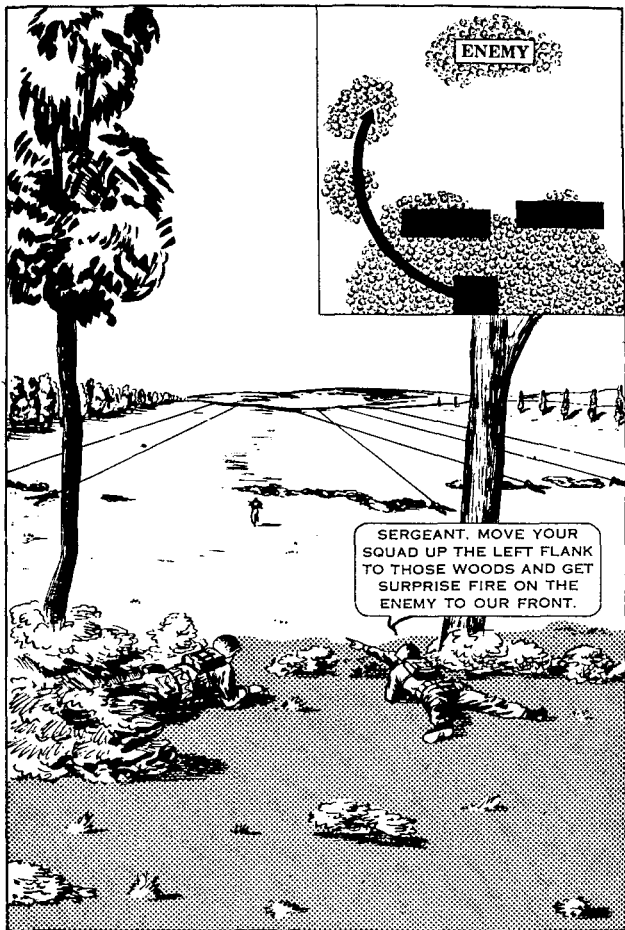


Figure 35. In the attack, the platoon advances by fire and maneuver.

- (3) When in the pursuit or in the continuation of a fast moving attack in which supporting weapons have not displaced rapidly.
- (4) When attacking over terrain such as heavy woods, jungles, or mountains and when supporting weapons cannot be brought forward or have no fields of fire.

f. Timely coordination of the assault with the lifting of support fires is a most important element in infantry combat. The termination of supporting fires is indicated to the riflemen of the assault echelon by a visual signal fired by a selected supporting unit. Squads not already deployed as they approach the assault position move into formation as skirmishers (app. II). The platoon takes up the assault fire and advances rapidly to the objective as the artillery, mortars, and other supporting weapons lift their fires from the objective in order not to endanger friendly troops.

126. ORDERS. (See fig. 36.) a. The platoon leader gives his order at a previously selected observation post, and there he orients his squad leaders by pointing out important terrain features. The platoon order includes the following:

- (1) Pertinent enemy information; information of friendly troops to include the company objective, the missions of adjacent units, and the support expected from the company weapons platoon, battalion heavy weapons, elements of the heavy mortar company, and the artillery.



Figure 36. The platoon leader gives his attack orders at an observation point.

- (2) Platoon objective, line of departure, frontage, hour of attack, formation, and direction of attack.
- (3) Line or area of departure for each squad, the mission or targets of each squad, security measures, and instructions for the reorganization on the objective.
- (4) Location of the battalion aid station and other administrative details.
- (5) Communication instructions to include prearranged signals, the platoon leader's location, and the company command post location.

b. The platoon leader makes certain that squad leaders understand the order. Upon receipt of the order, the squad leaders prepare for the attack as outlined in paragraphs 61 and 68.

Section IV. ATTACK

127. MOVEMENT ACROSS THE LINE OF DEPARTURE.

The platoon moves in march column from the assembly area to the attack position. The platoon may move from the attack position to the line of departure in a partially deployed formation, or in the attack formation. The determining factors are the terrain and hostile observation and fire. The movement from the attack position is timed so that the leading elements of the platoon cross the line of departure without halting at the specified time. The failure to cross the line of departure on time causes a loss of maximum advantage of supporting fires, and the flanks of adjacent units may become exposed.

128. CONDUCT OF THE ATTACK. a. The principles outlined in paragraph 70 for squad conduct of the attack are applicable to the platoon. The platoon moves across the line of departure, using available cover and concealment. Enemy fire and observation are neutralized by the fires and smoke provided by supporting weapons, particularly from the artillery and mortars. Mortar and artillery fires cover the movement of the assault rifle platoon to within assaulting distance of the objective, usually 100 to 150 yards. When troops have effective supporting fires, they take advantage of it and move rapidly. When the assault elements are within assaulting distance of the objective, the supporting fires are lifted on call by the company or battalion commander. Then the advance rifle units immediately start their assault under cover of their own direct-fire weapons.

b. **Advance against long-range fires.** During the advance of the platoon to the assault position, the supporting weapons may not completely neutralize enemy fires from weapons which the platoon cannot combat (distant machine guns, mortars, and artillery). The platoon leader then has three possible alternatives: to detour danger areas by using defilade to escape machine gun fires or to bypass impact areas of enemy mortars and artillery; to move the platoon through the danger area as rapidly as possible; or to stop the advance.

- (1) When the terrain or the size of the enemy concentration permits bypassing, this method is the best.
- (2) When the enemy fires cannot be bypassed,

often they are light enough to permit the rapid movement through the danger area at the cost of only a few casualties. In such situations, the platoon leader unhesitatingly moves the platoon forward rapidly, since defensive fires usually increase in intensity and accuracy as the fighting progresses, particularly when the attacker suspends or eases its pressure.

- (3) To stop the advance gives the enemy more time to bring down fires and at the same time deprives adjacent units the support upon which they are depending. Halts which are not absolutely forced by enemy action usually result in needless casualties because of the increased length of time men are exposed to enemy fire. Therefore, the platoon leader stops his advance only when a continuation of forward movement would result in excessive casualties. When the platoon is forced to stop, the platoon leader immediately reports his position to his company commander, the enemy action which caused his halt, and any other information. At the same time, he is alert to resume the advance, should the enemy fires cease or lighten in intensity.

c. Advance against short-range fires.

- (1) Where the enemy fires come from small arms within effective range of the platoon weapons, all members of the platoon immediately fire at these enemy weapons.

(See par. 60.) When the platoon's fire fails to neutralize the enemy weapons the advance is made by fire and maneuver within the platoon itself.

- (2) Specific targets holding up the advance are pointed out to the leaders of supporting weapons units, accompanying forward observers, and to the company commander. At the same time, the platoon leader uses all means within the platoon to further the advance. Enemy are pinned down by the fire of one platoon element while the remainder of the platoon maneuvers forward under the cover of this fire. Then the original maneuver element of the platoon occupies firing positions and covers the advance of the other element.
- (3) Maneuver in the zone of an adjacent platoon is often the only way a squad or small group can approach the enemy position. (See fig. 37.) The platoon leader uses such a route after coordinating with the adjacent platoon.

d. Contact with adjacent units. The platoon protects its flanks by having connecting groups maintain contact with adjacent units (see par. 75). When a considerable gap develops between his platoon and an adjacent platoon, the platoon leader reinforces the connecting group and promptly reports the situation.

129. ASSAULT. a. Before the assault, the platoon works its way as close to the hostile position as

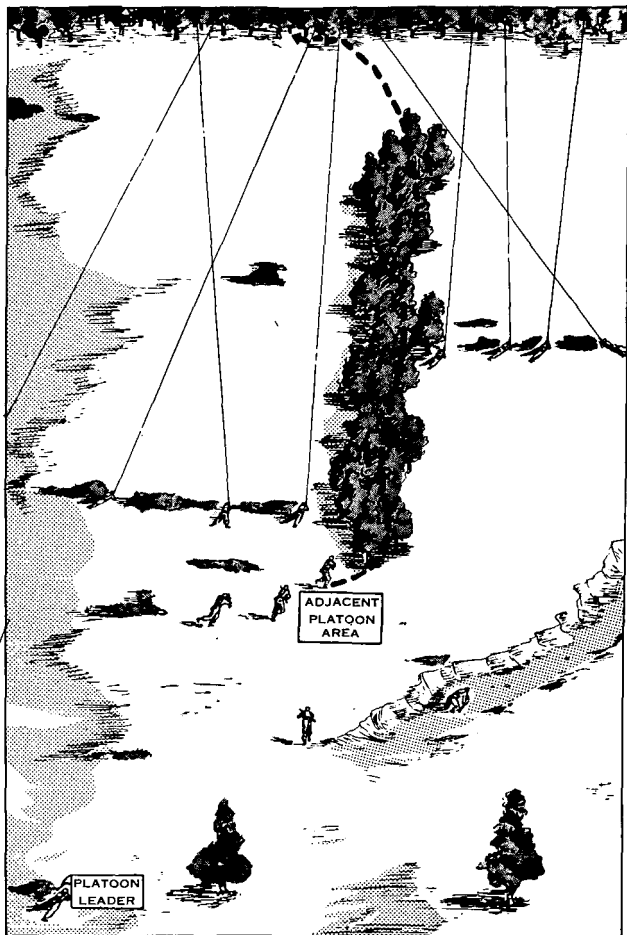


Figure 37. Maneuver in the zone of an adjacent platoon may be used to approach the enemy's position.

possible, taking maximum advantage of the shock effect of friendly supporting fires on the enemy. When the platoon attacks as part of the company, the assault is made at a specified time or on a signal from the company commander. If a platoon is assaulting alone, the prearranged signal for lifting supporting fires is given by the platoon leader.

b. As the supporting fires lift, the objective is covered with assault fire from all available weapons. The enemy is beaten down, blinded, or destroyed by fires from rifles, automatic rifles, rifle grenades, hand grenades, rocket launchers, and recoilless rifles. Ammunition is used unhesitatingly and replenished. The platoon does not hesitate or stop at the near edge of the objective, but drives forward to the far edge before the enemy has time to recover from the initial shock of the assault. Immediately upon arrival at the far edge of the objective, the platoon prepares for a possible counterattack and for the continuation of the attack to the next objective.

130. REORGANIZATION. a. The platoon leader's first consideration after capture of the objective is to locate the platoon quickly to repel a possible counterattack. When the nature of the objective permits, the attack order includes a plan for dividing the objective into squad sectors so that each squad leader may know the position of his squad on the objective. This may be done by the clock system. An imaginary clock is placed on the objective, with the center of the clock on the center of the objective (see fig. 38). The direction of the enemy to the front is 12 o'clock, the squad sectors

then are assigned by hour numbers. For example: the first squad defends and reorganizes from 9 o'clock to 11 o'clock; the second squad, from 11 o'clock to 1 o'clock; and the third squad, from 1 o'clock to 3 o'clock. Immediately upon the capture of the objective, the squads move, without further orders, to their assigned locations. The platoon leader inspects the platoon area and makes adjustments to take advantage of the terrain and to meet enemy resistance.

b. As soon as positions are secure to repel a possible counterattack, the platoon leader prepares to continue the attack. Weapons are checked and ammunition is redistributed. A report is sent to the company commander stating the effective strength of the platoon, the condition of weapons, and the status of ammunition. A squad greatly reduced in strength may be combined with another squad, or its men may be distributed among the other squads. However, a squad of five men which includes a leader, an automatic rifleman, and a rifle grenadier, may be an effective fighting force. Orders for the continuation of the attack usually are given by the company commander. The attack of a new objective is made like the initial attack. The platoon leader makes a brief reconnaissance to the front and flanks to observe the area of advance, looks for available routes for moving the platoon forward, makes an estimate of the situation, and formulates a plan for the continuation of the attack.

131. SUPPORT PLATOON. a. In the early phases of an attack, the rifle company commander often

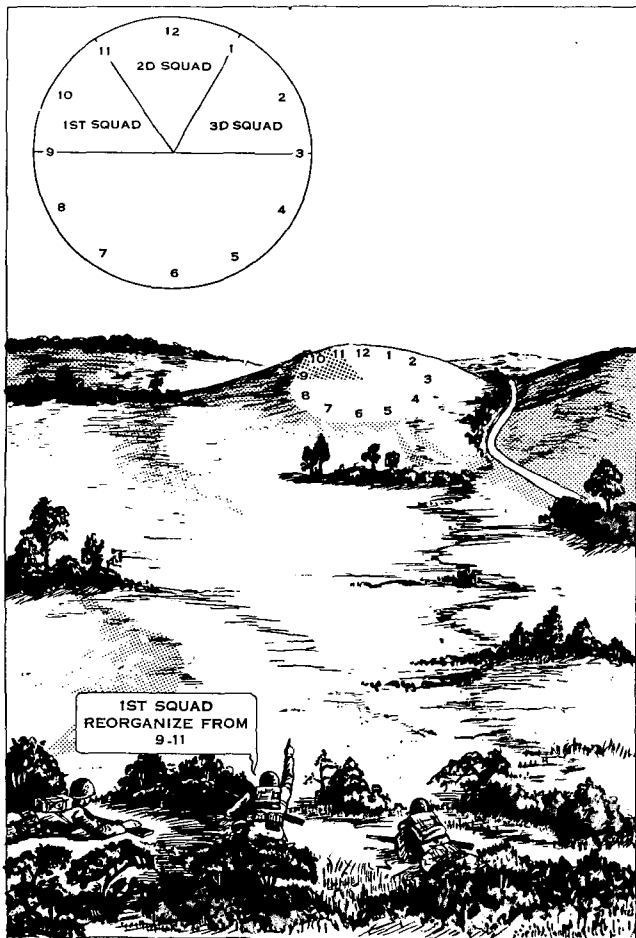
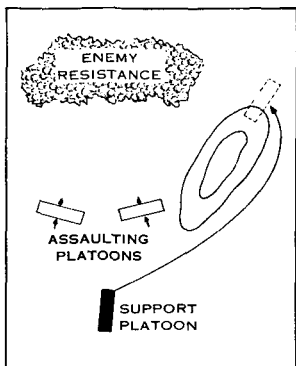
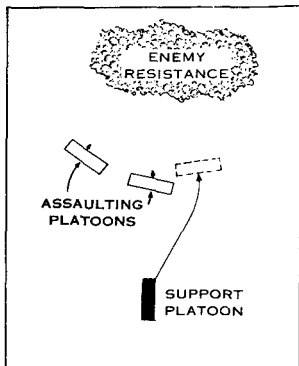


Figure 38. The clock system may be used for reorganization on the objective.

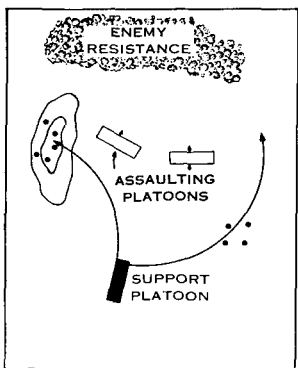
keeps a platoon in support. Support platoon missions (fig. 39) may include one or more of the following:



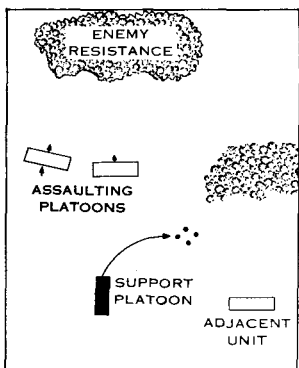
① ATTACK THE FLANK OF POINTS OF RESISTANCE HOLDING UP THE ASSAULTING PLATOONS



② TAKE OVER THE MISSION OF AN ASSAULTING PLATOON

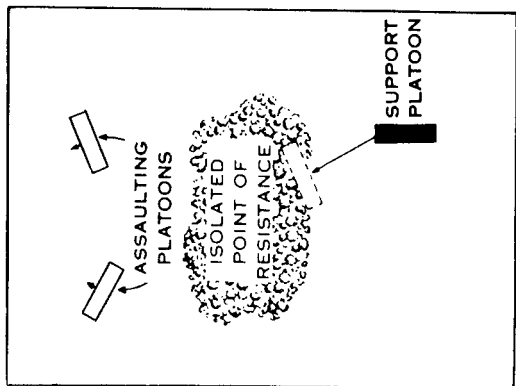


③ FURNISH SECURITY TO THE FLANKS USING COMBAT PATROLS

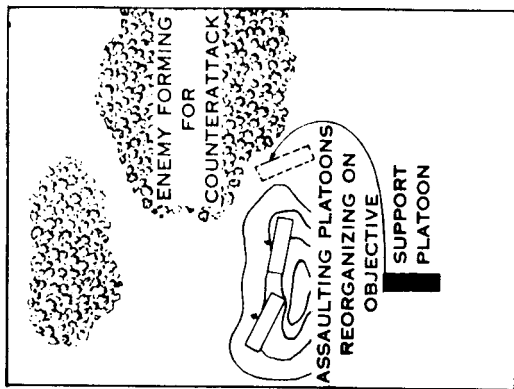


④ MAINTAIN CONTACT WITH ADJACENT UNITS BY MEANS OF CONNECTING GROUPS

Figure 39. Missions of the support platoon.



5 MOP-UP A POSITION OVERRUN BY THE ASSAULTING PLATOONS



6 FURNISH PROTECTION AGAINST COUNTERATTACKS DURING REORGANIZATION

Figure 39—Continued.

- (1) Furnish flank security by means of flank combat patrols.
- (2) Maintain connecting group contact with adjacent units.
- (3) Attack the flank of the enemy holding up the assault elements.
- (4) Take over the mission of an assault platoon if it is disorganized or lost, or suffers excessive casualties.
- (5) Mop-up a position overrun by the assault elements.
- (6) Furnish protection against counterattacks during the reorganization.

b. The support platoon advances by bounds as directed by the company commander. It uses a column formation until committed to action. The platoon leader prevents it from merging with the assault elements. During the advance, the support platoon leader constantly observes the action of the assault elements and the situation on the flanks. As the situation progresses, he makes tentative plans for the use of his platoon.

Section V. DEFENSE

132. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT. a. A rifle company organizes its assigned defense area by assigning areas to its rifle platoons. Each rifle platoon is assisted by the fires of supporting weapons. The defense areas organized by a rifle platoon may be classified according to location as a front-line area, a support area, or a reserve area. Each of these areas is organized similarly. Each platoon nor-

mally occupies one defense area ; however, the terrain may require that elements of one platoon occupy separate defense areas. In this case, each area is commanded separately and operates directly under the company commander.

b. The mission of the front-line platoon is, with the support of other units, to stop the enemy by fire in front of the main line of resistance and to repel him by close combat if he reaches it.

c. The primary mission of the support platoon is to support the front-line platoons by fire. Other missions include extending in depth the defense of the company area, protecting the flanks and rear of the company area, limiting penetrations, and rarely ejecting the enemy by counterattack.

133. TROOP LEADING PROCEDURE. When the platoon leader receives the company defense order, his actions usually follow a logical sequence. These actions are called troop leading procedure. The leader uses this procedure because it saves him time, helps him remember just what to do, and provides the maximum available time for the troops to prepare for the defense. Having received the company order, the rifle platoon leader takes the following actions :

a. Initial plans.

- (1) Makes a tentative plan for defense. This gives him a basis for later action and lets him orient his leaders in time for them to do certain things early, rather than after the platoon order is issued. This plan includes the general tentative loca-

tions and missions of the three rifle squads, weapons of the weapons squad, and attached troops.

- (2) Plans the movement of his platoon to the assigned defense area and gives the movement order. He does this to secure a controlled, timely arrival on the positions.
- (3) Decides where, when, and to whom the order is to be given, and he notifies the persons concerned.
- (4) Plans his reconnaissance, which is as detailed as time permits. He gives his major attention to critical points. He informs his lower leaders of his plan of reconnaissance so that he can be located quickly if needed.
- (5) Coordinates with adjacent units and arranges for the supporting weapons to be used in his area.

b. Reconnaissance.

- (1) Goes on his personal reconnaissance of the ground, taking with him the men he needs. His reconnaissance is as detailed as time permits.
- (2) Examines the immediate front of the position to find areas which give the enemy close, covered approaches to his position. He looks for natural obstacles and exposed terrain over which the enemy would have difficulty in moving. He looks for commanding terrain features which may be occupied as hostile observation

posts. He looks for areas within the platoon defensive position which are exposed to hostile observation.

- (3) Examines the ground in his defensive area to determine the exact limits of his area of responsibility. He decides where to coordinate with adjacent units and with supporting weapons in his platoon position. He selects locations for squad defense areas, including supplementary positions. He determines the missions and general locations for his light machine gun and rocket launcher, including alternate and supplementary positions. He decides on the missions and general locations for attached weapons. He selects routes of communication and supply and the location of his command and observation posts. He determines the priority of work.

c. Orders.

- (1) Goes to the point previously selected to give his order. He adjusts his tentative plan as affected by his reconnaissance and gives his order.
- (2) Informs the company commander of his defense plan.

d. Supervision. Supervises the organization of the platoon defense area.

134. PLATOON DEFENSE ORDER. The platoon defense order is given from an observation point overlooking the platoon defense area, when prac-

ticable. The defense order follows the same 5-paragraph form as the platoon attack order (par. 126), with the following additional instructions:

a. Location and sector of fire for each rifle squad.

b. Location, mission, and sector of fire for each automatic rifle, rocket launcher, light machine gun, and attached weapons.

c. Organization of the ground including the type of emplacements (app. V), other construction, and the priority of work.

135. FRONTAGE AND DEPTH. a. The company commander assigns frontages to his rifle platoons consistent with the natural defensive strength and relative importance of their defense areas. If a platoon occupies an area having poor observation, and poor fields of fire (for example, heavily wooded or broken terrain), the frontage usually does not exceed 300 yards. If the area is open and permits longer fields of fire, a frontage of 600 yards may be assigned. If the terrain is open and flat or an obstacle across its front makes an enemy attack in strength difficult, the frontage assigned to the platoon may exceed 600 yards.

b. The frontage physically occupied by the platoon is determined by the intervals which can be left between fox holes and between adjacent units without jeopardizing the effectiveness of the defense, and by the number of supporting weapons within the area. These intervals are determined by observation, fields of fire, and obstacles. In general, the intervals between fox holes vary from 5

to 20 yards. Under normal conditions, a 25-yard interval is allowed for each crew-served weapon in the platoon area. The platoon covers by fire the portion of its front which is not physically occupied.

c. If the platoon has good fields of fire to the flanks and rear from its front-line fox holes, it may use a depth of only 50 yards. If elements of the platoon must move from their forward positions to get adequate fields of fire to the rear, a depth up to 200 yards may be used.

136. DISTRIBUTION OF SQUADS. (See fig. 40.) a.

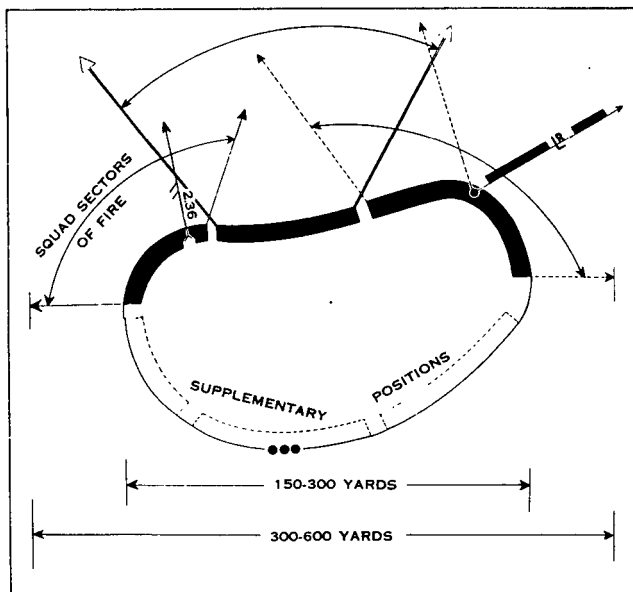


Figure 40. Rifle platoon in defense (schematic).

The three rifle squads of a front-line platoon are placed to deliver their heaviest volume of fire forward of the main line of resistance, both immediately in front of the platoon defense area and across part of the front of adjacent platoons. The squads are placed generally abreast, with the men staggered in depth in an irregular line. When gaps exist between platoons, the flank squads are located to cover them. Rifle squad positions are adjusted to permit supporting weapons in the platoon area to be placed at points from which they can get their best fields of fire.

b. The rifle squads of the support platoon and of the platoons of the reserve company are located to deliver their heaviest volume of fire forward of their platoon defense areas. They cover gaps between the forward platoons and are mutually supporting. Their rifle squads are placed similar to a front-line platoon. At times a platoon may occupy two defense areas, with the platoon sergeant in command of one; however, integrity of rifle squads is maintained. The automatic riflemen normally remain with their squads. The platoon leader places the light machine gun and the rocket launcher where each best can accomplish its mission. Except when the men of the platoon can fire to the flanks and rear from their primary individual emplacements, supplementary positions are constructed for all-around defense. Plans are made for shifting part of the platoon to these positions. Natural cover, drainage lines, ditches, trenches, and other defilade are used for the movement to supplementary positions.

137. FIRE PLAN. a. The *rifle platoon leader* familiarizes himself with the parts of the battalion and company fire plans that affect the defense of his area. He also procures a map or overlay which shows artillery concentrations by positions and designating numbers. When time and facilities permit, he issues copies of this map or overlay to his platoon sergeant and assistant platoon sergeant in order that any one can call for specific fires in event forward observers become casualties. He then plans the fires of his organic and attached weapons to provide the maximum defense of the platoon area in coordination with the company and battalion fire plans. The rifle platoon fire plan includes the assignment and coordination of sectors of fire for each rifle squad and for weapons under the direct control of the platoon.

b. The *front-line rifle platoon* distributes its fire to cover its front and flanks and portions of the fronts of adjacent platoons. Each rifle squad is given a sector of fire. These sectors overlap to get complete coverage of the target areas. Each automatic rifle is emplaced where it can cover the major portion of the squad sector of fire and can fire across the fronts of adjacent squads. It is assigned a principal direction of fire to cover a specific terrain feature or to cover a gap in the final protective fires of the supporting weapons.

c. The *light machine gun* is assigned a sector of fire and a final protective line. It is placed where it gives the maximum protection to the platoon defense area, exchanges mutually supporting fires

with adjacent units, and delivers final protective fires.

d. The *rocket launcher* is assigned a sector of fire and a principal direction of fire. It is placed where it can give maximum antitank protection to the platoon defense area. Its location and principal direction of fire are coordinated with other anti-tank weapons.

e. The *support platoons* and platoons of the reserve company assign their squads sectors of fire which complete the all-around, integrated defense of the area. They cover unit flanks and gaps between units and are prepared to fire on an enemy penetration or envelopment. Their machine guns are given principal directions of fire to cover gaps between forward defense positions and to cover likely routes of hostile approach within the battle position. The rocket launcher is used as in a front-line platoon.

f. The *rifle platoon leader* tells his men how the fires will be controlled. These measures to control platoon fires normally include selection of terrain features over which the enemy must pass before the platoon opens fire; signals for shifting fires or moving to supplementary positions; and signals for final protective fires.

138. COMMAND AND OBSERVATION POST. The platoon leader does not have separate command and observation posts. He selects a position from which he best can observe the front and flanks of his area and control his troops. His position preferably has cover for messengers and concealed

routes to the company command post. The platoon sergeant is placed where he best can assist the platoon leader in the control of the platoon. He watches the platoon leader for commands, and controls the part of the platoon most difficult for the platoon leader to control directly. Forward observers and commanders of supporting weapons located in the area usually station themselves within easy communicating distance of the platoon leader.

139. ORGANIZATION OF GROUND. a. The organization of the platoon defense area is continuous. After the locations for weapons emplacements and individual fox holes are selected, the primary considerations are to get the men dug in, the position concealed from air and ground observation, and the front cleared sufficiently to permit effective fire. The company order normally states the sequence in which the tasks are done. This sequence is—

- (1) Preparing fox holes and weapons emplacements.
- (2) Clearing fields of fire.
- (3) Constructing wire entanglements and other obstacles.
- (4) Preparing routes for supply, communication, and evacuation.
- (5) Laying antitank mines, trip flares, and antipersonnel mines.

b. When the platoon reaches its defense area, crew-served weapons are mounted immediately in temporary firing positions, fields of fire are cleared, and work is started on the position. Weapons em-

placements and fox holes are dug, and positions are concealed from air and ground observation. This work is done concurrently. Covered and concealed routes for supply, communication, and evacuation are prepared and overhead cover, alternate and supplementary positions, wire entanglements, and other obstacles are prepared as time permits.

140. CONDUCT OF THE DÉFENSE. a. The platoon holds its position at all costs and never withdraws except upon the verified order of the company commander. Successful defense depends on each unit holding its area. Initial fires of weapons used within the front-line platoon area are withheld until the enemy comes within effective rifle range (maximum 500 yards) or when the enemy reaches a certain terrain feature. This gives maximum surprise and prevents the premature disclosure of the battle position. During the hostile preparatory fires, the platoon takes cover in its prepared positions. As soon as the hostile preparation fires cease, all weapons are readied to meet any hostile ground attack.

b. The duties of the platoon leader during the conduct of the defense include—

- (1) Fire control, including the opening of initial fires and the shifting of fires to the most dangerous targets.
- (2) Requests for additional supporting fires as required.
- (3) Shifting of men within the platoon position to defend it.

(4) Keeping the company commander informed of the situation.

c. Unit leaders control the fires of their units and direct them against the most threatening targets. The platoon leader keeps fire control by continuous observation and timely orders. If an adjacent defense area is penetrated, fire is directed against the enemy to keep him from widening the break and enveloping nearby platoons. If the platoon is threatened with envelopment, the platoon leader changes the locations of his men to get all-around defense of his area. Except in emergencies, nonorganic weapons used within the platoon area by higher commanders are not shifted without the approval of the commanders concerned. The decision to move a crew-served weapon from the primary to the alternate position is made by the immediate commander in the vicinity of the weapon. This move prevents destruction of the weapon and crew by enemy fire or infiltrating parties. Usually, this move is accomplished during lulls in the fire fight. During a fire fight, such a movement is exceptional and will be influenced by available cover and concealment. When two or more weapons are moved to alternate positions, the weapons move by echelon. The commander of the defense area is notified immediately. (See par. 82.)

d. It usually is necessary to make adjustments at night to meet conditions of reduced visibility. These adjustments may include minor shifting of weapons within the platoon defense area, use of security detachments to cover open and exposed

areas which favor night attack, use of infrared equipment and means of night illumination, and the strengthening of local security elements.

141. SECURITY. The platoon provides its own local security by constant observation to the front, flanks, and rear. Enough men are kept alert at all times to maintain an effective warning system. A sentry is posted in each squad area to give the warning of hostile ground or air approach. To keep alert, sentries are relieved at least once every two hours. Additional security measures may be given in the company defense order.

CHAPTER 6

WEAPONS PLATOON

Section I. GENERAL

142. ORGANIZATION. a. The *weapons platoon* consists of a platoon headquarters, one 57-mm rifle section, and one 60-mm mortar section. The platoon headquarters has a platoon leader, a platoon sergeant, two truck drivers, and two messengers. The platoon headquarters has two $\frac{1}{4}$ -ton trucks to transport weapons, ammunition, and accessories. A caliber .50 machine gun may be mounted on one of these vehicles.

b. The *57-mm rifle section* consists of a section headquarters and three 57-mm rifle squads. The section headquarters has a section leader and a messenger. Each squad has a squad leader, a gunner, an assistant gunner, and two ammunition bearers. The principal weapon of the squad is one 57-mm rifle.

c. The *60-mm mortar section* consists of a section headquarters and three 60-mm mortar squads. The section headquarters has a section leader and a messenger. Each squad has a squad leader, a gunner, an assistant gunner, and two ammunition bearers. The principal weapon of the squad is one 60-mm mortar.

143. DUTIES OF PLATOON HEADQUARTERS PERSONNEL. a. The *platoon leader* is responsible for the training, discipline, control, and tactical employment of his platoon. He recommends the use of his platoon to the company commander and controls its actions through timely orders to his section. He goes where he best can influence the action of his platoon. However, since the 57-mm rifle squads normally operate with the rifle platoons, he usually is concerned with the use of the 60-mm mortar section.

b. The *platoon sergeant* is second-in-command of the platoon. During a movement, he marches at the rear of the platoon to help maintain control. He constantly keeps in touch with the situation to the platoon's rear and flanks, supervises ammunition supply, and assists the platoon leader in observation and fire control.

c. *One messenger* accompanies the platoon leader; the other reports to the company commander when the company deploys for action.

d. *Truck drivers* conceal and camouflage their vehicles at halts, and they perform driver maintenance. They use antitank rifle grenades for the antitank defense of their vehicles. The $\frac{1}{4}$ -ton truck driver is trained to use the caliber .50 machine gun which is mounted on the vehicle. Other drivers also are trained in the use of this weapon.

144. DUTIES OF SECTION AND SQUAD LEADERS. The section and squad leaders train and lead the men in their units. They deploy their units according to the platoon or section mission.

a. The 57-mm rifle section.

- (1) The *section leader* assigns general position areas and targets or sectors of fire, and he controls the displacement of the weapons and the supply of ammunition. In the attack, he watches the rifle elements and regulates the movement of his squads to fit in with the maneuver of the rifle elements. When a squad is attached to a rifle platoon, the section leader assists the rifle platoon leader in supplying the squads of his section.
- (2) The *squad leader* moves his squad to its position area, selects and supervises the preparation and occupation of exact firing positions, adjust the squad's fire, and directs its ammunition supply.

b. The 60-mm mortar section.

- (1) The *section leader* assigns general locations for his squads within the area given to his section, assigns targets, and controls the displacement of the weapons and the expenditure and supply of ammunition. He goes where he best can control his section. He may conduct fire at the section position, or act as a forward observer, or take a position where he can observe closely the rifle troops and control the movement of his section.
- (2) The *squad leader* moves his squad to its position area, selects and supervises the preparation and occupation of exact firing positions, and uses his ammunition

bearers to supply ammunition. Squad leaders are trained as forward observers and operate with front-line rifle platoons. (For general duties of forward observers, see sec. II, app. IV.)

145. **CONTROL.** a. For methods of combat control, see sec. I, app. IV. The amount of control the platoon leader exercises over his sections depends on factors to include the time available to reconnoiter and give orders; the observation of his zone of action; the detachment of his platoon elements to rifle units; his ability to contact his units; and the speed and intensity of the action. The platoon leader furnishes maximum fire support to the rifle elements by using his platoon headquarters personnel to locate firing positions and targets, to help in getting firing data, and to assist in ammunition supply and the movement of vehicles.

b. In the attack, the *57-mm rifle section* may be used in general support of the company to increase the flexibility of fires and to have a continuity of fires during the displacement. However, because of limitations of the terrain and the difficulty in maintaining control, squads of the 57-mm rifle section usually are placed in direct support of, or attached to, the assault rifle platoons. When squads of the 57-mm rifle section are attached to rifle platoons, control passes to the leader of the unit to which they are attached. The weapons platoon leader and the 57-mm section leader aid the rifle platoon leaders in supplying the 57-mm rifle

squads. In the defense, the squads usually are in direct support of the rifle platoons and occupy positions within platoon defense areas.

c. The *60-mm mortar section* normally is used as a unit under the control of the weapons platoon leader. The platoon leader assigns the initial position area and section mission and the section displaces on his order. Communication within the section between observers and the mortars is by radio or sound-powered telephones.

146. CONDUCT OF FIRE. a. The *57-mm rifle squads* are given definite targets or sectors of fire. The squad leader selects targets, specifies the type of shell and rate of fire, and gives the command or signal for opening fire. (See FM 23-80.)

b. The *60-mm mortar section* may be given a definite target or a target area. The section usually is used from a section position and the fires of all mortars are placed on the same target or target areas. Planned mortar fires in the attack consist of concentrations. A concentration is the fire of one or more mortars in an area 50 yards in diameter. Any number of concentrations may be planned in the attack. When given a target by a forward observer, the section leader directs the fire of all or a part of the section on the target by means of appropriate fire commands. (See FM 23-80.)

147. OBSERVATION. a. Squad leaders for the *57-mm rifle section* place themselves where they can observe their targets or sectors of fire. The squad

leader usually is close enough to the gun so that voice or signals can be used to control the fire. When a part or all of the section is in general support of the company, the section leader has an observation post at a point from which he best can observe the targets or sectors of fire given to his squads.

b. Observation for the *60-mm mortar section* is obtained primarily by forward observers with the rifle platoons. Communication between these observers and the mortars is by radio or sound-powered telephones. When the situation permits, it may be desirable to have a section observation post. The observation post should give observation over the company zone of action, provide cover and concealment, and have a covered route to it. This observation post adds to but does not replace the observers with the rifle platoons.

148. AMMUNITION SUPPLY. a. The platoon's vehicles *transport* weapons and ammunition. In the attack, one of the vehicles usually supplies the assault rifle platoons and attached 57-mm rifles. The other vehicle supplies the 60-mm mortar section. The platoon sergeant supervises resupply of ammunition.

b. In the assembly area or the attack position, the weapons and the initial ammunition supply for the *57-mm rifle section* are unloaded from the platoon weapons carrier and are hand carried in the attack. In defense situations, the weapons and the initial supply of ammunition are unloaded at the firing position. Ammunition is resupplied by

ammunition bearers who return to a company supply point and hand carry it forward to the firing position. Often, ammunition can be delivered by vehicle to the vicinity of the firing platoon.

c. Ammunition for the *60-mm mortar section* normally is transported by vehicle. When the vehicle cannot be brought to the firing position area, the platoon leader selects the point at which it halts, and the ammunition is hand carried to the firing position. The empty vehicle returns to the company supply point for resupply.

149. ANTI-AIRCRAFT SECURITY. Antiaircraft security measures are covered in paragraph 12.

150. ANTITANK DEFENSE. Individual antitank defense is covered in paragraph 13. The 57-mm rifles may be used for antitank defense in either offensive or defensive situations. The weapons then are sited along avenues of tank approach so that flanking fire can be delivered against armor. (For capabilities of the 57-mm rifle against tanks, see par. 6.)

Section II. MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

151. GENERAL. During the advance in route or tactical column, the weapons platoon moves as part of the company. In route or tactical column, the vehicles and accompanying personnel normally move with the battalion transport. If the company has a mission requiring readiness for ac-

tion, the $\frac{1}{4}$ -ton trucks move with their company under the direct control of the platoon leader.

152. APPROACH MARCH. The company commander gives the platoon its mission. The situation may require elements of the weapons platoon to be in direct support of or attached to the rifle platoons. The formations and movements of the weapons platoon resemble those for the rifle units. The platoon leader directs the initial platoon location to permit close support of the rifle units. A 60-mm mortar forward observer and a 57-mm rifle squad accompany the advance party of a support company of the advance guard.

Section III. PREPARATION FOR THE ATTACK

153. GENERAL. a. Before the attack, the platoon may be directed to halt in a covered area selected by the company commander. This area usually is a part of the company or battalion assembly area. While the platoon is preparing for the attack, the platoon leader, accompanied by a messenger, moves forward with the company commander to plan the attack. The platoon sergeant supervises the preparation of the platoon, as detailed in paragraphs 61 and 93.

b. The company commander may order the weapons platoon to occupy firing positions to protect the assembly area, or the weapons may remain on carriers within the platoon area. This decision depends on several factors, including the enemy threat, the length of time the unit will re-

main in the assembly area, and the availability of battalion and other supporting weapons for protection of the assembly area.

c. The *57-mm rifle section* may be used for protection of the company's portion of the battalion assembly area, or the 57-mm rifles may be left on the weapons carrier in the area given to the 57-mm section and be ready for action should the need arise. When the company occupies an assembly area which is separated from the other units, the company commander may have the 57-mm rifle section occupy positions covering the most likely avenues of approach, particularly if the threat of an enemy break-through exists.

d. The *60-mm mortar section* rarely occupies firing positions when the company is assigned a portion of the battalion assembly area. The mortars remain on the weapons carrier in the section area. When the company occupies an assembly area which is separate from the other units, the company commander may direct that the mortars be placed to fire on avenues of approach.

154. COMPANY COMMANDER'S ORDERS. After receiving the recommendations from the weapons platoon leader, the company commander uses the weapons platoon to carry out the company plan of attack. This decision is given as a part of the company attack order. The order gives specific missions, initial position areas, targets or sectors of fire, attachments to rifle platoons, time of opening fire, and plan of reorganization. It may give

the conditions governing the displacement and provisions for ammunition resupply.

155. TROOP LEADING PROCEDURE. a. The weapons platoon leader's troop leading procedure follows the same sequence as that of the rifle platoon leader (par. 124). Before issuing the company attack order, the company commander may take the weapons platoon leader on a reconnaissance, or he may direct him to reconnoiter for specific information. To give the weapons platoon maximum time to prepare its positions, the platoon leader usually gives his attack order immediately following the company attack order. This also allows maximum time for squad and section leaders to reconnoiter and select exact firing positions, to observe the ground over which the attack will be made, to occupy initial positions, and to complete preparations for the initial mission. (See fig. 41 and par. 7.)

b. The weapons platoon leader gives timely instructions for the forward movement of the platoon. Unless the company commander has specified the off-carrier position for the 60-mm mortar section, the platoon leader selects this position while on reconnaissance.

c. The *60-mm mortar section leader* goes ahead of his section to the position area after receiving the platoon leader's order. He notes the location of the front-line troops and his targets or target areas. When he has selected the general location for his weapons and cover positions, he moves the

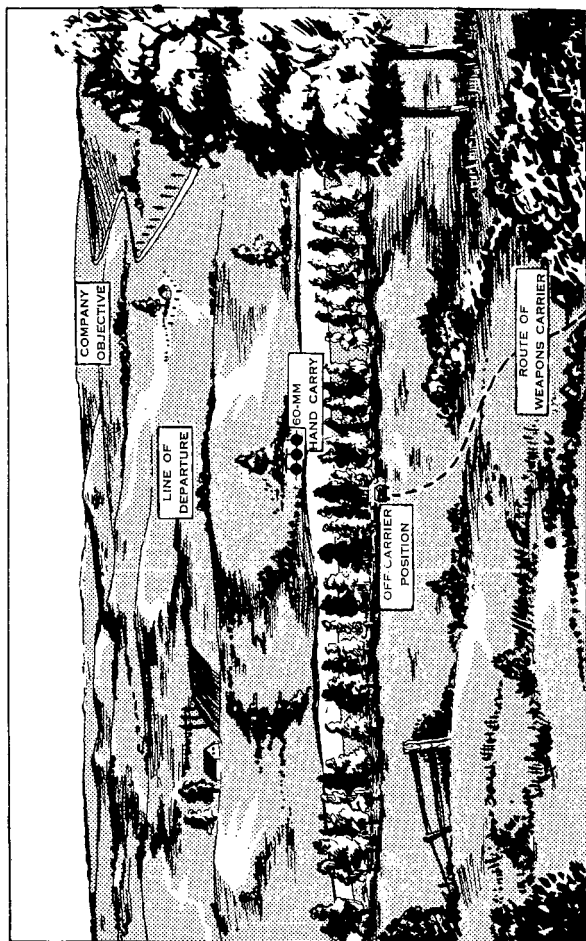


Figure 41. After the 60-mm mortar section leader selects his positions, he moves the squads from the off-carrier position to the firing position.

squads and their weapons from the off-carrier position to the firing positions.

d. The *57-mm rifle section leader* supervises the attachment of his squads to assault rifle platoons. For squads not attached, he selects position areas, assigns targets or sectors of fire, and provides for ammunition supply.

156. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT. a. In the attack, a *57-mm rifle* squad ordinarily is placed in direct support of or attached to each assault rifle platoon. A squad not thus used may be retained under company control in general support, and used with the support platoon if it is committed. The *57-mm rifle* usually is used for direct fire on targets which hold up the advance of the platoon it supports. The squad displaces as necessary to maintain close support of the platoon. Once the objective is captured, the squad protects the reorganization of the platoon and assists in breaking up hostile counterattacks. Exceptionally, one or more *57-mm rifle* squads may be assigned the mission of antitank protection for the company.

b. The *60-mm mortars* usually are placed in a section position. During the attack, the mortars fire on request from forward observers, firing at targets which hold up the advance of the assault platoons. The mortars usually displace by section when their fires no longer can give close support. After capture of the objective, the section protects the reorganization of the company and aids in breaking up hostile counterattacks.

157. SELECTION OF FIRING POSITIONS. a. Desirable characteristics for 57-mm rifle firing positions (see fig. 42) include—

- (1) Observation of friendly troops and observation of targets or sectors of fire.
- (2) Fields of fire which permit direct fire.
- (3) Cover and concealment from enemy observation and fire.
- (4) Safety clearance to the rear, particularly applicable to closed rooms.
- (5) Obstacles which give protection against enemy tanks but do not interfere with firing.
- (6) Covered routes of communication for occupation and ammunition resupply.

b. Desirable characteristics for 60-mm mortar firing positions include—

- (1) Locations within the effective range of targets or target areas.
- (2) Mask clearance of hills, trees, buildings, and similar obstacles to high-angle fire.
- (3) Cover and concealment from enemy observation and fire. Complete defilade protects positions from enemy flat-trajectory fire, and holes and ditches give some protection from high-angle fire.
- (4) Dispersion between mortars to prevent two mortar positions from being hit by one enemy shell. Dispersion is limited by voice or visual control.
- (5) Covered routes to the position for occupation and ammunition resupply.

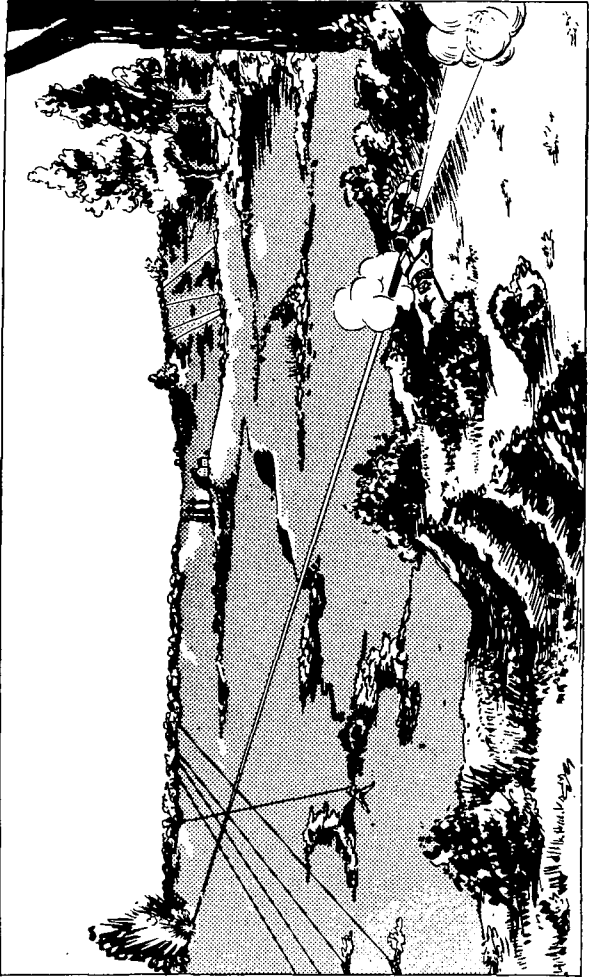


Figure 42. The 57-mm rifle position is selected to permit direct fire on the target.

158. TARGETS. a. Appropriate targets for *57-mm rifles* are point targets; for example, crew-served weapons, small enemy groups, pillbox embrasures, and enemy tanks which are about to overrun the friendly position. The 57-mm rifle may be used to fire on small area targets in which enemy personnel or installations may be located but are not clearly visible. Fighting in built-up areas, the 57-mm rifle is used against definitely located targets in buildings and against the buildings themselves to let the assaulting infantrymen enter. Smoke shells may be used to limit enemy observation.

b. Primary targets for *60-mm mortars* are point targets; for example, crew-served weapons and small groups of enemy personnel, particularly those in defilade. The 60-mm mortars are effective against small area targets but are not used to search large areas. The white phosphorous (WP) shell may be used to screen specific points, such as the embrasures of pillboxes or a street barricade. When fighting in built-up areas, the mortar may be used against roof-top targets. It also is used against defiladed targets not closer than 100 yards from friendly troops and which are too close for the use of 81-mm and 4.2-inch mortars or artillery.

159. ORDERS. a. The *platoon leader's* orders include as much of the following as is necessary:

- (1) Information of the enemy and friendly troops, including the expected action of the leading rifle platoons of the company

and the positions and missions of the battalion heavy weapons elements.

- (2) Mission of the weapons platoon.
- (3) Instructions concerning ammunition supply, location of the battalion aid station, and other administrative matters.
- (4) Communication instructions (including prearranged signals) and the location of the platoon leader and company commander.
- (5) Orders to the sections to include initial position areas, route or unit to be followed, off-carrier position, initial targets or sectors of fire, time of opening fire, displacement and reorganization, and attachments to rifle platoons.

b. The attack orders of a *section leader* include—

- (1) Information of the enemy and friendly troops.
- (2) Mission of the section.
- (3) General location of squad firing positions, instructions for movement to them, and instructions on the opening and conduct of fire.
- (4) Instructions concerning ammunition supply and the location of the battalion aid station.
- (5) Prearranged signals and the locations of the section leader and the platoon leader.

c. Each *squad leader* includes in his attack order the items of the section order which pertain to his squad. After the initial firing positions are occupied, he gives the fire order for firing at the first

target. Squad leaders of 57-mm rifle squads attached to rifle platoons get their orders from the rifle platoon leader.

Section IV. ATTACK

160. MOVEMENT INTO FIRING POSITIONS. a. The weapons, ammunition, and accessories of the *57-mm rifle section* are moved by weapons carrier from the assembly area to the attack position, if practicable. Otherwise, the weapons are unloaded from the weapons carrier as far forward of the assembly area as possible. At the attack position, the squads which are attached to assault rifle platoons join those platoons and move to a cover position as directed by the rifle platoon leader. The squad leader selects the exact firing position and supervises its preparation and occupation. When the mission requires one or more squads to be placed in general support of the company, the squads are moved to the firing position area by the section leader. The exact firing position is selected by the squad leader and occupied like that of the squads attached to rifle platoons. The route from the cover position to the firing position should be covered and concealed. When not re-supplying ammunition, ammunition bearers remain in a cover position near the rifle.

b. Since the *60-mm mortar section* normally is fired from defilade, it usually moves by vehicle from the assembly area to an off-carrier position located as close to the position area as the situation permits. The weapons, accessories, and initial sup-

ply of ammunition are unloaded and hand carried to exact firing positions selected by the squad leaders. The squad leaders supervise the preparation and occupation of the firing position. Ammunition bearers are dispersed near the firing position when not resupplying ammunition.

161. SUPPORTING FIRES DURING THE ATTACK. a.

The *57-mm rifle squad leaders* use their squads to support closely the assault rifle platoons during the attack. They continuously watch the advancing riflemen and the objective so that their fires do not endanger friendly troops. They promptly fire at surprise targets which threaten the advance of the assault platoons. When the advance of the assault platoons masks the fires of 57-mm rifles, the fires are shifted to the flanks of the objective or a displacement is made.

b. The *60-mm mortar section* may fire prearranged concentrations on specific targets or target areas before and during the initial phases of the attack, as part of the company or battalion fire plan. During the attack, they fire at suitable targets as directed by the company commander, the weapons platoon leader, the section leader, or as requested by the forward observers. During the assault, the 60-mm mortar section fires on appropriate targets on the flanks or beyond the objective.

162. DISPLACEMENT. a. When the assigned mission no longer can be accomplished from initial positions, displacement is made to cause a minimum of interruption in fire support.

b. The rifle platoon leader to whom a 57-mm rifle squad is attached may direct the displacement of that squad. Often the squad leader, on his own initiative, moves his squad to new positions when continuous fire support is impossible, or when the old position cannot be held due to enemy action. The displacement then is made rapidly; the squad moves closely behind or on the flank of the rifle platoon. The squad leader leads his squad forward to select and direct the rapid occupation of a new firing position.

c. The 60-mm mortar section ordinarily displaces as a unit. Displacement of weapons and ammunition is made by vehicle, if possible. When a displacement of the section is expected soon, the platoon leader makes a personal reconnaissance and designates a new general position area to the section leader. The section leader indicates squad position areas to the squad leaders. The squad leaders lead their squads forward, making use of covered routes, and select the exact firing positions for their squads.

163. REORGANIZATION. a. As soon as the hostile position is captured, or the attack is halted for any reason, weapons are placed in positions which protect the front and flanks of the assault rifle platoons against a counterattack. (See fig. 43.)

b. After weapons are emplaced to repel a counterattack, the platoon leader begins the preparation to continue the attack. He has his squad leaders replace key men within their squads, check the condition of weapons, and collect and redistribute

ammunition. Concurrently, the platoon leader replaces leaders in the platoon. The squad leaders report the strength of their squads and their weapons and ammunition needs, and the platoon

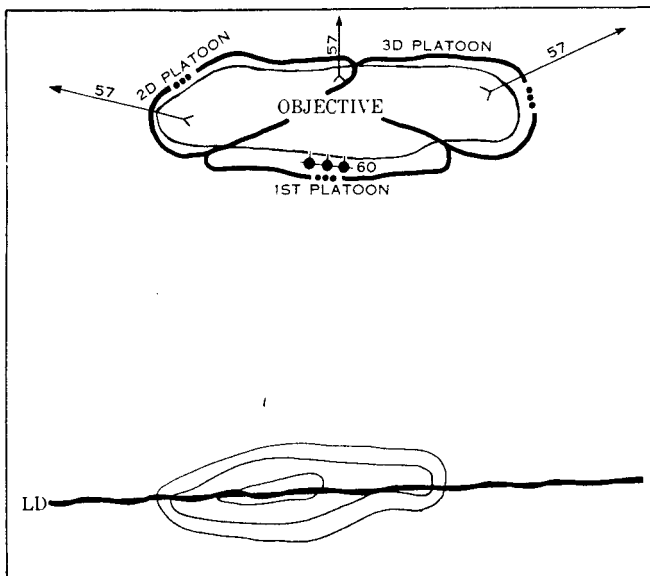


Figure 43. Reorganization. As soon as the objective is captured, the weapons of the weapons platoon are emplaced in positions to protect the front and flanks of the rifle platoons.

leader, in turn, reports the platoon needs. Orders to continue the attack are given, and the action taken resembles the action before the initial attack.

Section V. DEFENSE

164. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT. a. The weapons platoon of the rifle company assists the rifle platoons in the defense of their areas. The company commander coordinates the fires with those of the battalion fire plan. When circumstances permit, the weapons are kept under company control to coordinate fires. When time is limited, the weapons may be attached to rifle platoons to give the maximum close support to the rifle platoons until detailed coordination is made under company control.

b. The *mission of the 57-mm rifle section* in defense is to destroy enemy crew-served weapons, enemy groups, and tanks attempting to overrun the position. The rifles are used by the company commander to cover sectors¹ or approaches in which targets of opportunity are most likely to appear.

c. *The missions of the 60-mm mortars of a front-line rifle company* in defense are to—

- (1) Cover its assigned sector. The mortars give close support to the forward defense areas by firing concentrations on targets of opportunity—particularly those in defilade—to break up a hostile attack before it reaches the battle position.
- (2) Assist in the battalion coordinated fire plan. Mortar barrages fill gaps in the final protective fires of the battalion fire plan. If no gaps exist inside the company sector, barrages strengthen the final pro-

tective fires in the most dangerous areas of approach.

- (3) Assist in limiting penetrations. Concentrations are planned within the company defense area to limit an enemy penetration of the main line of resistance.
- (4) Support counterattacks. Concentrations may be used to block off the penetrated area or to give close support to a counterattack force.

165. SELECTION OF POSITIONS. a. If practicable, the platoon leader accompanies the company commander on his reconnaissance and makes recommendations for the use of the weapons platoon. Based on his own reconnaissance and the recommendations of the weapons platoon leader, the company commander's defense order assigns missions and general locations for the weapons platoon elements.

b. The weapons platoon leader's troop leading procedure follows the same sequence as that of the rifle platoon leader. (See par. 133.)

c. When sectors of fire, observation, and communication facilities are not limited, the most effective fire and control is obtained by using the 60-mm mortars in a section position under company control. Then the firing positions normally are in the vicinity of the support platoon. Observers are located in front-line platoon areas with direct communication by both wire and radio to the section.

d. When sectors of fire, observation, and com-

munication facilities are limited to prevent coverage of the company front, the section may be divided and guns placed within the front-line platoon areas.

e. After receiving the company commander's order, the weapons platoon leader gives his order, and he has the platoon elements moved to their firing positions. The platoon leader and section leaders precede the remainder of the platoon to the defense areas to coordinate the use of the weapons and the selection of firing positions. Firing positions selected for the 57-mm rifles and 60-mm mortars in defense resemble those selected in the attack. (See par. 157.)

166. SECTORS OF FIRE AND TARGET AREAS. a.

The *57-mm rifles* are used by the company commander to cover approaches where targets of opportunity are most likely to appear. Often one 57-mm rifle is used in direct support of each rifle platoon defense area. Specific sectors of fire and position areas are designated by the weapons platoon leader.

b. Each *60-mm mortar* squad is assigned a sector of fire, one barrage, and any number of concentrations. The three squad sectors overlap to cover the entire company front. The company commander normally uses the barrages to close small gaps in the machine gun final protective lines. These barrages are 50 yards square and normally are located at least 100 yards forward of the front-line elements. The weapons platoon leader assigns concentrations and sectors of fire according to the

company defense plan. These concentrations are planned both forward of and within the battle position. Concentrations are 50 yards in diameter. (See figs. 44 and 45.)

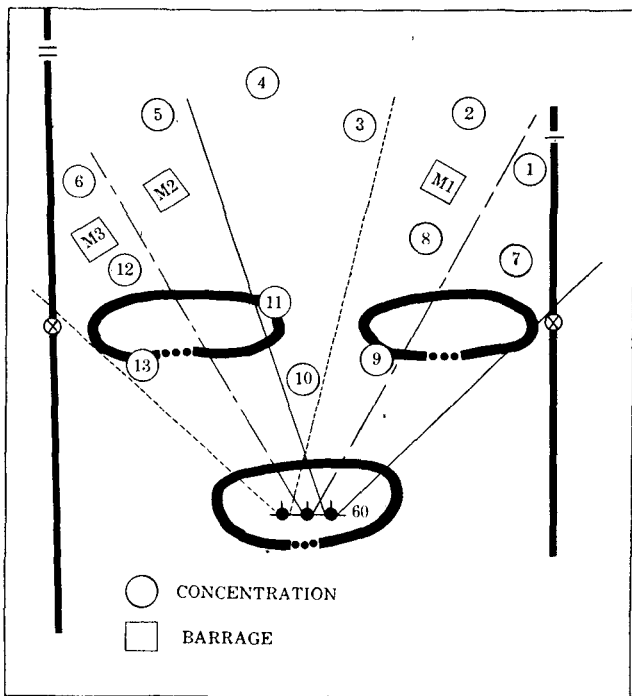


Figure 44. In the defense, 60-mm mortar sectors overlap to cover the entire company front.

167. ORDERS. a. The platoon defense order is based on the company order and the platoon leader's reconnaissance. It is given to the section leaders and

other key men of the platoon. When practicable, the platoon leader gives his order from a position where he can point out to each lower unit leader the selected firing positions, sectors of fire, and lo-

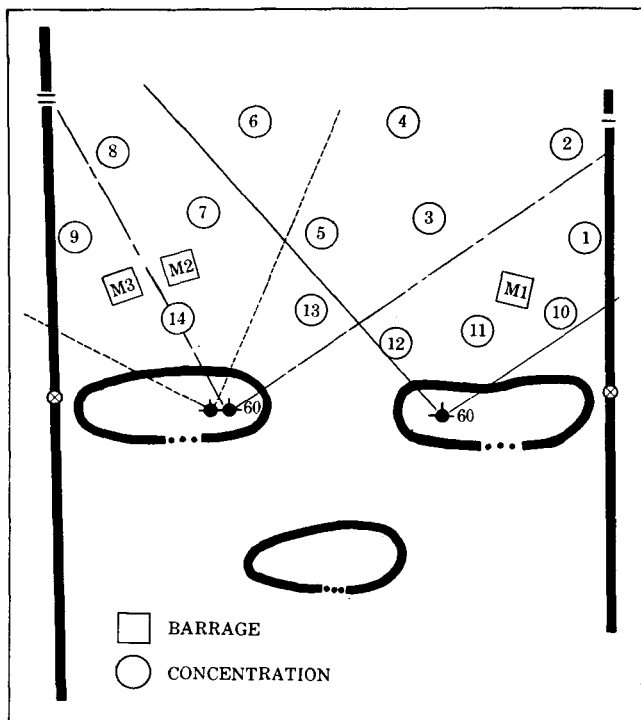


Figure 45. If the 60-mm mortar section is divided, its guns are placed within the front-line platoon areas.

cations of adjacent troops. The section leaders give their orders based upon the platoon order and

their own reconnaissance. The troop leading procedure used by the section leaders is similar to that used by the platoon leader. The platoon leader and the section leaders supervise the coordination and execution of their orders. The defense order follows the general form for the platoon attack order (see par. 159) and contains the following additional instructions:

- (1) Barrage and concentration areas for the 60-mm mortars.
- (2) Final protective fires to include the method for calling for these fires, a location from which visual signals for fires are given, and the rates and duration of fire.
- (3) Organization of the ground, including types of emplacements, other constructions, and priority of work.

b. The squad leaders base their orders on the order of the section leaders. The squad leaders select exact positions for the guns or mortars, and they give orders for clearing fields of fire and preparing and camouflaging primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.

168. POSITION OF LEADERS. a. **Platoon leader.** The platoon leader assists the company commander in controlling weapons platoon fire missions. Normally, the platoon leader is at or near the firing positions of the 60-mm mortars. When observation and sectors of fire are limited, the platoon leader may establish an observation post for increased observation of the company sector.

b. Section leaders.

- (1) The *57-mm rifle section leader* remains with the squad used in the support platoon area. From this position, he best is able to control the supply of all squads, replace key men, and rapidly shift fire to meet a threat from the flank or rear.
- (2) The *60-mm mortar section leader* is concerned primarily with fire control and ammunition supply. If the mortars are in a section position, the section leader remains at the firing position. If the mortars are divided, control of fires usually is delegated to the squad leaders, and the section leader concerns himself primarily with ammunition supply.

c. Squad leaders.

- (1) The *57-mm rifle squad leaders* stay with the rifles and control their fires.
- (2) The *mortar squad leaders* act as forward observers with the front-line rifle platoons. They put their observation posts within the platoon areas where they best can observe their assigned sectors. A squad leader not used as an observer assists in the control of fires.

169. OCCUPATION AND ORGANIZATION OF FIRING POSITIONS. a. After squads arrive at their assigned locations, the firing positions and sectors of fire of the weapons are shown to the squad leaders. Each squad leader has his squad weapon mounted in a temporary firing position, prepared

to open fire to cover his assigned sector of fire. As soon as the weapons are mounted in temporary positions, the positions are constructed, camouflaged, and stocked with ammunition. The weapons then are mounted in the primary firing positions.

b. The characteristics of the 57-mm rifle are such that emphasis is placed on clearing fields of fire, preparing alternate positions, and concealing the positions. The ammunition bearers prepare fox holes from which they can resupply ammunition and give close-in protection to the weapon and the remainder of its crew. After the squad digs in, the squad leader examines his position from the direction of the enemy to check on the camouflage and concealment. Ranges are determined to the most important landmarks in the squad sector of fire, and range cards are prepared.

c. The primary 60-mm mortar positions and the observation posts are constructed first, and fox holes for the ammunition bearers then are prepared. Alternate positions are constructed according to the priority of work. If the situation permits, each mortar is registered on its barrage and on as many concentrations as necessary. Care is taken to avoid endangering security elements, reconnaissance parties, and work details forward of the battle position. Firing data are recorded by the squad leader. One copy of each range card is kept by the squad leader, and one copy is given to the platoon leader. The platoon leader then prepares and gives the company commander an overlay or firing sketch showing the prepared mortar

fires. After the company commander approves these planned fires or makes necessary changes, he prepares a company overlay or firing sketch and gives it to selected men of the company and to the battalion commander.

d. Camouflage is concurrent with the construction of defensive works. Spoil not used in construction is disposed of immediately. Parapets are tramped down and sodded. Men avoid making new paths ending at installations.

e. Dry, concealed ammunition shelters are constructed within or near the weapons emplacements.

170. CONDUCT OF DEFENSE. a. The *57-mm rifles* engage by direct fire enemy crew-served weapons, groups of men, and tanks. If located within or near a front-line platoon area, the rifles withhold their fire until the other weapons of that defense area open fire. If more than one of the above types of targets appear within the assigned sector at one time, a 57-mm rifle fire is directed against the target which is the greatest threat to the position. The 57-mm rifles do not fire at night except in emergencies and when the enemy is at close range.

b. The *60-mm mortars* initially are laid to fire where suitable targets are most likely to appear. If the enemy succeeds in driving in security elements, the mortars then are laid on their bar-rages when not firing other missions.

c. As the enemy advances, observers call for fires on suitable targets within their sectors. If

final protective fires are called for, the mortars fire their barrages. If the barrage of any mortar is not within the area where the final protective fires are needed, that mortar fires the concentrations which most effectively reinforce the final protective fires. If the enemy penetrates any portion of the battle position, the mortars fire in the area of penetration to disrupt and destroy the enemy and to prevent a widening of the penetration.

d. The decision to move a crew-served weapon from the primary to the alternate position is made by the immediate commander in the vicinity of the weapon. This move is made to prevent the destruction of the weapon and crew by enemy fire or infiltrating parties. Usually this move is made during lulls in the fire fight. During a fire fight, such a movement is exceptional and is influenced by the available cover and concealment. When two or more weapons are moved to alternate positions, the weapons move by echelon. The commander of the defense area is notified immediately.

CHAPTER 7

RIFLE COMPANY, OFFENSIVE COMBAT

Section I. PREPARATION FOR THE ATTACK

171. **GENERAL.** a. For the general duties of the company commander and company headquarters personnel, see chapter 1. For the conduct of the company in movement to contact, assembly areas, and attack positions, see chapter 2.

b. Before the attack, the company may be directed to halt in a covered area selected by the battalion commander. This area usually is part of the battalion assembly area. Normally, while the company is preparing for the attack, the company commander joins the battalion commander to receive the attack order. He usually takes with him the weapons platoon leader, the communication sergeant, a radio operator, and a messenger. One officer, usually the executive officer, remains with the company.

172. **BATTALION COMMANDER'S ORDERS.** The company usually attacks as part of the battalion. The battalion order indicates whether a company is initially in the assault or in reserve and gives the supporting and attached units. If the company is in the assault, it has a definite terrain objective or

a series of objectives, a line of departure or area of departure, a definite zone of action, a direction of attack, pertinent parts of the battalion or regimental fire plan, and the time of attack.

173. TROOP LEADING PROCEDURE. a. Company commander. After receiving the battalion order, the company commander decides what preparations are to be made, what he will do personally, and what he will delegate to others. The company commander's actions generally follow this sequence:

- (1) Confers with other unit commanders.
- (2) Plans his reconnaissance.
- (3) Selects an observation post and sends for his unit leaders.
- (4) Make a reconnaissance.
- (5) Formulates a method of attack.
- (6) Gives the order.
- (7) Supervises the execution of the order.

b. Conference with other unit commanders.

- (1) He holds brief conferences with commanders of adjacent and supporting units before leaving the place where the battalion order is given. Frequently, all that he can do now is to make definite arrangements for a later exchange of information, either through conferences or messages. He secures information by telephone from commanders not present, or by sending agents to confer with them.
- (2) The information the rifle company commander needs from the local covering force commander is the exact location of

elements through which the company will pass, and detailed information of enemy activities and locations, such as locations of automatic weapons, observation posts, antitank guns, minefields, intrenched riflemen, and recent patrol action.

- (3) The information he usually needs from adjacent commanders is their plan of attack and the method of maintaining contact between the two units.
- (4) The information he needs from supporting weapons commanders is the exact position areas and target areas of their weapons. This information is essential to avoid premature masking of their fires and to determine the best possible locations for company weapons.

c. Reconnaissance plan. He studies his map, observes the ground, and selects a route for his reconnaissance.

d. Observation post. He selects an observation post. Its location gives the maximum observation over the company zone of action and is concealed enough to permit the assembly of his officers for the company attack order. He selects this point early to allow time for the platoon leaders to be guided there by a messenger. He issues instructions regarding the time and place of giving the order and the movement of the company from the assembly area to the attack position.

e. Reconnaissance. His reconnaissance is carried out while the company is moving forward and his platoon leaders are moving up to join him. During

his reconnaissance, he makes an estimate of the situation which includes a terrain analysis.

- (1) An *estimate of the situation* is a reasoning process by which a commander arrives at a plan of action to carry out his mission. The company commander considers his mission, the opposing enemy force and its capabilities of interfering with the execution of his mission, his own force, the terrain, and the courses of action open to him. For units as small as the rifle company, the estimate is comparatively brief and simple. It is based upon available intelligence, personal reconnaissance, and the reconnaissance of unit leaders and patrols.
- (2) The *terrain* is evaluated for its critical terrain features, observation and fields of fire, obstacles, cover and concealment, and avenues of approach. (See par. 124.) While on reconnaissance, the company commander determines the possible locations of enemy weapons and personnel. He notes the routes or areas where the enemy's observation or fire is limited most by the terrain and which ones are his most favorable avenues of approach to the hostile position. He considers the help he can expect from smoke and fire of supporting weapons, and he notes the locations where his own weapons can be placed to support the movement of his rifle units. He also considers whether ad-

jacent units initially will be ahead, behind, or abreast of his company and therefore determines whether his flanks are protected or exposed. He notes whether the terrain gives the enemy cover or concealment from which to launch surprise counterattacks as the attack progresses. With these factors in mind, he decides how to use his company to accomplish his mission promptly and with the fewest casualties.

f. Method of attack. Upon completing his estimate of the situation, he decides how he will attack.

g. Orders. After completing his reconnaissance, the company commander immediately gives his order. This is done to allow platoon, section, and squad leaders the maximum time to make their own reconnaissance, give their orders, and place their units for the attack. (For details of the attack order see par. 185 and app. I.)

h. Supervision. The company commander supervises the preparation for the attack.

Section II. METHOD OF ATTACK

174. OBJECTIVES. The battalion attack order usually directs the capture of a terrain objective or a series of terrain objectives. The company order, as a means of coordinating the efforts of the company, assigns successive objectives to the assault platoon or platoons. As its initial objective, each assault platoon is given the nearest terrain

feature or hostile position within its zone of action whose capture is essential to the accomplishment of the company mission. Platoons may continue their attack against other definite objectives after their initial objectives are captured. If the company commander desires to control the action more closely, the platoons may be directed to continue the attack on company order. Depending on the terrain, there may be several of these successive platoon objectives to be captured before the assault echelon reaches the initial company objective.

175. SCHEME OF MANEUVER. a. The cover and concealment provided by irregularities of the terrain seldom is uniform in all parts of the company zone of action. Available supporting fires may not be enough to neutralize all hostile elements opposing the advance. The hostile position usually is occupied irregularly because of the terrain. Open areas may be lightly occupied physically, but adequately covered with fire; while broken terrain and covered approaches leading to the enemy position may be strongly occupied. Since the enemy's observation and fields of fire are weaker in broken terrain the company commander plans to concentrate his efforts on advancing a portion of his assault echelon through that part of the company zone which gives the best cover and concealment.

b. The remainder of the assault echelon attacks through that portion of the company zone giving the best remaining concealment and cover. This forces the enemy to disperse his efforts, prohibiting the use of his maximum defensive strength

against one portion of the assault echelon. (See fig. 46.)

176. FORMATIONS. a. The formation used for the attack is governed by the mission of the company,

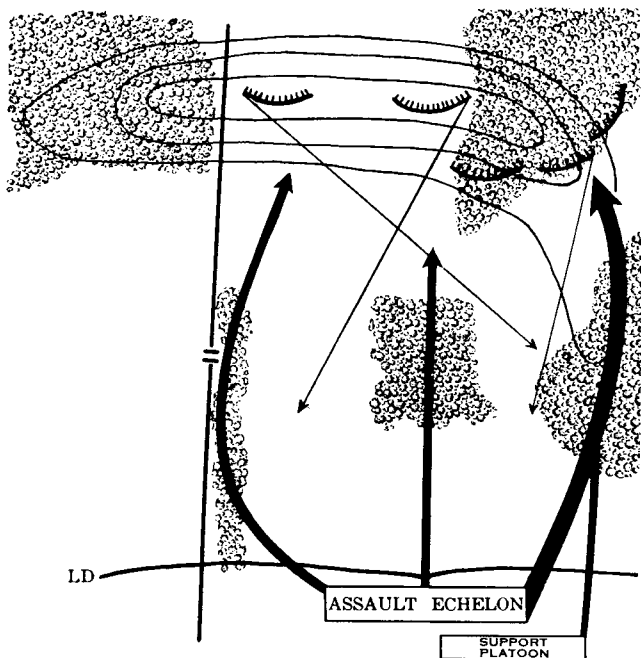


Figure 46. The company advances along routes which offer the best cover and concealment.

the width of the zone of action, the reinforcements and supporting fires, the terrain, the knowledge of enemy locations, and the need for security.

b. By using a formation with two rifle platoons in the assault echelon and one in support, the company can deliver a strong initial attack while retaining a support to influence future action.

c. A formation with one rifle platoon in the assault echelon and two in support is used frequently when the company has a very narrow zone of action, when it is operating on an exposed flank, or when the enemy situation is obscure. In this formation, the support platoons may be in column behind the leading platoon; they may be echeloned behind the leading platoon toward an exposed flank; or, if both flanks are exposed, they may be echeloned, one to each flank of the leading platoon.

d. The situation and terrain may require the use of all three platoons in the assault echelon, but not necessarily abreast. A formation for the initial attack with all three rifle platoons abreast is exceptional. It may be used when the company is given an extremely broad zone of action and the enemy situation is known.

177. LINE OF DEPARTURE. The battalion order designates a line of departure from which the company launches its attack. Its purpose is to coordinate the advance of the assault echelon so that its elements will strike the enemy in the order and at the time desired. This line should be approximately perpendicular to the direction of attack and recognized easily on the ground, and it should be controlled by friendly forces. Occasionally, the line of departure is difficult to locate on the ground, or it cannot be reached without exposing the as-

sault echelon to observation and fire. In this event, the company commander has each platoon start its attack from a suitable position in rear of the line selected by the battalion commander; a company time of attack is prescribed so that the leading elements cross the line ordered by the battalion commander at the time set in the battalion order.

178. ZONES OF ACTION. a. The battalion commander ordinarily does not designate boundaries between companies. An interior company usually remains within the battalion boundaries and within the zone of action assigned by the battalion commander. The entry into an adjacent battalion zone is coordinated with the commander of the adjacent unit, either by the battalion commander or the company commander. To make a flank attack, a company commander can move elements in rear of an adjacent company within the battalion sector. This ordinarily is done by coordination between the two company commanders concerned. An interior company ordinarily uses a zone of action from 200 to 500 yards in width.

b. Each rifle platoon in the assault echelon is given a definite zone of action. (See fig. 47.) The zone of action is indicated by giving the platoon a particular section of the line of departure or an area from which to start its attack, a direction of attack, and a definite terrain objective or series of objectives to be captured. If desired, the width of the zone may be indicated by directing that the platoon attack on a frontage indicated in yards. This is its zone of responsibility in which it drives

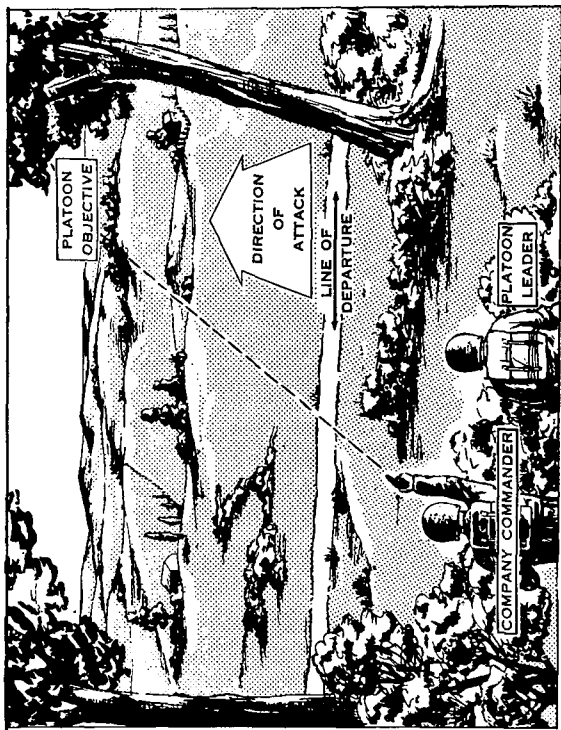


Figure 47. Each rifle platoon in the assault echelon is assigned a definite zone of action, line of departure, frontage, direction of attack, and objective.

forward and captures the assigned objectives. Normally, the frontage assigned the platoon is from 100 yards to 250 yards; under exceptional circumstances, these limits vary. For reasons indicated in paragraph 123, boundaries between platoons seldom are given.

179. SUPPORT. At the start of the attack, the company commander may hold out a support for later use in repelling counterattacks, for replacing an exhausted part of the assault echelon, or for striking the final blow necessary to capture an objective. It is adequate in strength to accomplish its probable missions. (See par. 131.)

180. WEAPONS PLATOON. The 57-mm rifles and 60-mm mortars are placed in position before the attack to neutralize enemy elements that may hold up the advance of rifle platoons. (See par. 156.)

181. SUPPORTING FIRES. (See app. IV.) a. The battalion commander announces the supporting fires in his attack order to include the platoons of the heavy weapons company, the heavy mortar company, the tank company, and the artillery. The targets or target areas and the time and duration of the supporting fires are given to the company commander. He plans his attack to take maximum advantage of the supporting fires which cover the movement of the assault echelon from the line of departure to the assault position. The fires are lifted by the battalion or company commander when the assault echelon reaches the assault position.

b. Platoons of the heavy weapons company. The position areas and initial target areas or fire missions of the machine gun platoon, 75-mm rifle platoon, and 81-mm mortar platoon are given in the battalion order. The weapons of the machine gun platoon and 75-mm rifle platoon are emplaced in the vicinity of the line of departure. The rifle company commander coordinates the emplacement of his own crew-served weapons and the advance of his rifle units with the position areas of the heavy-weapon units. When terrain or communication difficulties make control by the battalion commander impracticable, machine gun and 75-mm rifle units may be placed in direct support of or attached to rifle company. (See sec. I, app. IV.)

c. Heavy mortar company. The heavy mortar company usually is placed in general support of the regiment with priority of fires to specific battalions. Fires of the heavy mortar company are used primarily to destroy or neutralize enemy troops and weapons which can be fired at more readily by mortars than by the supporting artillery. The heavy mortar also fires smoke missions.

d. Tanks. Tank fires increase the fire power and shock effect of the rifle company and provide anti-tank protection. One or more tank platoons are often attached to a rifle company to form an infantry-tank team. In general, there are five methods of attack which may be used by infantry-tank teams. These methods are modified frequently by combining elements of two or more methods. The circumstances of enemy resistance and terrain indicate which method promises the maximum suc-

cess in any specific attack. The methods of attack are discussed in the following paragraphs.

- (1) Initially, the tanks support the infantry by fire from stationary hull defilade positions on or near the line of departure. When the infantry approaches the assault position, the tanks advance rapidly and join the infantry at the assault position. Supporting fires on the objective then are shifted, and the assault is executed by infantry and tanks together. The tanks should time their advance from the line of departure so infantry and tanks reach the assault position at the same time. During the assault, infantry and tanks advance generally abreast. This method is used when the objective is defined clearly and when fields of fire exist for the tanks. Surprise usually is achieved, and the maximum tank fire power is available at the critical time of the final assault. The fires from the moving tanks at short range, in combination with the assault fire of the infantry, add greatly to the intensity of the shock effect.
- (2) Tanks cross the line of departure in order to pass through the advancing infantry either before it reaches the assault position or when it is at the assault position. Thereafter, the tanks precede the infantry by distances varying from 50 to 300 yards. They are protected against local antitank weapons by their own fires, time

or VT artillery fire, and fires of the rifle unit. When the supporting fires are lifted just before the tanks arrive on the objective, the rifle units immediately open assault fire and follow the tanks to the objective. This method is used mostly in attacks heavily supported by artillery time and VT fire and against an enemy who possesses little or no overhead cover and whose forward antitank weapons include few tanks. It has the advantage of speed and shock action and usually achieves surprise. Maximum tank fire power is available during the critical period when artillery and mortar fires are being shifted and the task of keeping the enemy's forward weapons neutralized is passing to the weapons of the assault echelon. As in the previously discussed method, the tanks support the infantry advance by fire from stationary hull defilade positions until the time arrives to launch their own attack.

- (3) Infantry and tanks, moving by separate routes, converge on the objective from different directions. Because of the greater speed of the tanks, the infantry usually starts its attack first, and the tanks cross their line of departure at the time necessary for a coordinated final assault of infantry and tanks. Whenever possible, the tanks support the infantry advance by fire until the time arrives to start their

own attack. This method is useful when the terrain or enemy defenses favor the use of two routes, one for infantry and another for tanks. It usually achieves surprise and has the advantage of converging fire effect and shock action.

- (4) Infantry and tanks move together at the same rate of speed throughout the advance from the line of departure to the objective. The infantry may move slightly in advance of the tanks, between them, or immediately in rear. As the advance progresses, these relative positions of tanks and infantry are adjusted according to the enemy resistance and the terrain. This method is used when visibility is limited, in built-up areas, and in woods. It permits close coordination and maximum mutual support, but it sacrifices speed and surprise. The slow rate of movement increases tank vulnerability to hostile antitank fires and gives the enemy time to increase the intensity of his defensive fires. In close terrain, when little is known of the enemy, it frequently is desirable to use this method initially, passing to another when the assault echelon enters more open terrain or when the enemy situation clarifies. In a variation of this method, the infantry rides on the tanks until enemy fire forces them to dismount and fight on foot. This provides speed but results in increased exposure

of infantry to enemy fire, particularly to air bursts. It also interferes with the operation of the tank. It is used primarily in exploitation.

- (5) From stationary hull defilade firing positions on or near the line of departure, tanks support the infantry by overhead or flanking fire throughout its advance from the line of departure to the objective. This is the least efficient of all the methods. It should be used only when natural or artificial antitank obstacles prohibit the tank movement to the objective, or when additional tanks are provided to increase the tank support in the first three methods discussed.

No matter what method is used to reach the objective, once it is captured, infantry and tanks closely coordinate their actions during the mop-up phase. Tanks particularly support the riflemen in clearing the objective area of hostile automatic weapons. The riflemen assist the tanks by promptly eliminating individual and crew-served antitank weapons. During the reorganization and the preparation to continue the attack, the tanks are disposed along with the infantry as previously planned, to hold the captured ground against a counterattack. (For additional details see app. IV and FM 7-35.)

e. Artillery. The infantry regimental and battalion commanders, with artillery liaison officers, prepare a detailed plan of close artillery fire support. This fire plan is based on the battalion command-

er's scheme of maneuver. An artillery forward observer moves with each company to obtain and adjust the artillery fires requested by the rifle company commander. (See app. IV.)

182. USE OF SCREENING SMOKES. a. The rifle company frequently uses screening smokes to assist its attack. Smoke support may be accomplished by organic means or by supporting artillery, mortars, or tanks. Organic means consist of rifle grenades, hand grenades, rocket launchers, and the 60-mm mortar. These provide only small, local screens within the company zone of action. Supporting smoke screens are fired on call or as predetermined fires. They are more general in extent and require greater coordination with adjacent units, as consideration must be given to the drift of the more extensive smoke cloud.

b. Smoke is used carefully and with skill in order to obtain the maximum success and the minimum interference with the unit or adjacent units. Small screens from company weapons rarely require more than internal coordination. Wind speed and direction are considered in predicting the cloud drift and in establishing the location of impacts to give the maximum screening effect. If white phosphorous smoke is fired for both casualty and screening effect, the bursts are directly on the target, regardless of wind direction. Smoke missions include—

- (1) Screening movements of the rifle company.
- (2) Blinding hostile observation.

- (3) Reducing the effectiveness of hostile aimed fire.
- (4) Isolating enemy positions or areas.
- (5) Obtaining casualties (use white phosphorous only).
- (6) Screening reorganization of the company.
- (7) Indicating targets or marking front lines for supporting artillery, mortars, or air force units. Colored smoke frequently is more suitable for this work than white smoke. (For details concerning the tactical use of smoke, see FM 3-5.)

183. SECURITY. a. Regardless of flank protective measures taken by battalion and regimental commanders, the company commander is responsible for the close-in protection of his flanks throughout the attack. Usually, there are gaps between the company and the units on its right and left. If, at the start of the attack, an adjacent unit is abreast or ahead of the company and the gap cannot be covered by observation and fire, the company commander has a connecting group maintain contact with the adjacent unit and report periodically the location of its nearest flank. (See par. 75.)

b. Ordinarily, security groups are detailed from the support platoon. These groups may operate directly under the company commander, or he may delegate control by directing that the platoon leader maintain contact or protect a flank. When the company commander delegates this control to the platoon leaders, he indicates the maximum size of the security group.

c. Timely warning is the key to reducing losses from air and tank attack. Each rifle platoon provides its own air and antitank security. The anti-tank rifle grenadiers and rocket launchers protect the platoon; they are not used to protect other company elements.

d. The company commander coordinates the antitank defense measures within his company. He gives each rifle platoon specific directions or areas to defend against enemy tank attack.

184. TIME OF ATTACK. The time of attack normally is given in the battalion order. The company commander allows time for the movement of his company to its attack positions, and he also allows time for reconnaissance, the preparation of plans, and the issuance of orders by himself and his unit leaders. Some of these activities can be carried on concurrently. The start of the attack may be coordinated by having units begin their forward movement at a definite hour, or by having them ready at a specified time and beginning their operation on a prescribed signal.

185. ORDERS. a. The company commander gives his order for the attack to his assembled platoon leaders and the leaders of attached units. When conditions permit, the first sergeant, the communication sergeant, the platoon sergeants, and the section leaders of the weapons platoon assemble to hear the order. The company commander orients the executive officer as early as possible. Whenever practicable, the order is given at a point from which important terrain can be pointed out. Maps,

aerial photographs, and sketches may be furnished. When time is limited and the leaders are separated, the company commander gives his orders, either oral or written, in fragmentary form. Leaders of units which are engaged with the enemy are not called away from their units to receive orders. For the form of a company attack order, see appendix I. The company order includes—

- (1) Information of the enemy and friendly troops. Information of friendly troops should include the location and actions of supporting, adjacent, and other units which have a direct bearing on the company's attack.
- (2) Company mission, time of attack, line of departure, direction of attack, and the initial formation.
- (3) Specific instructions for each assault rifle platoon, for the weapons platoon, and for attached elements.
- (4) Location of the support and, if practicable, its probable use.
- (5) Instructions for maintaining contact and flank protection.
- (6) Plans for reorganization after taking the objectives.
- (7) Location of the battalion ammunition supply point, the battalion aid station, and other administrative instructions.
- (8) Location of the company command post and the initial and future locations of the company commander.

b. Orders have their maximum effectiveness

only when each man of the company understands *what* he is to do, and the *where, when, how, and why*. The trained soldier who is briefed completely will attempt to find ways of overcoming every obstacle to accomplish his mission. The unbriefed soldier, no matter how well trained, is likely to suspend or cease his efforts when he meets strong resistance because he does not know what should be done. Therefore, the company commander closely checks that the men are thoroughly briefed. The maximum possible use should be made of all available and improvised orienting aids, such as maps, sketches, aerial photographs, and, when time permits, sand tables.

186. ANTITANK DEFENSE. For antitank measures see paragraphs 13, 50, 90, and 150.

187. COMMUNICATION DURING THE ATTACK. a. Tactical control of the company during the attack depends primarily on communication. The company commander keeps informed of changes in the situation of his own units and those in adjacent and larger units. To do this, a constant flow of information is needed to the front, laterally, and to the rear, so that he can give timely orders to meet changing situations.

b. Adequate communication within the company is the company commander's responsibility. A radio operator and a messenger habitually accompany the company commander.

c. Communication with the battalion commander and adjacent unit commanders is maintained. The company commander normally communicates

with the battalion commander by radio. Communication between company and battalion command posts is by wire, radio, and messenger. The company commander may communicate with adjacent units direct or through the battalion command post by radio, messenger, and wire, when practicable.

d. The command post of an assault rifle company is seldom more than 300 yards from the front line, and it moves forward as the company advances. The new locations are reported to the battalion command post. All locations should provide concealment from enemy ground observation and, if possible, defilade from enemy fire and concealment from aerial observation.

Section III. ATTACK

188. MOVEMENT TO THE LINE OF DEPARTURE. The movement from the attack position to the line of departure is in a deployed formation which permits the assault elements of the company to use maximum cover and concealment. This formation places them on the line of departure in the relative position from which they start the attack.

189. CONDUCT OF THE ATTACK. a. The assault platoons cross the line of departure at the time set for the attack, using the cover and concealment provided by the terrain and the protection given by the supporting fires. If subjected to effective small-arms fire before reaching the assault position, the platoons advance as discussed in paragraph 128. If subjected to hostile artillery or mor-

tar fires, the assault troops move rapidly through or around the impact area. The ability of an enemy observer to adjust fire on advancing rifle troops is partially or totally neutralized by fire and smoke from friendly supporting weapons. In addition, as the troops near the assault position (within 100–150 yards of the objective), they are less vulnerable to enemy mortar and artillery fires, since the defender ordinarily does not place these fires on his own troops. Therefore, to obtain this relative immunity from enemy indirect fires, the assault echelon moves rapidly toward the enemy position.

b. Leaders aggressively push groups forward to seize natural strong points of terrain from which fire (particularly that of automatic weapons) can be delivered on enemy positions. Because of unequal resistance by the enemy, differences in terrain, and variations in the assistance received from supporting fires, some units may advance while others are held up. A platoon not stopped by fire pushes on even though adjacent units are stopped. This advance may outflank resistance holding up adjacent units and may let automatic weapons deliver flanking fire on the enemy. It may permit other elements to move into the gap to envelop the enemy or attack his rear. Islands of resistance are overcome by combined frontal and flanking action.

190. CONTROL. a. Once the attack is launched, the company commander influences the action by supervising the assault platoons, by using all avail-

able supporting fires, and by using the support at the proper time and place. To plan ahead and act at the proper time, he keeps constantly informed of the situation on his front and flanks. The company commander, accompanied by a radio operator and a messenger, moves where he best can observe and control the action of that part of the company whose operations are most vital to success. He must be able to communicate readily with the assault platoons, the company command post, the support, the supporting weapons under his control, the forward observers of weapons units of higher echelons, and the battalion commander.

b. Supporting fires. Throughout the attack the company commander brings about the closest coordination between the movements of his rifle platoons and the fires of supporting weapons. He arranges for heavy, well-coordinated fire support, to obtain the maximum shock effect on the enemy. Under its protection, he pushes the attack rapidly to save time and casualties.

c. Use of the weapons platoon. The weapons platoon pushes forward aggressively to maintain effective fire support. (See pars. 162 and 163.)

d. Use of the support. (For *missions* of the support, see par. 131.)

- (1) When the company commander holds out a support at the start of the attack, it is kept close enough to the assault echelon to permit its prompt use to exploit a success or to repel a counterattack. If the support is directed to follow the assault echelon by bounds from one covered po-

sition to another, the company commander keeps it within supporting distance but does not merge it with the assault echelon. If the company commander initially directed the support to await orders in a certain location, he gives timely orders for its forward movement. Variations in terrain or in the situation may require a change in the manner of controlling the movement of the support, or a change in the distance at which it follows the assault echelon. The company commander considers these conditions and directs changes whenever necessary.

- (2) When use of the company support is necessary to renew the impetus of a stalled attack, it is committed without hesitation. It is used preferably for a flank attack or an envelopment against an enemy weakness rather than against enemy strength. Every attempt is made to avoid attacking through an assault platoon which is disorganized or which has excessive casualties. The support attacks as a complete unit. Except to repel a counterattack, the company support ordinarily is not used if the assault platoons still have elements which are not committed. A new support is reconstituted at the earliest practicable opportunity.

e. Security. The company commander does not depend on the original measures taken for flank security to remain effective throughout the entire

attack. (See par. 183.) He adjusts his flank security to meet changes in the situation.

f. Assistance to adjacent units.

- (1) The company assists adjacent units to advance. This is done when directed by the battalion commander, or when the company commander estimates that such assistance will help achieve the battalion mission.
- (2) Assistance which lets a rearward adjacent unit advance is generally an effective means of protecting the company's flank.
- (3) Assistance by fire and maneuver usually is more effective than assistance by fire alone. (See fig. 48.) Such maneuver is supported strongly by the fire of available weapons, including those of the unit being assisted. Maneuver is not used if it results in depriving the company of its essential elements for its own further progress.

191. ASSAULT. When the assault echelon progresses as close to the enemy position as it can without masking its supporting fires, the fires are lifted and the assault is started. The company commander lifts supporting fires by giving a prearranged signal, or he estimates when the units will be ready to assault and arranges with the battalion commander for lifting supporting fires at that time. When supporting fires are lifted, assault troops close rapidly and aggressively, using assault fire. Supporting weapons cover the assault by fir-

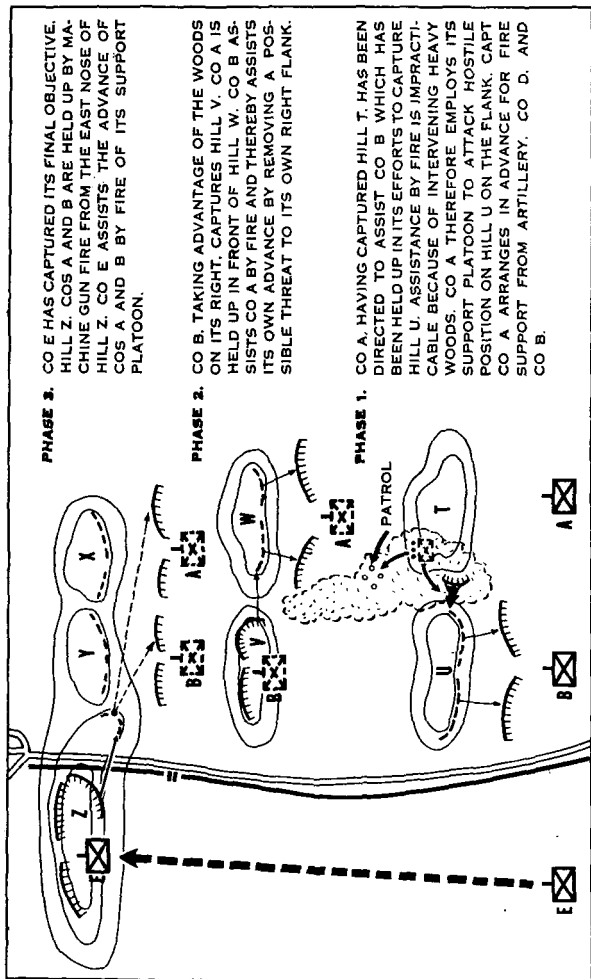


Figure 48. Assistance to adjacent units.

ing on adjacent and rearward hostile elements. The assault is started on the company commander's order or signal, and it is repeated by all officers and noncommissioned officers. The assault is pushed through the depth of the objective without allowing the enemy an opportunity to reorganize or man his defense. The company commander uses every means at his disposal to press the attack aggressively forward, and he exploits without delay every advantage gained.

192. REORGANIZATION. a. Immediately upon taking an objective, the company places itself to repel a counterattack according to the company attack order. The company commander then makes prompt adjustments to fit the situation. He orders the rapid displacement of the weapons platoon and any attached weapons, and he places them to cover possible enemy avenues of approach to the front and flanks of the captured objective. He uses other supporting fires to protect against hostile counterattacks.

b. After the company elements are placed to repel a counterattack, reconnaissance is made for a continuation of the attack. Concurrently, the company commander has each platoon leader reorganize his platoon. Key men are replaced, ammunition is redistributed, and the unit situation, strength, and ammunition status are reported to the battalion commander. Ammunition is brought forward by vehicle or carrying parties, and casualties are evacuated. Identification of enemy units is reported, and prisoners are sent to collect-

ing points. Completion of the reorganization should find the company regrouped into an effective team with control re-established, with an adequate ammunition supply, and with plans completed to continue the attack. The battalion commander is informed of the situation.

193. ACTION WHEN THE ADVANCE IS HALTED. a. When strong enemy action forces a temporary defense while in close contact with a strong enemy, the company organizes its position as outlined in paragraph 287. The company may continue the attack by fire until other supporting fires can help or until an adjacent or reserve unit flanks the enemy position. The company does not withdraw from its position except on order from the battalion commander.

b. When a hostile threat is repulsed after a temporary defense at close quarters, the company prepares to continue the attack as outlined in paragraph 175. The company commander's troop leading procedure is applied as the situation permits.

c. During temporary halts other than those required by enemy action, the company commander gives security instructions to the company. Maximum advantage is taken at halts to reorganize the platoons, to resupply, and to prepare for continuing the attack. Protective measures are taken to minimize casualties because of enemy small arms or artillery fire and aerial bombardment.

194. PURSUIT. a. The pursuit starts when the enemy cannot maintain his position and endeavors to

escape by retreat. It begins only upon orders of a higher commander. Once it starts, it is characterized by boldness and rapidity of action and is pushed to the limit of endurance. Security measures are limited in order to aid the advance. No opportunity is given the enemy to reorganize his forces or his defense.

b. To conserve the strength of troops, the pursuing elements usually are motorized, and maximum use is made of vehicles and tanks to overtake and envelop the enemy. The formation and actions of a leading rifle company resemble those of the support of a motorized advance guard battalion (par. 31). The company commander is allowed maximum freedom of action by the battalion commander. The battalion commander's orders usually are brief and fragmentary, giving missions, direction of advance, and objectives. Objectives are much more distant than in normal attack situations and may include important road junctions, stream crossings, villages, and towns along the axis of advance. Frequently, the company is ordered to continue the movement during darkness or to make a limited objective night attack. The night attack follows the general principles outlined in section V, this chapter, but the preparation time is brief and daylight reconnaissance usually is lacking.

c. Tanks and elements of the heavy weapons company in the pursuit are attached to a leading rifle company. The enemy may use tanks and self-propelled guns to cover his retreat. Therefore, the company commander uses his attached tanks for

both assault purposes and antitank protection. The company commander calls for fires of artillery and heavy mortars through accompanying forward observers but does not delay his action awaiting such support. Uncovered night movements are common in the pursuit.

d. Frequently, in the pursuit, a rifle company is attached to a tank company. (See FM 7-35.)

Section IV. RESERVE RIFLE COMPANY IN THE ATTACK

195. MOVEMENT TO INITIAL POSITION. a. The battalion order designating a rifle company as the battalion reserve indicates the initial location of the company. The order may include instructions for a subsequent movement, flank protection, preparation of plans to meet various situations, and contact with adjacent units.

b. Upon receiving the battalion order, the reserve company commander considers possible covered routes from the assembly area to the initial reserve position. The selection of the route is made after a reconnaissance, preferably by the company commander. Maximum effort is made to avoid disclosing the location or movement of the reserve. The company commander normally remains with the battalion commander during the conduct of the attack.

c. After making his reconnaissance of the route to and the location of the initial reserve position, the company commander gives his initial order.

He gives his men information of the enemy and of supporting troops, the battalion plan of attack, and instructions for the movement to the initial reserve position and its occupation and security.

196. MOVEMENT TO SUCCESSIVE RESERVE POSITIONS. a. Initially, the reserve company usually is placed behind the company which is attacking the key objective in the battalion zone. Later, it advances behind the company making the most rapid progress, to protect that company against counter-attack and infiltration from its rear, to support the main effort, and to exploit a success. The company commander reconnoiters and recommends successive positions and routes to them.

b. Except in emergencies, the company moves by bounds, on the orders of the battalion commander. When the company is too far behind the assault rifle companies to accomplish its probable missions, the company commander promptly reports this fact to the battalion commander.

197. PLANNING POSSIBLE MISSIONS. a. The reserve company may be assigned one or more of the following missions:

- (1) Envelop points of resistance located by the assault echelon, frequently by a movement through the zone of an adjacent battalion.
- (2) Protect the flanks and rear of leading companies.
- (3) Repel counterattacks, especially against the flanks.

- (4) Mop-up of a position overrun or bypassed by the assault echelon.
- (5) Take over the mission of all or part of the assault echelon.
- (6) Keep contact with adjacent units.

b. As the attack develops, the battalion commander indicates the probable use of the reserve. He has the company commander reconnoiter and make plans. The company commander makes timely plans to meet all possible situations, and he reports his plans to the battalion commander for approval. He informs his unit leaders of the details of these plans and estimates the time necessary to put each plan into effect.

198. RECONNAISSANCE AND LIAISON. To execute any of his missions promptly, the company commander constantly keeps himself informed of the situation by—

- a. Personal reconnaissance and observation.
- b. Liaison with the battalion commander and the battalion command post.
- c. Communication with the battalion commander and the battalion command post.

199. ACTION WHEN COMMITTED. The battalion commander selects the attack position, the company objective, the direction of attack, the tentative time of attack, and the general supporting fires. The actual time of attack is announced by the battalion commander after the company arrives at the attack position and the company commander reports that the company is prepared for

the attack. When the reserve company attacks, it operates as any rifle company in the attack.

Section V. NIGHT ATTACK

200. GENERAL. The rifle company may be used in a night attack as part of a battalion or as the principal attacking force. In either case, the actions of the company are the same.

201. PURPOSE OF NIGHT ATTACK. Night attacks may be ordered for one or more of the following purposes:

- a. Avoid heavy losses which would occur in daylight.
- b. Complete or exploit a success.
- c. Prevent the enemy from improving his defenses.
- d. Gain important terrain for further operations.
- e. Deceive and surprise the enemy.

202. CHARACTERISTICS OF NIGHT ATTACK. a. Night combat is characterized by a decrease in the effectiveness of aimed fire; by an increase in the importance of close combat and fire of fixed weapons; and by difficulty in movement, maintenance of direction, troop leading, control, and contact. Night attacks often are favorable to the attacker in order to complete or exploit a success, to gain important terrain for further operations, to avoid heavy losses which would be incurred by attacks in daylight over open terrain, or to capitalize on the

surprise inherent in night combat. The surprise and shock to the defender, on the other hand, due to his limited observation and the reduction of his defensive measures, occasionally cause him panic.

b. Secrecy and surprise are essential for accomplishing a night attack at the minimum cost of casualties. A simple plan helps obtain surprise. Surprise can be gained by striking the enemy from an unexpected direction. However, failure to obtain surprise need not cause a night attack to fail. The attacker, by resolute action, can destroy or drive back an enemy who has discovered or anticipated their approach.

c. The objective should be easily identifiable at night and small enough to capture in a single assault by the attacking force. Because of reorganization difficulties, the company ordinarily is not given more than one objective during any one night.

203. TYPES OF NIGHT ATTACK. Night attacks are classified as nonilluminated and illuminated. A nonilluminated night attack is made under cover of darkness, using only the light which may be available from natural sources. An illuminated night attack uses artificial light—for example, flares and searchlights (see par. 211). These two types are classified further as supported or unsupported, according to their execution. The type of night attack used depends on the terrain, the tactical situation, and the equipment.

204. SUPPORTED NIGHT ATTACK. The capture of a well-defended enemy position may require the use

of all supporting weapons. In a supported night attack, maximum effort is made to maintain secrecy as to the exact location, direction, and time of attack. Such a supported night attack, utilizing battalion and regimental weapons and artillery, includes preliminary preparation fires as well as protective fires during and after the attack. The protective fires isolate the objective and prevent or limit a hostile counterattack.

205. UNSUPPORTED NIGHT ATTACK. An unsupported night attack, either illuminated or nonilluminated, differs from a supported night attack in that preliminary preparation fires are not used. Supporting fires are planned resembling those for a supported night attack, but the fires may be withheld entirely or withheld until the attack is discovered by the enemy. The planned protective fires may be used as in a supported attack to prevent or limit a hostile counterattack.

206. RECONNAISSANCE FOR A NIGHT ATTACK. Daylight observation of the objective, and approaches to it, is desirable. When such observation is impossible, essential information can be obtained from large-scale maps, from aerial reconnaissance, and from night patrolling. To preserve secrecy, it may be necessary to limit reconnaissance.

207. NIGHT ATTACK PLAN. a. Minute detail and careful preparation characterize the plan for a night attack. Plans should be simple. A complex plan is warranted only after the company com-

mander has weighed its advantages against the increased probability of failure by its use. No set method of attack can be followed, and the procedures are varied according to the visibility, the terrain, and the enemy activity. To plan the attack, the company commander seeks complete and detailed information of hostile forces (size, organization, identification, and night locations), the expected action of friendly troops, and the ground to be crossed.

b. The company commander obtains information of hostile locations from sources to include—

- (1) The battalion commander. (This includes information from higher commanders; for example, intelligence studies, aerial photographs, and reports of prisoners of war and of civilian inhabitants of the area.)
- (2) The front-line elements.
- (3) Observation posts.
- (4) Reconnaissance.
- (5) Patrolling. (This frequently is the only source of detailed terrain information and of hostile outguards and listening posts.)

c. The company commander obtains information of friendly troops from the battalion commander and the units involved.

208. DIRECTION AND CONTROL. The company commander uses maximum means of maintaining direction and control, which usually include—

a. Selection of open terrain which favors the advance.

b. Use of selected riflemen or machine gunners to fire tracers at the objective area.

c. Use of guides for movements in rear of and forward of the line of departure. Competent guides frequently can be selected from patrols which are familiar with the area.

d. Designation of the lateral and forward limits of the objective by unmistakable terrain features.

e. Designation of compass directions for routes of advance forward of the line of departure.

f. Use of connecting files or groups, both laterally and in depth. Their need is determined by the visibility, the terrain, and the enemy activity.

g. Designation of a base platoon. It usually is the platoon having the most easily identified route.

h. Regulation of the advance forward of the line of departure to include the limit of advance on the objective.

i. Retention of the company column formation as long as possible. If practicable, deployment as skirmishers is delayed until the company is within assaulting distance of the enemy position.

j. Designation of each platoon's mission after capturing the objective. The platoon leader assigns squad sectors and definitely indicates the area and boundaries of each squad objective.

209. TIME OF A NIGHT ATTACK. a. The time of attack usually is given by the battalion or regimental commander. When the rifle company is the principal attacking force, the company commander may

be called upon to recommend the time of attack.

b. An attack started during the *first hours of darkness* may be used after a successful day attack. It then strikes the enemy before he has time to organize his position or plan his artillery support. This timing of the attack also may be considered when enemy night operations are expected.

c. An attack during the *last hours of darkness* is used better as a preliminary operation to a general attack at daybreak because it gives the defender no time to reorganize. The attack should begin in time to complete the capture of the objective at least one-half hour before daylight. This allows time for the reorganization of the assault troops under cover of darkness. The time of attack should provide a cushion of time to compensate for reasonable delays, such as a temporary loss of contact or control, or an unexpected difficulty.

210. NIGHT ATTACK FORMATION. a. The company usually crosses the line of departure and advances toward the enemy in a column, as this is the easiest formation for the company commander to control. It is maintained until the platoon release point is reached (par. 215), or deployment is forced by enemy action. If visibility permits control and the objective is close to the line of departure or if early contact with the enemy is expected, it may be desirable to advance from the line of departure with platoons on a line and each platoon in a column of files. After the line of deployment is reached (par. 216), or if the enemy discovers the attack before it is reached, the assault is begun.

b. When the company is one of the assault companies in a battalion attack, its assault usually is made with all rifle platoons abreast in order to obtain the maximum fire power and shock action. When the company attacks alone, it usually holds one platoon in support. When a support is held out, it moves as directed by the company commander. It may follow closely the assault echelon or it may be left in rear of the line of departure to be brought forward by guides or on a signal. It may have the mission of mopping up or giving normal support. If no support is held out, one is designated immediately after the objective is captured.

c. The weapons platoon and any attached tanks or other supporting weapons are made available shortly after capture of the objective. Weapons which can be hand carried may follow the assault echelon by bounds, but they should not be so close to the rifle platoons that they get involved in the assault. The decision on how and when to move them depends on the visibility, the terrain, and the enemy action. When conditions are unfavorable for a movement directly behind the assault echelon, the supporting elements may be left behind the line of departure to be brought forward by guides after the objective is captured. In such cases, if the supporting weapons are used to furnish protective fires for the assaulting force, they normally should be placed in suitable positions on the flanks of the line of departure from which they can deliver flank protective fires. The forward movement after the capture of the objective may

be made by hand or on carriers. Control measures used for this movement vary with the visibility, the terrain, the enemy action, and the absence or neutralization of enemy antitank obstacles or mines.

211. ILLUMINATION DEVICES. If illumination devices are used during the night attack, the plan of attack depends on the visibility they give. The visibility may vary from conditions approximating daylight, when direct lighting by searchlights and artillery or aircraft flares are used, to conditions approximating the light of a half moon or less, when indirect lighting by searchlights is used. (See par. 225.)

212. NIGHT ATTACK POSITIONS. The last-minute coordination before crossing the line or point of departure is made in an attack position. If this position is not given by the battalion commander, the company commander selects it during his daylight reconnaissance. The attack position is directly behind the company line or point of departure. It should be clearly recognizable on the ground; if not, it is marked unmistakably. Cover from enemy direct-fire weapons is desirable but not essential, since the assault troops occupy this area only briefly. Open terrain is preferable unless a high degree of visibility is present. The use of guides, the choice of clearly defined routes, and the use of marking devices during the movement to the attack position, minimize confusion, prevent loss of direction and control, and preserve secrecy.

213. LINE OR POINT OF DEPARTURE. The line of departure for a night attack resembles that for a daylight attack. The limitations on visibility dictate whether greater attention is given to selecting and to marking a line of departure which easily is recognized at night. (See figs. 49 and 50.) If the company makes the initial advance in column, the line of departure is crossed at a single point—the point of departure. The line of departure for a night attack normally is the line held by friendly troops.

214. ROUTES TO OBJECTIVE. Routes to the objective are selected carefully. The company commander weighs the advantage of ease of control gained by selecting a route which follows an easily recognized landmark against the disadvantage of the possibility that the enemy's locations and prearranged fires cover roads and other obvious routes of approach.

215. PLATOON RELEASE POINT. The platoon release point is the point where the company commander releases control to the platoon leaders for the movement to their respective areas of deployment. It normally is located between the line of departure and the probable line of deployment and is used when the company advances in column. When the company advances in parallel columns from the attack position, the platoon release point is located in the attack positions. If enemy action causes a premature deployment before the com-

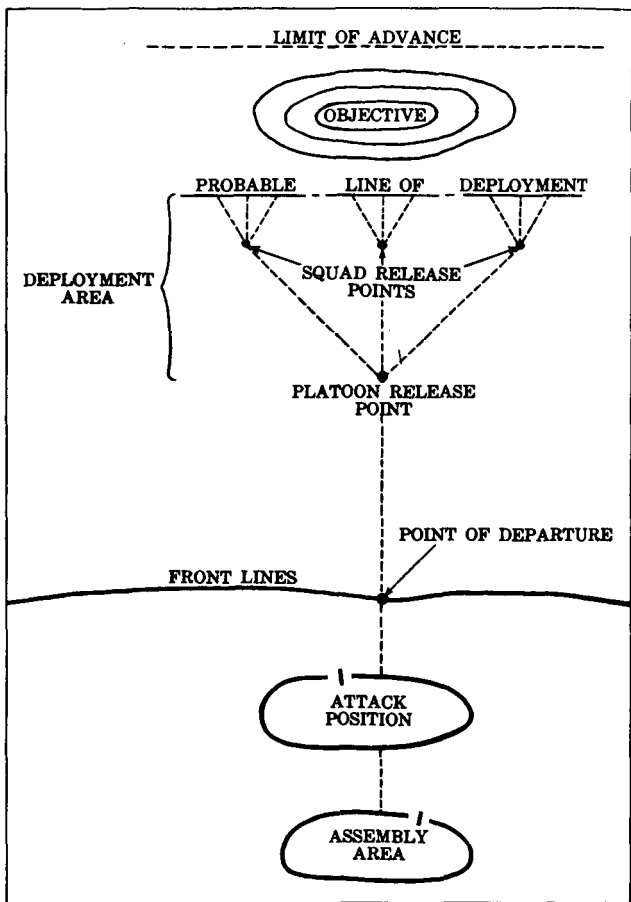


Figure 49. Rifle company in a night attack moving from a point of departure (schematic).

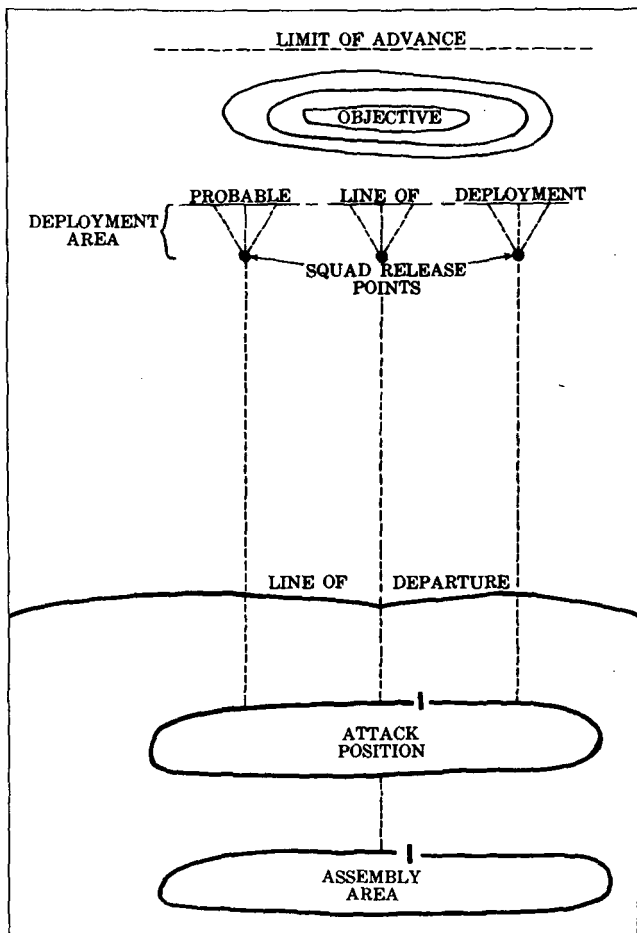


Figure 50. The rifle company in a night attack may move from a line of departure in a line of columns (schematic).

pany arrives at the platoon release point, the platoons deploy and fight as directed by the company commander or as required by the situation.

216. PROBABLE LINE OF DEPLOYMENT. The probable line of deployment is a previously selected line where deployment is completed before the final assault. It is a terrain feature which is recognized easily at night and is within assaulting distance of the objective. This distance varies according to the type of position being assaulted, the type and intensity of the preparation fire, the expected hostile reaction, and the terrain. The probable line of deployment usually is from 100 to 200 yards from the objective. It is far enough from the objective to permit undetected deployment as skirmishers, yet close enough to permit maximum control during the assault. When no suitable natural line of deployment is available, a line should be marked by guides using telephone wire, engineer tape, luminous buttons, or infrared equipment.

217. LIMIT OF ADVANCE. To retain control and prevent the assault echelon from being endangered by friendly protective fires, the company commander gives a limit of advance, both in depth and to the flanks of the objective. This limit should follow terrain features which are recognizable at night.

218. SECURITY MEASURES. Frontal and flank security is maintained during the movement from the line of departure to the line of deployment. The

size of these security detachments varies with the amount of detailed information of the enemy, the terrain, and the expected hostile counteraction. The distance at which these detachments operate depends on their mission and their commander's need and ability to control them.

219. SECRECY MEASURES. Surprise is of utmost importance in a night attack. It is obtained chiefly through secrecy measures which include—

a. Restricting the size and activities of reconnaissance elements and other preparations for the attack.

b. Keeping rifles loaded and locked during the movement, allowing firing only on order of selected leaders.

c. Prohibiting smoking, use of lights, talking (except to whisper orders or instructions), and the use of shiny or noisy equipment.

d. Darkening faces and hands with dirt or other substance.

e. Regulating the rate of advance from the line of departure so that the entire company can move silently. The rate of advance depends primarily on the terrain and the visibility.

220. IDENTIFICATION. The force commander determines the means of night identification, which must be readily available to all men. A white cloth arm band around each upper arm may be used for visual recognition. Words or noises, such as a challenge and a password given in a low tone without hissing, are valuable as a means of identification.

Distinctive marks for officers and noncommissioned officers are desirable.

221. MANEUVER. During a night attack, limited maneuvers, such as a close envelopment, can be executed successfully, provided the visibility permits control. Under conditions of poor visibility, however, maneuver should not be attempted and units are assigned limited objectives toward which they advance in a straight line.

222. COMMUNICATION. Leaders familiarize themselves with the communication used for the attack. Communication plans include emergency signals for calling for and lifting supporting and protective fires. Wire is laid usually from the battalion to the assault company by a wire party closely following the advance. To preserve secrecy, wire communication and messengers should be used exclusively during the movement from the line of departure to the line of deployment. Alternate means, such as radio and pyrotechnic signals, are carried and used, if ordered by the commander.

223. COMPANY NIGHT ATTACK ORDER. The company order for a night attack has more detail than a similar order for a daylight attack to provide for every possible development. The following details normally are covered, in addition to those in appendix I:

- a. Designation of platoon release point, if used.
- b. Azimuth and description of landmarks.
- c. Platoon missions at daylight.

- d. Security measures for each platoon.
- e. Means of identification.
- f. Measures to maintain secrecy.
- g. Method of advance.
- h. Rate of advance.
- i. Special measures for control and coordination.
- j. Action in case of hostile countermeasures.
- k. Probable line of deployment.
- l. Limitations on firing.
- m. Limitations on reconnaissance.
- n. Specific orders for night patrolling before the attack and after the capture of the objective.
- o. Illumination devices.
- p. Limit of advance after the capture of the objective.

224. CONDUCT OF A NIGHT ATTACK. a. Advance to the line of deployment.

- (1) The advance from the line of departure to the deployment area is made in a column formation. A silent, stealthy advance is essential to secrecy. This formation is maintained until the platoon release point is reached, unless enemy action forces an earlier deployment. The line of deployment should be secured by patrols before the company arrives. When the platoons reach the line of deployment, they form skirmish lines and they assault at a prearranged time or on a given signal. Deployment is accomplished quickly and quietly; any confusion or de-

lay at this point increases the enemy's chances for detecting the attack.

- (2) The commander of each column marches at or near its head. When the company moves in a line of columns, the company commander marches where he best can control and regulate the advance. A non-commissioned officer marches at the rear of each column to assist in control and enforce secrecy. Column commanders and the company commander constantly check on direction and contact.
- (3) Commanders prevent a premature assault; however, action of hostile patrols or outguards may force part of the company to deploy before the time planned. If possible, elements forced to deploy reform in a column after the resistance is reduced.

b. Assault. Deployment may be ordered by the company commander because of enemy action, or it may be made upon arrival at the line of deployment. If the deployment is forced by the enemy, the assault is begun as soon as the deployment is complete and the assault is made at a walk, with men firing as they advance. Flares may be used to assist the assault troops in firing and in moving forward. When the assault troops deploy undiscovered at the line of deployment, they move off in the assault, maintaining silence until fired on by the enemy. Maximum effort is made to maintain the skirmish line and prevent it from breaking up into isolated groups. Noise and tracer fire may be

used to demoralize the enemy. Assault echelons drive forward to the far edge of the objective, leaving mop-up missions to the support and reserve units. Aggressive leadership by officers and noncommissioned officers is emphasized.

c. Reorganization. Reorganization begins as soon as the objective is captured, and it is carried out similar to a daylight attack. (See par. 192.) Security elements are established far enough to the front and flanks to prevent the enemy from secretly re-forming for a counterattack within assaulting distance of the captured position. The preplanned protective fires are continued as necessary. Just before daylight, all troops and weapons are redispersed as necessary to strengthen the position and to obtain better fields of fire. When the attack will be continued after daylight, immediate preparations are made to continue the attack.

225. ILLUMINATED NIGHT ATTACK. **a.** The battlefield is illuminated by attached or supporting searchlight units, by flares fired by mortars and artillery, or by flares dropped from aircraft. Battlefield illumination by searchlight is divided into direct lighting and indirect lighting. Direct lighting normally is used for target designation, observation, blinding the enemy, and deception. Indirect lighting is used for movement to positions, observation, movement to attack, and movement of reserves and supplies.

b. Direct lighting is not practicable under all conditions because the hostile reaction is immediate and violent, requiring early displacement of

the searchlights. Indirect lighting by the reflection of light beams from clouds or by the diffusion of the beams over the area provides intensity of light approximating half moonlight. The indirect lighting method is known as artificial moonlight. If flares are used to illuminate night attacks, they usually are placed behind the hostile position to outline it to the assault troops. Many flares are necessary for a night attack. When using battlefield illumination, the attacker usually sacrifices much of the secrecy of his movements and he may reveal his intentions of making the attack, yet the attacker gains more effective control and fire support.

Section VI. ATTACK OF A RIVER LINE

226. GENERAL. a. This section covers the rifle company as part of a battalion in the attack of a river line, the far bank held by the enemy. (For principles governing operations at a river line, see FM 100-5.)

b. The battalion warning and attack orders usually include—

- (1) Information of the enemy and the terrain of the crossing area.
- (2) Mission, hour of crossing, attack position, crossing site, zone of action, and objectives of the company to include any diversionary actions to deceive the enemy.
- (3) Plan of supporting fires.
- (4) Engineer material and men to assist in

the crossing, including where and when they will be available.

(5) Communication plan.

227. RECONNAISSANCE. a. The battalion order for a river crossing operation is preceded by a warning order. Upon receipt of the warning order, the company commander begins his reconnaissance of the proposed crossing site and obtains information to include—

- (1) Enemy locations and weapons in the company zone of action.
- (2) Route from the battalion assembly area to the company attack position.
- (3) Attack position.
- (4) Routes from the attack position to the crossing site.
- (5) Suitable terrain features to guide the direction of attack.
- (6) Width, depth, and current of the river at the proposed crossing site, and the condition of the river bottom and both banks.
- (7) Disposition and plans of the supporting engineer unit.

b. The company commander discusses this information with the engineer unit leader whose equipment the company will use during the actual crossing.

228. ASSEMBLY AREA AND ATTACK POSITION. a. The *assembly area* for a river crossing is similar

to any assembly area. Plans and orders for the crossing are completed in this area.

b. The *attack position* for a river crossing is the area where infantry troops are met by guides, which usually are furnished by the engineers, and are conducted to the crossing craft, preparatory to the movement to the near bank. Desirable characteristics of the company attack position for a river crossing include—

- (1) Ease of identification at night.
- (2) Accessibility to trucks or carrying parties which transport the crossing craft.
- (3) Nearness to easily identified, concealed, and covered foot routes to the river.
- (4) Nearness to the actual crossing sites.
- (5) Concealment for the assembly of craft and other means of crossing.
- (6) Terrain suitable for the distribution of assault platoons parallel to the crossing front. This distribution allows troops to proceed directly and without delay to embarkation points and permits them to leave the near bank at the same time along the entire front.

c. For a detailed discussion of assembly areas and attack positions, see paragraphs 37 and 38.

229. PLANS AND PREPARATIONS. a. Based on the battalion order and on additional information secured by reconnaissance, the company commander makes his detailed plans for the movement to the river, for the crossing, and for the action after landing.

b. To make the crossing with minimum confusion and delay, the company commander divides the company into boat groups (fig. 51) for the movement from the assembly area to the far bank of the river. The company's boat allotment is suballotted to platoon leaders (boat group leaders), and tactical unity is maintained if the situation permits. Boat groups rehearse their loading and landing operations, preferably with the same engineers who will support the group in its actual crossing. The formation used for the movement to the river places boat groups in the same relative positions they will be in when crossing.

c. The company commander closely checks that men are instructed in the action to take during the crossing, to include paddling, safety, and limitations on firing.

d. As its initial objective, the rifle company is given a part of the battalion's initial objective. This objective is a terrain feature whose capture neutralizes hostile direct fire from that feature on the crossing sites.

230. ASSIGNMENT OF CROSSING MEANS. a. If the company is in the battalion assault echelon, enough assault or storm boats or other crossing craft are provided to move the entire company in one trip. (See fig. 52.)

b. Tactical unity within the platoons is maintained as far as possible in assigning men to crossing craft. One satisfactory method for distributing the elements of an assault company is as follows:

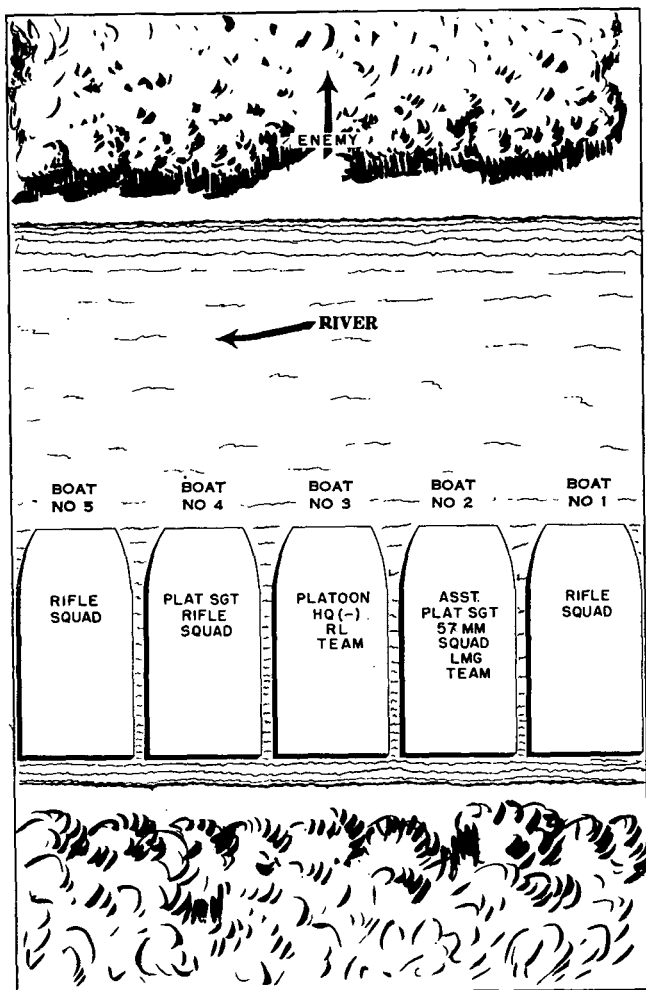


Figure 51. A typical boat grouping, showing assignment of assault boats to a rifle platoon reinforced with a 57-mm rifle squad.

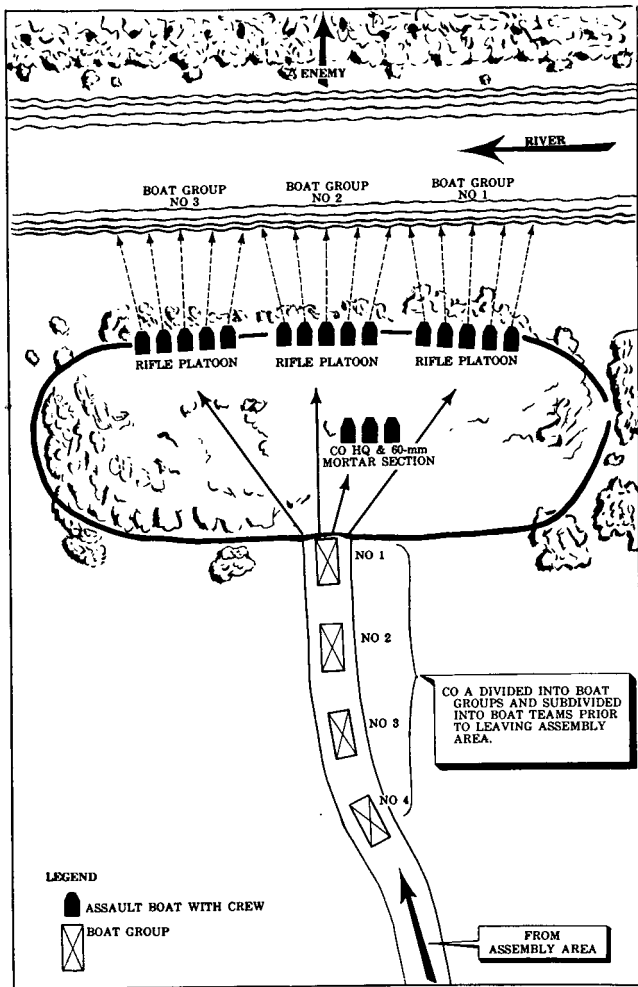


Figure 52. Movement to a river, showing attack position and a typical organization of boat groups.

- (1) *Leading wave.* Assault platoons (with attachments) and forward observers from the 60-mm mortar sections and the 81-mm mortar platoon.
- (2) *Second wave.* Company command group, weapons platoon (less detachments), support platoon (if any), attachments from the heavy weapons company, and artillery and heavy mortar company forward observers.

c. If the company is the battalion reserve, it may cross on the craft which initially carried the assault echelon, or it may cross as a unit on a foot bridge or ferry.

231. WIDTH OF CROSSING FRONT. a. The crossing front for the company is given by the battalion commander and he assigns each company a definite zone of action. The frontage approximates that for normal terrain.

b. The company commander determines zones of action for the platoons. In assigning platoon zones, the company commander considers the following factors: the amount and type of enemy resistance expected during the actual crossing, the condition of both banks of the river, the width and depth of the river, the speed and direction of the current, and the amount and type of crossing equipment available. These factors may require that gaps exist between the zones of action of platoons; however, tactical unity of the elements is preserved.

c. For protection during the crossing and ease of deployment after the landing, lateral intervals

between craft afloat resemble those between corresponding units on land.

232. FORMATION FOR THE CROSSING. The rifle company usually crosses with the three rifle platoons abreast, each reinforced with a 57-mm rifle squad. Company aid men are attached to each platoon. The remainder of the weapons platoon and the company command group normally follow in the wave behind the rifle platoons.

233. ORDERS. To give squad and platoon leaders the maximum time for reconnaissance and planning, the company commander issues timely warning orders. The final order for the crossing is as complete, specific, and detailed as practicable. It includes instructions for the movement from the assembly area to the near bank, the crossing of the river, and the capture of the initial objective. Upon capture of the initial objective, the company commander usually gives additional orders for the continuation of the attack. Besides the data furnished in usual attack orders, the river crossing order covers the following:

a. Location of the attack position and routes to it, and the time of departure from the assembly area.

b. Method of march control to the attack position; for example, guides, control points, and formation.

c. Instructions for forming boat groups.

d. Allotment of assault boats to platoons (boat groups).

234. MOVEMENT TO THE RIVER. a. The company moves to the attack position under battalion control, when practicable. The company marches in boat teams as organized for the crossing.

b. Upon arrival in the attack position, the company is met by engineer guides who lead boat groups to their boats. Boat teams, accompanied by engineer crews for the craft, are guided along previously marked and secured routes, carrying their boats to the river. The movement is timed and coordinated so that no pause is made at the river's edge, and boats of the leading wave are launched at approximately the same time.

235. CROSSING THE RIVER. Engineers usually are in charge of the crossing craft; however, keeping direction from embarkation to landing areas is the responsibility of the senior infantryman in each boat. If the craft does not operate under its own power, the boat teams paddle. Each craft starts across the river as soon as loaded and goes as rapidly as possible to the opposite bank. No attempt is made to maintain formation of any kind while on the water, although intervals between craft should be maintained. No effort is made to counteract the natural drift unless the current is so swift that it causes an appreciable drift downstream from the proposed landing site. In such a case, the need for counteracting this drift is anticipated by the commander conferring with supporting engineers. Firing from craft rarely is attempted in daylight and never at night. After reaching the far bank, the troops debark rapidly,

deploy, and attack the initial company objective. Engineer crews return the craft immediately for further operations.

236. SUPPORT OF CROSSING. a. Air, artillery, heavy mortar, and heavy weapons company support for a river crossing is arranged by higher commanders. The plan of supporting fires is stated in the battalion attack order. The weapons platoon of an assault company is not used to provide supporting fire during the actual crossing. It crosses with the company and, after landing on the far bank of the river, it supports the attack. The weapons platoon of a reserve rifle company initially may occupy firing positions on the near side of the river to fire on targets on the far side.

b. The location of the heavy weapons company in a river crossing operation usually is as follows:

- (1) One section of the *machine gun platoon* ordinarily is attached to each assault company until the initial company objective is captured. Thereafter, the platoon is used as directed by the battalion commander. It may remain attached to assault companies, be in direct support of assault companies, or be in general support of the battalion.
- (2) One section of the *75-mm rifle platoon* ordinarily is attached to each assault company until the initial company objective is captured. Thereafter, the platoon is used in its normal role.
- (3) The *81-mm mortar platoon* is used on the

near bank in general support of the crossing. A mortar observer moves with each assault company. The mortar platoon crosses the river as soon as the initial battalion objective is captured.

c. A daylight crossing usually is made under cover of a smoke screen laid by aircraft, artillery, heavy mortars, 81-mm mortars, or chemical units.

d. For a discussion of the regimental tank and heavy mortar companies in support of a river crossing operation, see FM's 7-35 and 7-37.

237. ATTACK AFTER CROSSING. After crossing, troops in the leading wave promptly clear the river bank. If the actual crossing of the water is opposed, or if the initial company objective is close to the river, no attempt is made initially to reorganize from boat teams to platoon groups. The platoon leader regains control of the boat teams and reorganizes his platoon as soon as he can. When the actual crossing of the water is unopposed, individual boat teams go immediately to previously selected locations and are reorganized into their normal platoon organization. Rifle platoons then advance to the initial objective. Subsequent operations resemble those for any other attack. (See par. 189.)

238. SECURITY. After making a river crossing, the company promptly establishes normal security. In addition to close-in protection, the company usually patrols vigorously, especially the unprotected

flanks, to secure early information of enemy locations and activities.

239. AMMUNITION SUPPLY. Ammunition required for the initial operation on the hostile bank is carried by the men in the assault craft. The company commander may have extra rifle ammunition carried, and he may have men (in addition to the regular ammunition bearers) carry extra ammunition for the rocket launcher, the 57-mm rifle, the light machine gun, and the 60-mm mortars. The battalion establishes an ammunition supply point on the far side of the river as early as possible. The pioneer and ammunition platoon moves this ammunition forward to the rifle companies.

240. COMMUNICATION. Communication during the attack of a river line is similar to communication in other attack situations. Radio and visual communication may be restricted until leading elements reach the attack position or until the attack is discovered. Messengers (and wire communication, if available) are used during the movement to the river and after the landing on the far bank. The battalion communication section lays a wire head to the river and extends it across the river as soon as practicable. Company communication men operate this wire head.

Section VII. ATTACK IN WOODS

241. GENERAL. a. An attacking force usually avoids isolated wooded areas in the enemy's defensive

position. It bypasses such areas on either or both flanks while neutralizing their edges with fire and smoke. If avoiding the woods is impracticable and their possession is necessary, the attacker envelops them. If they cannot be enveloped, then they must be attacked frontally.

b. When woods are attacked frontally, the attack consists of the seizure and occupation of the near edge, the advance through the woods, and the exit from the woods. This section is concerned primarily with the advance through the woods.

242. FACTORS INFLUENCING OPERATIONS IN WOODS. The following factors require that an attack in woods be planned and coordinated carefully:

a. **Knowledge of the woods.** Accurate information is needed concerning the density of the woods, and the location of roads, trails, streams, landmarks, enemy dispositions, and obstacles inside the woods. Much of this information can be obtained from aerial photographs and intensive ground patrolling.

b. **Roads and trails.** Key points along roads and trails usually are defended heavily by the enemy. The company plan of attack includes provisions to clear the enemy from these roads and trails in order to allow the use of vehicles for supply and evacuation and the use of tanks to support the attack. Continued advance without securing such roads and trails may result in considerable difficulty or failure of the attack.

c. **Enemy automatic fires.** Defensive automatic weapons fire along existing or prepared fire lanes.

Such weapons ordinarily do not have long or wide fields of fire, but they are extremely difficult to locate. They usually are eliminated by small groups attacking their flanks and rear.

d. Effects of high explosive fire. Tree bursts increase the area which can be covered by artillery and mortar fires. The enemy usually minimizes the effects of such fires against him by building overhead cover for his positions. The assault rifle company normally is exposed to hostile artillery and mortar fires. Areas which are under these fires should be crossed rapidly or detoured.

e. Antipersonnel mines and booby traps. If the enemy has time to prepare his position, he will place antipersonnel mines and booby traps throughout the area. The problems involved in their detection and removal vary with the density of the woods and the underbrush.

f. Snipers and raiding parties. Woods give excellent concealment for snipers and raiding parties of either side. Special precautions are taken to protect company command and supply groups in the exercise of their duties.

243. PLANS. a. Formations. Dispositions depend on the frontage, the difficulty of movement, the visibility, and the enemy strength and characteristics. In woods made up of large trees, there usually is little undergrowth, and leading elements may be deployed completely. In woods made up of small, dense trees, or where undergrowth is heavy, a line of squad columns often is the best formation for the leading elements of the company. Security ele-

ments precede each leading unit, reconnoitering to the front and flanks. Rear units of the company ordinarily follow in column. Unless other elements of the battalion follow closely, some protection to the rear is provided.

b. Maintenance of direction, contact, and control. Difficulties in maintaining direction, control, and contact require control to be given to platoon leaders. To prevent the loss of direction, a magnetic azimuth normally is given each platoon. To aid control, the company commander and his command group usually follow closely behind the center of the leading echelon. The rate of advance depends on the visibility and must permit contact with adjacent units. This contact is by connecting groups. Periodic halts restore contact and cohesion, and phase lines may aid control.

c. Supporting fires. Because of control, coordination, and observation difficulties, direct-fire weapons, such as heavy machine guns, 57-mm and 75-mm rifles, and tanks frequently are attached to the assault rifle platoons. Effective use of tanks depends primarily on the visibility in the woods and the presence of roads and trails. In this type of combat, tanks are protected closely by foot elements. Limited observation and the presence of tree masks reduce the effectiveness of close support by artillery. Consequently, the use of 60-mm and 81-mm mortars from open spaces in the woods assumes added importance.

d. Support platoon. If a support is held out by the company commander, it is kept close to the assault echelon.

e. Communication. Radio communication often is limited greatly by the trees, and wire and messengers more often are used. When the woods are dense and enemy infiltration is possible, wire lines are policed often and thoroughly to prevent tapping and cutting by the enemy. Messenger communication is slow because of movement difficulties.

244. CONDUCT OF THE ATTACK. **a.** Seizure of the near edge of the woods is similar to any other attack. While the reorganization in the near edge of the woods takes place, the company commander gives instructions for the advance through the woods. The company starts the advance as soon as the reorganization is complete or on order from the battalion commander. A company formation is adopted which helps maintain contact with adjacent companies and which protects exposed flanks. Assault platoons should not dissipate their strength by furnishing numerous connecting groups. If the advance is unopposed, short halts are made to check direction and contact. Such halts are made best at well defined lines or areas; for example, trails, streams, or near edges of clearings. If satisfactory areas or lines are not found in the woods, halts may be made on a time schedule or after advancing a specified distance on an azimuth.

b. When resistance is encountered, the company uses frontal and flanking action to overcome it. Much of the combat consists of small-unit actions. Success depends on information gained by patrol

action before the formulation of plans and on intelligent, aggressive leadership by platoon and squad leaders. When the woods are dense, elements of the support platoon may be used to mop up the enemy in areas overrun by the assault platoons. The artillery normally fires against rearward targets or areas. Close fire support missions are supplied by 81-mm and heavy mortars.

c. The exit from the far edge of the woods is similar to any other attack.

Section VIII. RAIDS

245. EXPLANATION OF TERM. A raid is an attack made to accomplish a specific purpose inside the enemy position, with no intention of holding any ground.

246. PURPOSE OF A RAID. Raids are made to capture prisoners, to capture or destroy matériel, or to obtain information of hostile dispositions, strength, works, intentions, or methods of defense.

247. CHARACTERISTICS OF A RAID. A raid is characterized by the immediate withdrawal of the raiding force after accomplishing its mission and by the fact that both flanks of the raiding force are exposed during the conduct of the operation. The withdrawal is the most difficult part of the operation, and flank security is given added importance.

248. TYPES OF RAIDS. a. Raids are classified as supported and unsupported. In a supported raid, use

is made of heavy fire support. In an unsupported raid, heavy fire support is planned but used only on call.

b. *Supported raids* may be made in daylight or darkness. For protection, they depend on surprise and the fires of supporting weapons. When the raiding force is as large as a company, or when the mission requires that the raiding force remain in the hostile position for any length of time, protective fires of supporting weapons usually are needed, particularly during the withdrawal.

c. *Unsupported raids* usually are conducted at night without the fires of supporting weapons and depend primarily on surprise and darkness for protection. Such a raid ordinarily is executed by a force smaller than a company.

249. ORDERS FOR A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID.

The rifle company as a unit usually is used only in a supported raid. The battalion commander gives the mission, the objective, and the time. He may request the recommendations of the company commander for the routes of advance and withdrawal and for planning the fire support. The battalion commander arranges for rehearsals, and he may prescribe other details or leave them to the company commander's judgment.

250. RECONNAISSANCE FOR A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID.

For planning a raid, a thorough reconnaissance is made by the company commander and his unit leaders resembling that for a night attack. Night reconnaissance, as well as daylight recon-

naissance, is desirable. Besides the personal and map reconnaissance made by the company commander and his unit leaders, patrols reconnoiter the approaches to the enemy lines. Reconnaissance before the night of the raid tries to obtain information of the enemy strength and dispositions, and routes of advance and withdrawal.

251. ORGANIZATION FOR A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID. The company commander organizes his company into a number of assault and support parties. Each party is organized and equipped to accomplish a specific part of the over-all mission. Assault parties eliminate hostile resistance en route to the objective, furnish frontal protection for the raiding force while it is on the objective, and cover the withdrawal. Support parties do specific tasks within the objective; for example, guarding prisoners, removing or destroying enemy matériel, or searching for information of intelligence value. Support parties furnish flank protection and attack unexpected resistance. Assault parties normally are organized from the rifle platoon and are reinforced with automatic weapons. Support parties normally are organized from the weapons platoon, operating without crew-served weapons, and from the remainder of the company.

252. EQUIPMENT FOR A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID.

a. The company commander indicates the equipment for the men of the company raiding force, which depends on the mission. If the raid is made

to capture prisoners or gain information, submachine gun, knives, and blackjacks may be used.

b. Since raids often require heavy firepower at short ranges, a large number of automatic weapons and grenades are carried by the men.

c. Men's hands and faces may be blackened with charcoal, mud, potblack, or grease, and a special identification is worn on the uniform.

253. PASSAGE OF ENEMY OBSTACLES DURING A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID. A raid against a well-organized position usually must overcome enemy barbed wire entanglements and other obstacles. Barbed wire is cut by the leading elements. If the wire is too extensive for rapid cutting, bangalore torpedoes are used to blow out sections of it. The leading elements of the raiding force include men experienced in detecting and disarming mines and booby traps.

254. SUPPORTING FIRES FOR A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID. Supporting weapons of battalion, of regiment, and of the artillery fire their supporting and protective fires during the raid. Preparation fires before the raid may be used. They should be of short duration because they are likely to alert the enemy. Arrangements for fires may be made by the battalion commander in close coordination with the company commander. Preparation and supporting fires are used as in other attacks. The protective fires isolate the objective, prevent or limit hostile counterattacks, and aid in keeping open the route of withdrawal. All fires of the

area are coordinated so that the exact location, the direction, and the time of the raid are kept secret.

255. RALLYING POINTS FOR A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID. The purpose of a rallying point is to assemble elements of the company which are separated during the raid or which complete their specified missions and are ready to withdraw. A rallying point is selected in the vicinity of the objective area. A rallying point or a series of rallying points may be selected along the routes of advance and withdrawal. A rallying point within the friendly lines is used to aid the prompt collection and transmission of matériel, prisoners, and information gathered in the raid.

256. FLANK PROTECTION FOR SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID. The company commander plans to protect his flanks during the raid. He protects his flanks by planning artillery and mortar concentrations on probable avenues of enemy approach, and he sends out patrols from his support parties to the flanks and to key terrain features. Flank security elements are given definite instructions regarding their dispositions and the time or signal for the withdrawal.

257. WITHDRAWAL OF A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID. Upon completion of its mission, the raiding force withdraws. The company commander orders the withdrawal by a prearranged signal. When the signal is given, the raiding force, less the covering

force, assembles at the previously designated rallying point. Withdrawal usually is along the same route used for the advance. It is covered by the fires of the covering force and the fires of supporting weapons. As the company withdraws, flank security elements or patrols withdraw at the same time. These security elements withdraw along the flanks of the company and give close-in protection for those flanks. The covering force withdraws as instructed by the raid commander and it usually withdraws shortly after the main force.

258. REHEARSALS FOR A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID.

Time often is available for rehearsals, particularly in a stabilized situation. At least one daylight and one night rehearsal are desirable. Preferably, these rehearsals are conducted on ground similar to the area to be raided, and the men carry and use the equipment ordered for the raid.

259. CONDUCT OF A SUPPORTED NIGHT RAID. The attack phase of a night raid resembles a night attack (par. 224). The control of elements which are assigned special missions is given to the leaders of those elements. The raid commander, however, coordinates the actions of all elements of the force. During the raid, he decides when to call for, shift, or lift supporting and protective fires.

260. SUPPORTED DAYLIGHT RAID. The plans and preparation for a supported daylight raid are similar to those for a night raid. Smoke may be used to conceal the company. The attack phase of a

daylight raid resembles a daylight attack (par. 189).

261. UNSUPPORTED RAIDS. a. An unsupported raid depends primarily on surprise. Surprise may be obtained by stealth or by extremely rapid attack and withdrawal. Supporting and protective fires are planned similar to a supported raid, but they are not used unless called for by the raiding force. An unsupported raid of company size is exceptional.

b. Unsupported raids may be used at night or under other conditions of reduced visibility or when the enemy position is organized hastily and surprise, through stealth or rapid attack, is likely.

262. RAID BY AN ELEMENT OF A RIFLE COMPANY. The rifle company commander may be directed to conduct a raid, using an element of the company. Such a raid may be supported or unsupported. An element of the company is selected as the raiding force in an unsupported raid only when the situation is such that the raiding force can accomplish its mission by surprise without the aid of supporting weapons. Such conditions exist at night or during periods of reduced visibility. The company commander selects the leader and the units to make the raid. Subject to instructions from the battalion commander, the company commander gives the mission, the objective, and routes of advance and withdrawal. If the raid will be supported, the company commander arranges with the battalion

commander for fire support. He conducts rehearsals on ground resembling the raid area.

Section IX. INFILTRATION

263. GENERAL. a. Infiltration is a method of advancing unobserved into areas which are under hostile control or observation.

b. The *missions* which may be given an infiltrating force include the following:

- (1) Obtain information of enemy strength, dispositions, and supplies.
- (2) Disrupt hostile communication.
- (3) Attack and destroy a supply point, a bridge, a command post, or some other key installation.
- (4) Attack against the rear of a hostile position, together with a coordinated attack from its front.
- (5) Confuse and harass the enemy concurrently with other operations.

c. *Weather and terrain considerations* influence infiltration, which is accomplished best under conditions of limited visibility. Fog, heavy rain, darkness, heavy undergrowth, and extremely rugged terrain make control and coordination difficult, but they help infiltrating groups reach their objectives without detection. If a river or stream penetrates the enemy lines, rafts or small boats may be used.

d. The size of infiltrating groups is determined by their mission. If the mission entails securing information only, two or three carefully selected

men may be more successful than a large group. On the other hand, units as large as a rifle company may be directed to infiltrate through the enemy lines and attack against the rear of the hostile position, coordinating this attack with a frontal assault by another unit.

e. During infiltration, *control* is given to lower leaders, who select and coordinate their own routes, formations, and rate of advance.

f. *Secrecy* is needed for infiltrations. If a man is given the mission of securing enemy information by infiltration, he penetrates the hostile lines, gets the desired information, and returns with the information in time for it to be used. He acts secretly. In other cases, it may be necessary to maintain 'secrecy only until the objective is reached; for example, the attack of a supply point, the destruction of a bridge, or the disruption of communication.

264. INFILTRATION IN CONJUNCTION WITH AN ATTACK BY A LARGE FORCE. a. **General.** Before an attack by a larger force, the rifle company or platoon may be directed to infiltrate through the hostile forward defense during the day or at night, and then to attack enemy reserves or command, communication, and supply facilities in conjunction with the main attack of the larger force. If a daylight attack is planned, the infiltration should be completed at least one-half hour before dawn so that the preparations for the attack can be completed under cover of darkness.

b. Preparatory measures.

- (1) Before such action, reconnaissance is made by the unit leaders. A study is made of maps and aerial photographs, and information is obtained from the leaders or patrols which have operated in the hostile area. A warning order is issued in time to permit small-unit leaders to make their reconnaissance. An initial assembly area is selected within friendly lines. Points at which the unit will pass the friendly outpost are selected, and arrangements are made for passing through them. Reconnaissance of the routes is made from the initial assembly area to the friendly outpost line.
- (2) Leaders plan the route of advance beyond the outpost line. When extensive gaps exist between hostile forward elements, it may be possible for the entire unit to move together. If only small gaps exist, the movement may have to be made by small groups advancing over separate routes. If more than one route is used, each group leader plans his route. As few routes as possible are used, since control and reassembly of several groups is difficult. The planning, made principally from maps and sketches, seeks to locate ridges, roads, streams, and other landmarks that may be used to help maintain direction.
- (3) Rallying points are selected for unit or

groups to reassemble if surprised or scattered.

- (4) If the mission requires the unified action of the groups, assembly areas within the enemy lines are selected. These areas should be identified easily by a landmark that can be found during darkness. Alternate assembly areas are selected.

c. **Plan.** Careful and detailed planning, similar to that for a night attack, is made. Because of the nature of infiltration missions, additional planning is necessary for secrecy and for aiding the movement during periods of limited visibility. These additional plans provide that—

- (1) Guides are obtained to lead the unit to the friendly outpost line. Frequently, guides for the route through the enemy position are secured from patrols familiar with that area or from friendly guerrillas.
- (2) Each group moves in column. Distances are regulated by unit commanders and security is provided to the front, flanks, and rear.
- (3) If the weapons platoon is used, weapons are hand carried. If the movement is made by several small groups, weapons platoon squads are attached to the groups.
- (4) No definite rate of advance is given. The rate depends on the visibility, the terrain, and the enemy activity. Frequently, groups may halt for long periods while

enemy patrols are allowed to pass. Planning allows time for such eventualities. Secrecy is more important than speed.

- (5) Radios or pyrotechnics ordinarily are not used during the movement. They are carried for use after the attack is launched in rear of the enemy lines.

d. Orders. Orders are detailed, and each man is told exactly what he is to do. Orders include directions for the movement to the assembly area in the rear of the enemy lines and for the attack. If the attack is part of a large-scale action, coordination is made with fires supporting the main attack to prevent casualties from such fires.

e. Conduct of movement.

- (1) Each group advances silently. Its leader is at its head or where he best can control its movement. A noncommissioned officer at the rear of each column prevents straggling. Each column leader constantly checks the route and direction.
- (2) Each column provides its own protection to the front and flanks. Enemy outposts and patrols are avoided. If they cannot be avoided, they are eliminated as quietly as possible.

f. Action on reaching assembly area. A group approaching the assembly area within the enemy lines is halted while the area is reconnoitered. If no enemy is found, the group moves into the area and establishes security. Leaders reconnoiter for whatever action is required by the mission. Any needed changes in plans and orders are made so

that the attack is begun as planned and coordinated with the main attack.

265. INFILTRATION DURING AN ATTACK. Small groups may be sent forward by infiltration during an attack. When an attack is slowed down or stopped, infiltrating elements may infiltrate into enemy-controlled areas to cause confusion, give the impression of an attack from a different direction, or disrupt communication or supply. Infiltrating elements may consist of two or three men, or of entire squads.

Section X. OTHER OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS

266. REFERENCES. For characteristics of combat and tactical principles governing other operations, see FM 100-5 and other appropriate references listed in appendix VIII.

CHAPTER 8

RIFLE COMPANY, DEFENSIVE COMBAT

Section I. GENERAL

267. EMPLOYMENT. The rifle company of a front-line battalion is used to reorganize, occupy, and defend a company defense area on the main line of resistance, or to constitute the battalion reserve.

268. PRINCIPLES OF DEFENSE. In organizing and conducting the defense of his area, a rifle company commander applies tactical principles to give the maximum coordination of troop locations, terrain, and fire power. These principles include—

a. Organization of key terrain. A defensive position can be defended best by organizing key points and covering by fire the intervals between and approaches to these key points. A commander evaluates his terrain (par. 269). Based on this evaluation, he selects and organizes the key terrain features which give the best defensive strength to his position.

b. Organization in depth. Any defensive position can be penetrated if the attacker is willing to pay the price. Therefore, the defender cannot defend on a thin line. Depth is essential. A commander organizes and places his troops and weapons in

depth so that, if the enemy is successful in penetrating the main line of resistance, a unit to the rear can limit the penetration and thereby prevent a major penetration.

c. Mutual support. Units of a defensive position, across the front and from front to rear, are mutually supporting. Each unit on the main line of resistance is placed so that it can support by fire the adjacent unit on either flank. Units placed in depth support the units to their front so that if the enemy succeeds in penetrating the forward defense, he immediately comes under the fire of the next rearward unit and is prevented from reorganizing.

d. All-around defense. A unit organizes its position to meet an enemy attack from any direction. The extent of all-around defense depends on the type of operation, the units involved, and the terrain. An independent unit operating in close terrain has greater need for all-around defense than a unit which is part of a larger force and operating in open terrain. A unit may defend in all directions from its primary positions, or it may prepare supplementary positions and shift troops to meet threats from the flanks or rear.

e. Coordinated fire plan. Each unit plans and coordinates the fires of its weapons to obtain the maximum effectiveness of the weapons, the complete coverage of the battle position and its approaches, and continuous fire on the attacker. Unit plans provide for the opening of fires, for signals for final protective fires, for rates of fire, for mutual support of adjacent units, and for fires to be

delivered under conditions of reduced visibility. Fire plans of smaller units are supervised and coordinated by the larger units.

f. Coordinated antitank defense plan. Plans for the use of antitank weapons, minefields, and obstacles are coordinated to protect the battle position from a tank attack or a combined tank-infantry attack. This is done to disorganize and delay hostile tanks in front of the main line of resistance and to destroy or eject the tanks if a penetration is made. Unit plans provide for the use of all antitank means under the commander's direct control.

g. Flexibility. Flexibility in the defense is gained by preparing supplementary positions, by holding troops in support or reserve, and by massing supporting fires in any area. The rifle platoon gains flexibility by preparing supplementary positions to which troops can be moved. It is normal for the rifle company and larger units to use about one-third of their force in rear of the main line of resistance prepared to meet an attack from any direction. This adds flexibility to the defense since these forces can be used to limit penetration, to protect the flanks and rear, or to eject the enemy by a counterattack. Flexibility is gained from supporting weapons by using them under centralized control, as this control aids the massing of supporting fires on a given target area.

269. TERRAIN FACTORS. In making his terrain study, the commander considers how he best can use and best deny to the enemy the following factors:

a. **Critical terrain features.** A terrain feature is considered critical if it is a key point or area on which an operation depends, for either the attacker or the defender. Examples are a dominant hill or ridge, shoulders of a valley, a road or trail, a built-up area, or a communication center.

b. **Observation and fields of fire.**

(1) *Observation* provides information of the enemy and of friendly troops. Detailed observation forward of the battle position is used to direct fire on the enemy and to determine his plans. Long-range and close-in observation is maintained by all units. Close-in observation is gained by organizing positions on the military crest (fig. 53); this also protects long-range observation located near the topographical crest. Coordination of observation by each unit obtains overlapping and detailed coverage of the area. Enemy observation into the battle position is denied by the use of security forces and fires of friendly weapons.

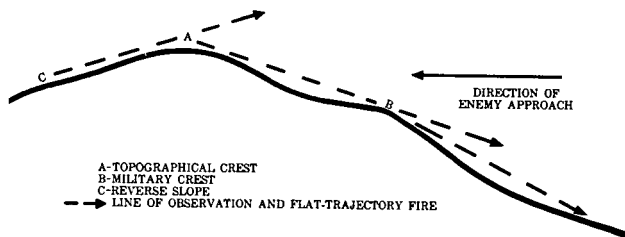


Figure 53. Explanation of terrain terms.

(2) The effectiveness of direct-fire weapons depends on their *fields of fire*. When fields of fire are not good, they are improved by cutting or burning weeds, grass, and crops, clearing brush and trees, demolishing buildings, and cutting lanes through woods. The clearing should not warn the enemy of the battle position location or destroy its concealment. The organizing of terrain which gives good fields of fire, such as open, flat terrain, requires fewer men and weapons than close terrain with poor fields of fire.

c. Obstacles. In organizing a defensive position, natural obstacles which will hinder the advance of the enemy are evaluated and used. By proper evaluation of natural obstacles, more effective use of artificial obstacles can be made. Because obstacles not covered by fire are of little value, the position is organized so that they can be covered by observed fire.

d. Concealment and cover. Concealment and cover are used to prevent enemy air and ground observation of troops and installations. Irregular wooded terrain furnishes ideal protection from enemy air and ground observation but limits friendly fields of fire and observation. If the terrain is flat and open with limited cover and concealment, time must be allowed for troops to dig in and camouflage their positions.

e. Avenues of approach.

(1) Avenues of approach within the battle position to be used for supply, evacua-

tion, movement of troops into forward positions, and counterattack must be evaluated as to their condition, cover, and concealment from enemy observation.

- (2) Avenues of approach available to the enemy are considered in terms of roads, terrain corridors, cross compartments, and areas where the ground favors cross country movement into the defender's position from the front or flanks.
- (3) After evaluating the terrain, the commander plans the organization of his position.

Section II. FRONT-LINE RIFLE COMPANY

270. MISSION. The mission of the front-line rifle company in the defense is, with the support of other weapons, to stop the enemy by fire in front of the main line of resistance, to repel his assault by close combat if he reaches it, and exceptionally to eject him by a counterattack.

271. DISPOSITIONS. A rifle company assigned to the defense of an area on the main line of resistance organizes its area according to the principles of defense. It covers its front with fire, coordinates its fires with and mutually supports the units on its flanks, gives close rifle protection for the supporting weapons placed within its area, and provides for all-around defense. The ability to place accurate fire on the enemy forward of the battle position requires good observation. To ob-

tain this observation, a forward slope frequently is occupied. A reverse slope position, however, may be preferable if observation can be obtained from the flanks or rear, and if the terrain on the reverse slope permits the placing of a heavy volume of accurate fire on the crest and approaches around the flanks. The terrain may make it desirable to occupy a combination of forward and reverse slopes.

272. TROOP LEADING PROCEDURE. Following the receipt of the battalion defense order, the company commander's actions follow a general sequence called troop leading procedure. The purpose of this procedure is to help the company commander remember all the essential actions, to help him make maximum use of the time available, and to help him coordinate the actions of his unit leaders. In the allocation of the time available, the company commander allows enough time for his lower unit leaders to perform their duties and the men of the company to organize the area. Plans are made and orders given so that there is a minimum of delay in beginning the organization of the ground. The company commander's troop leading procedure is as follows:

a. Makes tentative plan of defense. This gives him a basis for later action and allows him to orient, early, the leaders of the company and the supporting units so that they can begin certain tasks before the company order is given. This tentative plan includes the general dispositions and missions

of troops and weapons within the company defense area.

b. Plans movement of troops and issuance of his order.

- (1) His early planning and early issuance of orders for the movement of troops assist control and secure the timely arrival of the troops at the defensive position. This movement normally is controlled by his company executive officer. He plans where, when, and to whom his order is to be issued.
- (2) He selects an observation point from which all, or at least the most critical portion, of the company defense area can be observed. He designates this point as the place where he later will issue the company order.
- (3) He designates the time when the order will be issued. In selecting this time, he considers the total time available, the time needed for adequate reconnaissance by unit leaders, and the time needed for the actual preparation of the position. He allots enough time for preparing positions—even if this may prevent a detailed reconnaissance on his part.
- (4) He designates the persons who will receive the company defense order. These include the platoon leaders, and they may include others, such as the artillery and mortar forward observers, the communication sergeant, and leaders of crew-

served weapons located within the company area.

c. Plans his reconnaissance. Before starting his terrain reconnaissance, the company commander makes a brief map reconnaissance, determines the localities to be visited, and selects the route. His reconnaissance is as detailed as time permits. He gives major attention to the most critical localities. He announces his route so that he can be located quickly.

d. Arranges coordination with other commanders. Adjacent and supporting unit commanders normally are present at the time the company commander receives the battalion defense order, and arrangements for maintaining coordination are made with these commanders at this time.

e. Makes his reconnaissance.

- (1) The company commander leaves the area where he received the battalion order and goes on his personal ground reconnaissance. Frequently he is accompanied by the weapons platoon leader and such other persons as he desires. He first positively identifies his area.
- (2) He studies the immediate foreground of the position to determine—
 - (a) Areas which give the enemy covered or concealed approaches to the position.
 - (b) Natural obstacles and exposed terrain over which the enemy must pass.
 - (c) Commanding features of the terrain which may be occupied as hostile observation posts, and areas within the de-

fensive position which are exposed to hostile observation.

(3) He studies in detail the ground within the defense area to determine—

(a) Coordination with adjacent units and with supporting weapons to be placed within the company area.

(b) Locations for defense areas of company elements, usually platoons.

(c) Locations for the 57-mm rifles and 60-mm mortars.

(d) Routes of communication and supply.

(e) Location of the company observation post.

(f) Location of the company command post.

(4) Because of limited time, the company commander sometimes may issue his order without making a detailed ground reconnaissance. In such cases, his order may be issued from the best observation point available, or it may be issued based only on a map study. Adjustments to improve the coordination and tactical organization are made as soon as the situation permits.

f. Completes plan and issues order. After completing his reconnaissance, he goes to the point, previously designated, for the issuance of his order. He makes such changes in his tentative plan as are required by his ground reconnaissance and by recommendations of his leaders. He then issues the

company defense order, and informs the battalion commander of the company's plan of defense.

g. Supervises work. After the order is issued, the company commander supervises the detailed organization of the company defense area.

273. RIFLE COMPANY DEFENSE ORDER. The company commander bases his defense order on the battalion order, recommendations from his unit leaders, and his own analysis of the situation. (For the form of a company defense order, see app. I.) The order is issued orally and includes the following:

a. Information of the enemy, including the direction and the time an enemy attack may be expected. Information of friendly supporting and adjacent units.

b. Company mission.

c. Missions and areas of each rifle platoon.

d. Locations and missions of the 57-mm rifles, 60-mm mortars, and any additional weapons attached to the company.

e. Fire control to include the details of calling for final protective fires.

f. Security.

g. Priority of construction.

h. Location of mine fields and other obstacles.

i. Engineer tools, ammunition supply, and other administrative details.

j. Location of the battalion aid station.

k. Alterations or additions to the standing operating procedure; for example, antiaircraft security, type of emplacements, and sanitation.

- l. Command and observation posts.
- m. Communication instructions.

274. FRONTAGE. The battalion commander assigns frontages to his front-line companies according to the natural defensive strength and relative importance of their defense areas. A rifle company occupying a defense area on the main line of resistance normally is assigned a frontage of 600 to 1,200 yards. (See fig. 54.) Where a company occupies a key area having poor observation and poor fields of fire, as in heavily wooded or broken terrain, its frontage is near the minimum figure. Where the terrain is more open and allows longer fields of fire and better observation, the frontage approaches the maximum figure. In exceptional conditions, as in open and flat terrain or where there are natural obstacles across the front which greatly strengthen the defense, the company may be assigned a frontage greater than 1,200 yards.

275. DEPTH. The depth of the company area from the main line of resistance to the rear normally does not exceed 700 yards. The area of responsibility forward of the main line of resistance includes local security and seldom exceeds 500 yards.

276. BOUNDARIES. The battalion commander designates the area of responsibility of each front-line rifle company by the use of boundaries. The length of the boundaries indicates the forward and rear limits of responsibility, or depth. All defensive elements and installations of the company nor-

mally are included within this defensive area. Certain administrative installations, such as the ammunition supply point, may be located outside the assigned defense area if the battalion commander approves.

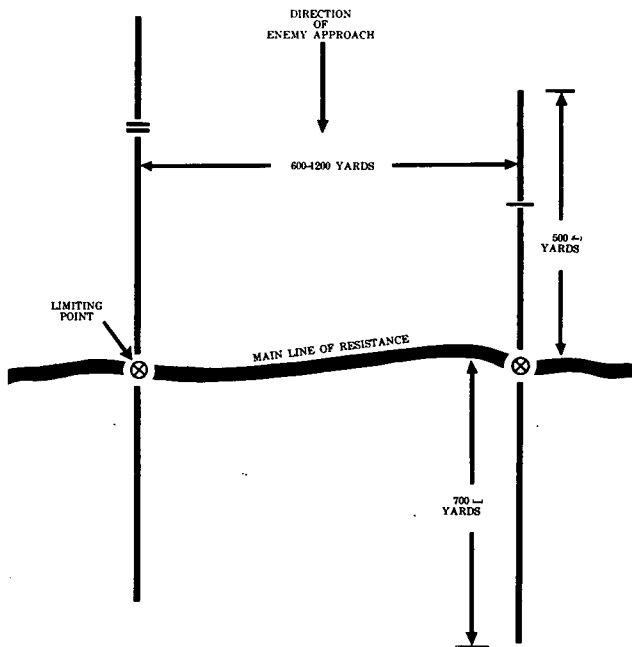


Figure 54. The battalion commander prescribes the boundaries of the front-line rifle company defense area.

277. LIMITING POINTS. Points along a line of resistance, where the responsibility of one unit stops

and that of another begins, are called limiting points. These points, which are designated by the higher commander, serve two primary purposes for the front-line rifle company. They indicate the general trace of the main line of resistance and designate a place on the ground where adjacent commanders coordinate their defense plans so that adjacent defense areas are mutually supporting. The limiting point need not be occupied physically by either unit.

278. DISTRIBUTION OF PLATOONS—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS.

a. Platoons are used within the company defense area to achieve the maximum effective application of the principles of defense. Normally, this is done by using two rifle platoons abreast on the main line of resistance and one rifle platoon in support. These platoons are placed to get the maximum coverage of the most dangerous avenues of approach and to cover other parts of the company defense area by fire and observation. (See fig. 55.) Elements of the weapons platoon are located within the company defense area where they best can accomplish their fire missions and obtain close protection by rifle elements. Usually, they are located within the platoon defense areas.

b. During periods of reduced visibility, especially at night, there is greater possibility of the enemy attacking through open areas. This may require adjustments within platoon defense areas. (See fig. 56.) These adjustments may include the minor shifting of weapons within defense areas, the changing of the support platoon location, the

employing of security detachments to cover intervals between defense areas, and the strengthening of local security elements.

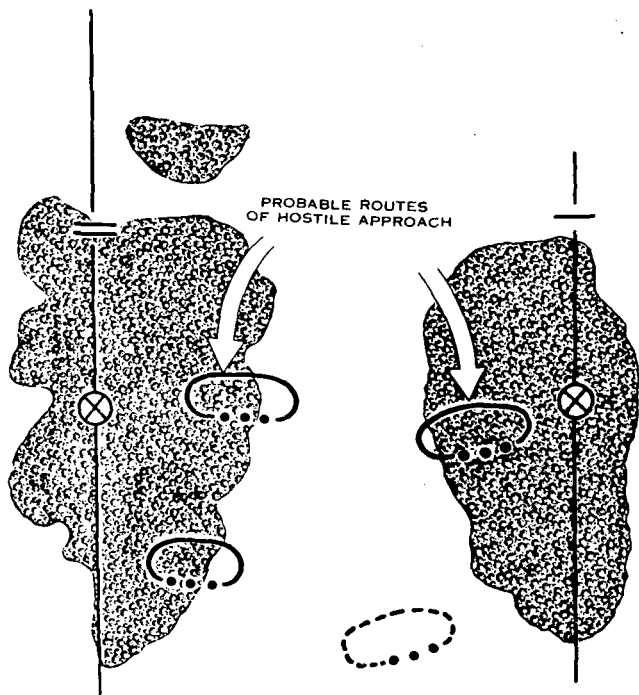


Figure 55. Rifle company in a daylight defense.

279. LOCATION OF FRONT-LINE PLATOON. The width of a defense area assigned to a front-line platoon depends on such factors as fields of fire, obstacles, and supporting fire. A rifle platoon oc-

cupying a defensive area normally is assigned a frontage of 300 to 600 yards. Because of its ability to cover an area by fire, a platoon seldom occupies

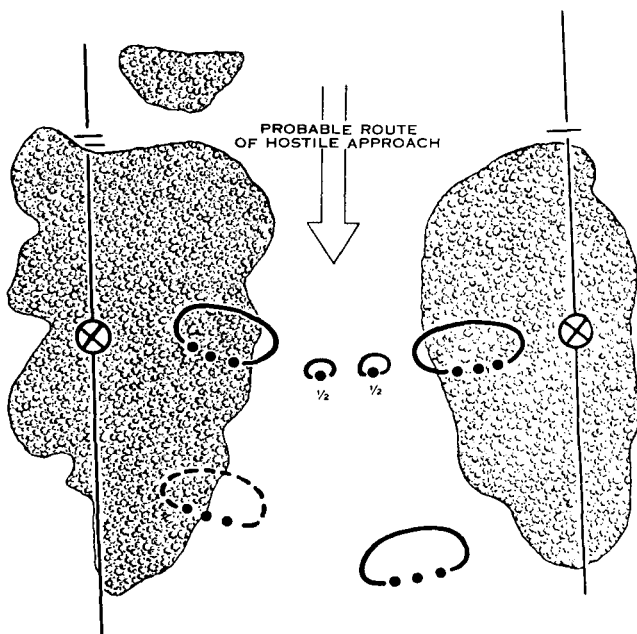


Figure 56. Rifle company in a night defense.

all of its assigned frontage. When supporting weapons are placed within the platoon area, the occupied frontage may be increased normally about 25 yards for each crew-served weapon. The gap between platoons varies with the terrain and the available fire. Factors to be considered include observation, fields of fire, ability of the support

platoon to fire in gaps, and mutual support from adjacent front-line platoons. The company commander avoids dividing the responsibility for defending an avenue of enemy approach. When possible, he assigns to one platoon both the approach and the terrain which blocks that approach.

280. DISPOSITION OF SUPPORT PLATOON. a. The *primary mission* of the support platoon is to support the front-line platoons by fire. The terrain seldom permits the support platoon to fire in front of the front-line rifle platoons. Therefore, this fire support consists of firing in the gaps between front-line platoons, within forward areas in case they are overrun, and to the flanks and rear of the company defense area. This platoon also is assigned the mission of extending in depth the defense of the company area and protecting the flanks and rear of the company area. Exceptionally, it is assigned the mission of ejecting the enemy from the battle position.

b. The *location* of the support platoon is on the best defensive terrain in rear of the front-line platoons and inside the company defense area, where it can get the best observation and fields of fire to accomplish its missions. The position is organized within rifle supporting distance (500 yards) of the forward platoons, and is at least 150 yards to their rear to avoid enemy fire directed at the forward platoons.

c. The support platoon is used to organize a single position to accomplish its mission if the terrain permits. (See fig. 57.)

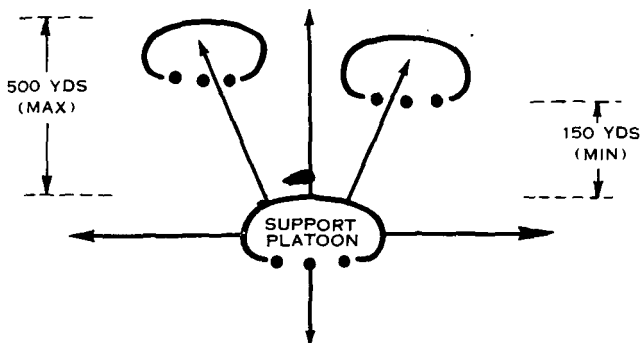


Figure 57. Support platoon occupying a single prepared position—arrows indicate direction of fire (schematic).

d. If the terrain is such that the support platoon cannot accomplish its mission from a single position and concealed routes for movement within the area are available, more than one position may be organized. (See fig. 58.) The platoon then occupies the prepared position covering the most dangerous threat and prepares to move to other positions on order.

e. When the terrain is such that it is necessary to organize more than one position but concealed routes between these positions do not exist, it may not be possible to move the support platoon after the fire fight begins. In this case, it may be necessary to split the support platoon and have it occupy more than one position. (See fig. 59.) The integrity of rifle squads is maintained.

f. The support platoon may be directed by the company commander to execute a local counter-

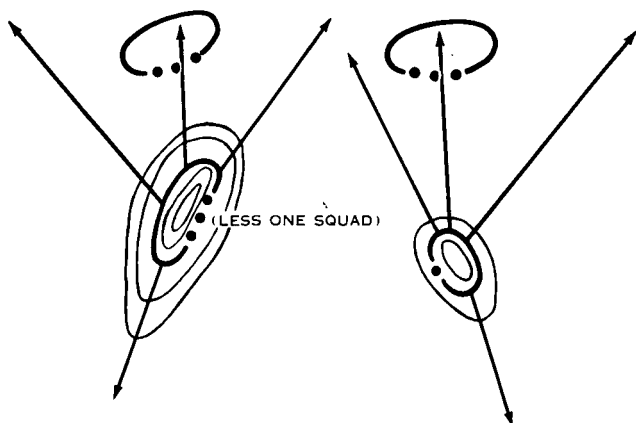
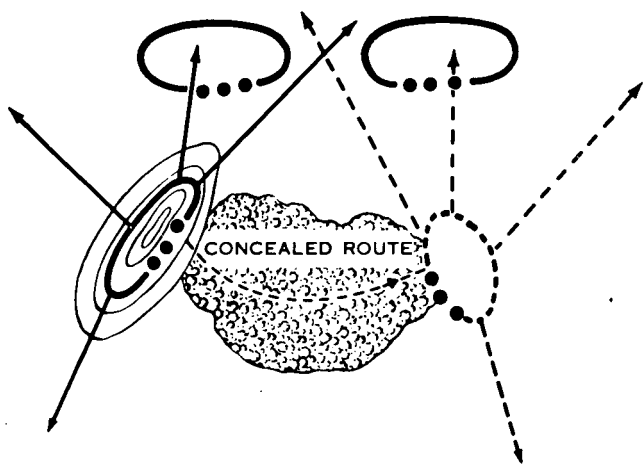


Figure 59. Support platoon occupying more than one prepared position (schematic).

attack. However, because of its size and the fact that it usually is in the same fire fight as the front-line platoons, the support platoon rarely is given this mission. Such a counterattack, if ordered, is in the nature of a quick assault and mopping-up action to destroy a small enemy group which has made a minor penetration.

281. DISTRIBUTION OF WEAPONS PLATOON. See paragraphs 164 and 165.

282. FIRE PLAN. a. The battalion order includes the plans for the use of those weapons under battalion control. The rifle company commander uses the weapons which are under his direct control to provide the maximum defense of the company area in coordination with the battalion fire plan. The fires of weapons under the direct control of the rifle company commander supplement and reinforce the fires of battalion weapons. The company fire plan includes the coordination of the platoon fires and the fires of the weapons under the direct control of the company.

b. The company commander obtains the location of the prepared barrages of the supporting artillery and mortars, and the sectors and final protective lines of the machine guns of the heavy weapons company. He then assigns missions to the 57-mm rifles and the 60-mm mortars to cover gaps and reinforce these fires.

c. Rifle platoons are located to permit mutual exchange of fire, defense in depth, and all-around protection. Platoon fire plans are checked to de-

termine that light machine guns are used to fill gaps in the final protective fires, that the foreground of each platoon area is covered by small-arms fire, and that overlapping sectors of fire are provided. Fire control measures are disseminated to company elements, and observation is coordinated for complete and efficient coverage. As time and facilities permit, lower unit leaders are issued a map or overlay showing the prearranged concentrations by position and number of the supporting artillery and mortars.

283. OBSERVATION. a. The company commander coordinates the observation posts established by the company to fit them into the battalion observation plan and avoid the duplication of effort. The location of several observation posts in the immediate vicinity of each other is avoided. When terrain features which offer good observation are limited, observers are spread across the front so that overlapping observation is obtained over the defense area and the approaches to it. Communication facilities are coordinated and used to the maximum, so that any observer can call for and control the fires of any supporting weapon.

b. The company observation post should give a view of as much of the company defense area and its approaches as possible. If observation is limited, an observation post is selected which provides observation of the most dangerous approaches. Observation to the flanks also is important. Although the observation post is the battle station of the company commander, he goes where his

presence is demanded. The command post is kept informed of his location.

284. COMMAND POST. The company command post is located in the rear portion of the company defense area. For local protection, it normally is within or near the support platoon area. It preferably is in defilade and concealed from air observation. Covered and concealed routes to the front and to the rear are desirable to aid communication with the platoons and with the battalion command post.

285. ORGANIZATION OF GROUND. a. The organization of the company defense area is limited only by the time and facilities available. The battalion order normally gives the sequence in which the tasks are executed. These may include—

- (1) Preparing emplacements for weapons and individual shelter.
- (2) Clearing fields of fire.
- (3) Laying antitank mines, trip flares, and antipersonnel mines.
- (4) Constructing wire entanglements and other obstacles.
- (5) Preparing routes for supply, communication, and evacuation.

b. In the absence of special instructions, the men first dig standing-type fox holes or weapons emplacements. While these emplacements are being constructed, crew-served weapons are mounted in nearby temporary firing positions. Maximum use is made of natural and artificial concealment and

cover against both ground and air observation and fire. Protective wire is placed around each small-unit defense area and tactical wire is installed forward of the company position. Normally, some of these tasks, such as laying mine fields and constructing obstacles, are accomplished by or under the supervision of specially trained elements from other units.

c. Organization of exposed areas subjected to enemy fire or air bombardment may have to be accomplished piecemeal during daylight with men well dispersed. If this is impracticable, the organization of these exposed positions is postponed until darkness.

286. ANTITANK DEFENSE. The preparation of a coordinated antitank defense plan primarily is the responsibility of battalion and larger unit commanders. This plan provides for an adequate warning system and for placing antitank weapons within and mine fields and obstacles forward of the front-line rifle company areas. The company commander familiarizes himself with this plan and uses his antitank weapons to give the maximum close protection to his company area. He places his antitank weapons where they can cover avenues of enemy tank approach by flanking fire, mine fields, and obstacles which are not covered by the weapons of other units, or he uses them to reinforce the defense of his more vulnerable areas. Mine fields and obstacles are covered by fire to prevent the enemy from removing them before or during a tank attack. They also are covered by

weapons capable of destroying immobilized tanks. Mine fields are marked and a record of their locations is made and given to the next higher commander. Guards are placed over antitank mine fields to prevent casualties to friendly troops and vehicles. Guards in front of the main line of resistance are withdrawn when security elements forward of the main line of resistance have withdrawn.

287. HASTY DEFENSE. a. When speed in the occupation of a position is necessary, the first considerations are to get the troops on the position, to provide for local security, and to start the organization of the ground. The company elements and any attached weapons are located for all-around defense of the company area. As time permits, a more detailed coordination is made which may require a readjustment of positions and fires.

b. A front-line rifle company frequently is forced to organize its position while in close contact with a strong enemy. Such a defense may be characterized by all or part of the following: limited movement of men, troops subjected to observed enemy fire, defense of the position against hostile attack during any or all stages of the organization, limited attacks to seize key terrain necessary to the organization of the position, and limited withdrawals after the approval by the battalion commander to strengthen the position. When organizing a position under these conditions, the principles of defense still apply. The extent to which these principles apply varies with each situation. Troop lead-

ing procedure is applied to the extent that the situation permits. The company commander relies heavily on the initiative of his leaders, since immediate decisions by each platoon leader are necessary before the company commander can make his detailed coordination. To cover the organization of the position, maximum use is made of available supporting fires.

288. NIGHT DISPOSITIONS. a. It usually is necessary to make adjustments at night to meet conditions of reduced visibility. For the rifle company, these adjustments include—

- (1) Laying light machine guns on final protective lines and 60-mm mortars on barges.
- (2) Readjusting troops and weapons to block areas, usually open and exposed, which favor a night attack and which are covered solely by fire during periods of good visibility.
- (3) Establishing night dispositions of local security.
- (4) Placing antipersonnel and antitank mines across likely avenues of approach. These mines should be removed at daylight.
- (5) Preparing to illuminate the foreground by flares.

b. Any company adjustments in fires or troop location to meet conditions of reduced visibility are coordinated with the battalion commander. All men in the company are briefed on the battalion

night locations and on fire plans. Infrared equipment may be used to increase the visibility.

289. CONDUCT OF DEFENSE. a. As the enemy approaches the battle position, he is fired on. These fires are delivered by outposts established well forward of the battle position and by long-range weapons located in rear of the front-line companies. They are controlled by air observers, by patrols, and by ground observers located on the outpost positions.

b. When the enemy comes within effective small-arms range of the main line of resistance (500 yards), individuals and crew-served weapons located in front-line platoon areas open fire. As the enemy advance continues, these fires are increased in rate, and additional weapons open fire as targets appear within their sectors. The 60-mm mortars and long-range weapons execute fire missions on appropriate targets within their effective ranges. Tanks located to fire in front of the main line of resistance open fire at enemy tanks at long range, unless directed to withhold their fire until the enemy is closer. Observers in each forward defense area keep the foreground under continuous observation to permit the adjustment of fire of long-range weapons. As the enemy draws closer to the battle position and delivers heavy fires in preparation for his assault, the men occupying front-line defense areas take cover in their fox holes or emplacements.

c. When the massed fires of the enemy are lifted, all weapons located within the forward platoon

defense areas open fire to inflict maximum casualties and to stop the hostile attack before it reaches their positions. Requests for supporting fires are made directly to the nearest artillery, heavy mortar company, or heavy weapons company forward observer. Fire requests also are made by the company commander to the battalion commander.

d. If the enemy's attacking elements approach the area covered by planned final protective fires, machine guns shift their fires to final protective lines, mortars and artillery fire their barrages, and other weapons increase their rates of fire against the most threatening targets. Authority to call for final protective fires is a part of the battalion coordinated fire plan. This authority normally is delegated down to and including front-line platoon leaders so that fires are delivered when needed. When fires are called for, they are delivered without delay. Higher unit commanders immediately verify the need for these fires and call for reinforcing fires, if necessary. If the enemy assaults, he is met by fire, grenades, and close combat. Men in the threatened area do not withdraw except on the verified order of their commander.

e. When the attacking force includes tanks as well as infantry elements, the primary targets for rifle company weapons, except antitank weapons, are the hostile foot troops or other exposed enemy. Fires are directed to separate the enemy foot elements from the tanks. In exceptional cases, when hostile infantry or other exposed enemy do not offer a target, small-arms fire is directed against the open hatches of enemy tanks. Defend-

ers using small arms against the accompanying infantry or using antitank rifle grenade, rocket, and 57-mm rifle fire against hostile tanks continue to fire until forced to take cover in order to protect themselves and their weapons from the crushing action of the tanks. They return to their firing positions as soon as the tanks pass and fire on the rear of the tanks. Defenders also fire on approaching foot troops or exposed enemy riding on or closely following other attacking tanks.

f. If the enemy succeeds in overrunning the defense areas, the advance is resisted by fires from adjacent and support platoon defense areas and from supporting weapons. If a minor penetration is made by a small enemy group and the main line of resistance is not jeopardized, the company commander may order the support platoon to eliminate the hostile group. Such an action is a quick assault and mop-up. A new support is reconstituted at the earliest opportunity.

g. In case the company is surrounded, the company commander redistributes his troops and weapons in his area as necessary for a continued all-around defense.

h. The conduct of a night defense resembles that of a day defense except that it is characterized by more close-in fighting. It can be expected that some of the enemy will infiltrate the position. At the same time, light machine guns, 60-mm mortars, and other supporting weapons break up elements of the enemy which still are outside the position. Although machine guns are laid in readiness on final protective lines and the mortars on

their barrage areas, crews of these weapons (when not ordered to fire final protective fires) should shift to more remunerative or more threatening targets when visibility permits. Flares are used forward of the position to assist in locating these targets.

290. RELIEF. a. If the defense is prolonged or if units on the battle position have suffered heavy casualties, periodic relief of units in the line is made. The front-line rifle company may be relieved by the battalion reserve company, by a rifle company from a battalion other than its own, or by a unit of different strength and organization. To maintain secrecy and maximum security, the relief of a front-line unit is executed at night.

b. Relief plans are detailed and executed with a minimum of time and confusion. Incoming leaders must know the organization of the position and the plan of defense. This normally is done by the incoming unit's sending leaders to inspect the position during daylight and by key personnel from the incoming unit remaining on the position to learn of any changes which occur after the initial reconnaissance. Unit leaders of the company being relieved are informed of the time, order of relief, and the routes and check points by which they will leave the position.

c. As it is relieved, each unit, to and including squads and weapons crews, withdraws straight to the rear. There the platoons normally are assembled and led by guides over previously reconnoitered routes to the company assembly area.

During this movement, weapons and troops from other units normally are attached to the platoon in whose area they had been placed.

d. Commanders arrange for the mutual exchange of weapons which cannot be moved easily or replaced during darkness. Communication lines and extra supplies and equipment not essential to the unit being relieved are left on the position.

e. Periodic reports are made to the next higher commander. The incoming unit commander assumes responsibility for defense of the area when the major portion of his command is in position and communication and control is established, or when he is ordered to do so by the over-all commander.

291. REVERSE SLOPE DEFENSE—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS. The occupation of a reverse slope position may be dictated if control of the forward slope is lost or not gained, or if the forward slope cannot be held because of its extreme vulnerability to enemy fire. The advantage of a reverse slope defense is that the forward elements of the battle position are protected from enemy ground observation and direct-fire weapons. This advantage permits greater freedom of movement, more detailed improvement of the position, ease of supply, and rest for the troops. (See fig. 60.)

292. REVERSE SLOPE ORGANIZATION. The reverse slope position generally is organized according to the principles explained in paragraphs 270 to 288, inclusive. Modifications of these principles and additional considerations include the following:

a. Observation posts are prepared on or just forward of the topographical crest and are occupied

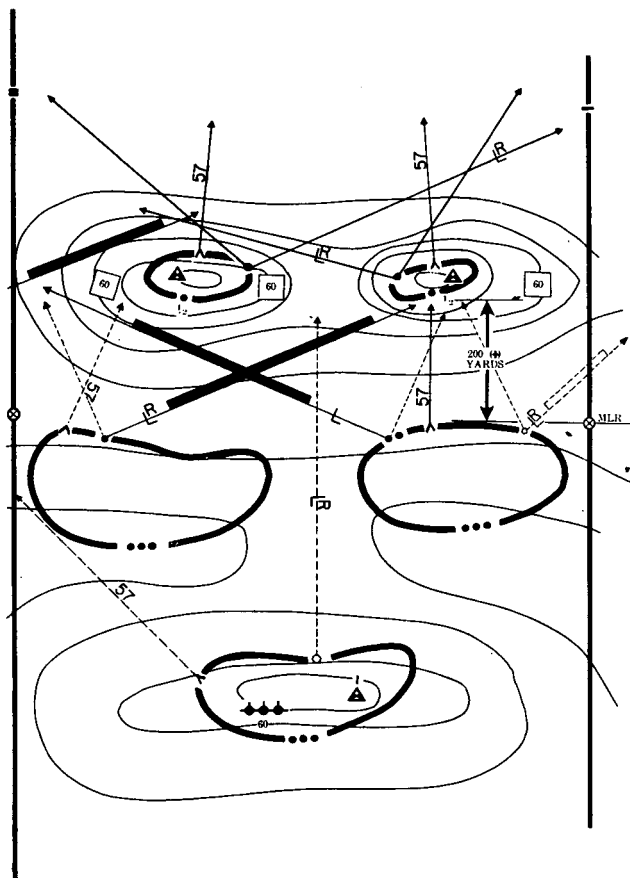


Figure 60. Rifle company in a reverse slope defense (schematic).

by unit commanders and forward observers. Small groups of riflemen and weapon crews provide protection for these observers. Normally, these groups are furnished by the support platoon. At night they are strengthened to prevent hostile infiltration and surprise.

b. When possible, the forward slope and flanks are covered by direct flanking fires of weapons defiladed from the front.

c. A carefully laid field of antitank mines, trip flares, and antipersonnel mines may be used on the forward and reverse slope to slow the enemy attack and thus allow the defender more time to meet the assault.

d. Troops and weapons on the reverse slope are located to permit the maximum fire on the crest, in the approaches around the crest, and on the forward slopes of adjacent terrain features.

e. If within effective range, the military crest of the next high ground in rear is a desirable location for the support platoon.

f. Final protective fires are planned to destroy the enemy as he attempts to cross the crest. The main line of resistance usually is located at least 200 yards from the crest of the hill to provide adequate fields of fire and to permit the delivery of final protective fires without endangering friendly troops.

293. CONDUCT OF REVERSE SLOPE DEFENSE. The conduct of a reverse slope defense generally is according to the principles described in paragraph 289. The security detachments on the forward

slope give warning of an enemy approach, and they delay and disorganize him by long-range fires. During periods of poor visibility, greater use is made of warning and illuminating devices to give a better coverage of the front; for example, flares, searchlights, and antipersonnel mines. If the enemy drives in the security detachments and continues his advance, planned concentrations are delivered on the forward slope by the defending high-angle weapons to disrupt the enemy's attempts to mass for an assault. Direct-fire weapons within the battle position withhold their fires until suitable targets appear. If the enemy crosses the crest in mass, final protective fires are delivered. If a limited penetration of the main line of resistance is made and a counterattack is ordered, the normal principles of counterattack are applicable. Since it is necessary to deny observation to the enemy from the high ground overlooking the battle position, the counterattacking force seeks to reestablish the security detachments on the forward slope.

Section III. RESERVE RIFLE COMPANY

294. GENERAL. The front-line battalion in defense normally places two rifle companies on the main line of resistance and one in reserve. (See fig. 61.) The battalion order gives the missions for the reserve company and the priority of execution of assigned tasks. Upon receiving this order, the reserve company commander takes such troop leading steps, as described in paragraph 272, as are applicable. The battalion commander directs the

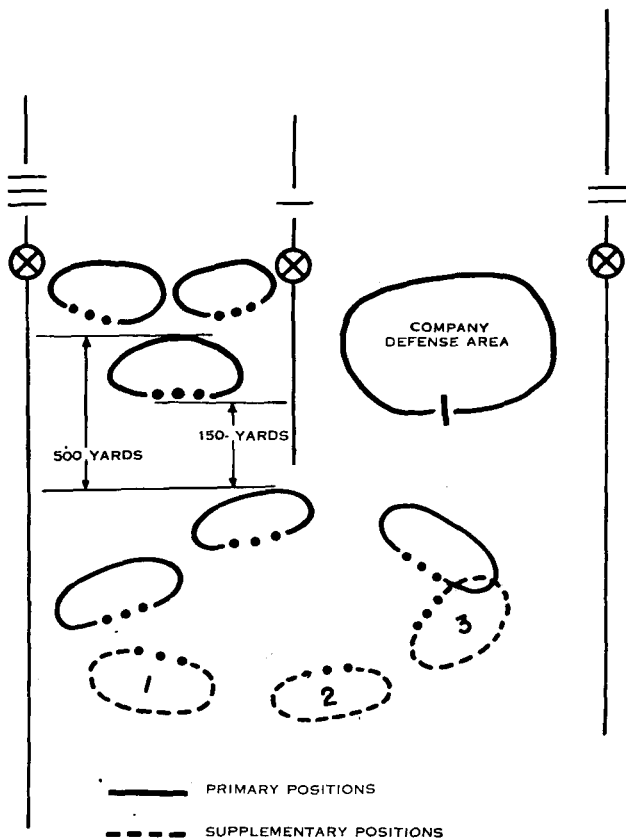


Figure 61. The battalion reserve company prepares primary positions on key terrain, normally with three platoons across the battalion area in rear of the front-line companies.

use of the reserve company during the conduct of the defense.

295. MISSIONS. Missions which may be assigned to the reserve rifle company are—

- a. Increasing the depth of the battalion defense area.
- b. Protecting the battalion's flanks and rear.
- c. Acting as the counterattacking force.
- d. Establishing a combat outpost.
- e. Assisting in the organization of forward areas.

296. INCREASING DEPTH OF BATTALION DEFENSE AREA. The reserve company prepares primary positions on key terrain, normally with three platoon areas on line across the battalion area in rear of the front-line companies. These positions are organized within rifle supporting distance (500 yards) of the support platoons of the forward companies, and at least 150 yards from those platoons, so that they will be outside the zone of dispersion of enemy fire directed at the front-line companies. The platoon positions are organized similar to front-line platoons. Their fires and positions are coordinated closely with those of supporting weapons located in the rear of the battalion area.

297. PROTECTING BATTALION'S FLANKS AND REAR. Besides adding depth to the defense, the reserve company protects the flank and rear of the battalion. Since this protection seldom can be fur-

nished from primary positions alone, it usually is necessary for the reserve company to prepare supplementary platoon positions. If the battalion is threatened from any direction other than the front, the battalion commander may direct the reserve company to occupy a combination of platoon positions which best protects the threatened area. When the battalion has an unprotected flank, the reserve company initially may be disposed to protect it.

298. COUNTERATTACKING. The counterattack is a decisive element of defensive combat. The basic element of the battalion counterattacking force is the reserve company. To give maximum strength to the counterattack, the battalion commander attaches to or places in support of the reserve company all available troops and weapons. These attachments and supporting missions become effective upon the battalion commander's decision to counterattack. The battalion order gives the areas of likely penetrations against which counterattack plans are prepared. The reserve company commander prepares counterattack plans concurrently with the organization of the defensive position. He submits these plans to the battalion commander for approval. The reserve company normally occupies its prepared positions before the enemy starts its attack. Free movement of the reserve company during the enemy attack is rare, as such movement may result in an undue number of casualties. For this reason, the counterattacking company normally goes directly from its occupied po-

sition to the line of departure by previously reconnoitered routes.

299. ESTABLISHING COMBAT OUTPOST. All or part of the reserve company may be detailed initially to establish a combat outpost. For a discussion of combat outposts, see paragraph 320.

300. ASSISTING IN ORGANIZING FORWARD AREAS. Working parties from the reserve company may be detailed to the forward areas to assist in clearing fields of fire, erecting obstacles, laying antitank mines, trip flares, and antipersonnel mines, constructing emplacements and entrenchments, executing camouflage, and performing similar tasks.

301. WEAPONS PLATOON. a. When the reserve company occupies prepared positions, the same principles apply for the use of the 57-mm rifle section as for a front-line company. The section's plans to support a counterattack may include close supporting fire from one or more positions, accompanying the counterattacking forces, or a combination of both.

b. Missions that may be assigned to the 60-mm mortar section include—

- (1) *Attachment to the combat outpost.* If the reserve company furnishes the combat outpost, all or part of the 60-mm mortars may be attached to it.
- (2) *Support of the main line of resistance.* The 60-mm mortars may be emplaced near the 81-mm mortars and used to rein-

force their fires in support of the main line of resistance. The use and location of the 60-mm mortars to support the main line of resistance are coordinated so that their use with the reserve company is not jeopardized.

- (3) *Limit penetrations.* When the reserve company is occupying its prepared positions, the fires of the 60-mm mortars are used to limit penetrations by firing into the penetrated area or on the edge of the penetration to block it off.
- (4) *Support counterattacks.* If the reserve company is assigned a counterattack mission, the 60-mm mortars may accompany the counterattacking force or furnish supporting fires from their prepared positions.

302. ORGANIZATION OF GROUND. Normally, the reserve company first prepares its primary positions. It then prepares its supplementary positions according to the priority prescribed by the battalion commander, and it improves routes to its lines of departure for counterattack, when necessary. The organization of each position includes clearing fields of fire and constructing and concealing individual shelters, weapon emplacements, and obstacles.

303. COMPANY ASSEMBLY AREA. The battalion commander's order specifies whether the reserve company is to occupy prepared positions, whether

it is to be held in an assembly area ready to occupy designated prepared positions, or to counterattack on order. Rarely will the reserve company be ordered to occupy an assembly area in lieu of the occupation of its prepared positions. If it occupies an assembly area, the company is held in dispersed platoon groups. Shelters are prepared for the men against air bombardment and long-range fires.

304. OBSERVATION POST. The initial observation post of the reserve company should be located in coordination with the rear battalion observation post to permit the maximum observation of the battalion rear area. The company commander needs to have early information of the situation within the battalion area and to be in close touch with the battalion commander. Subsequently, the observation post is located to give the best observation of the area in which the company is used.

305. COMMAND POST. The reserve company command post is located in rear of its primary positions. If the company initially occupies an assembly area, the command post is located within that assembly area. The location selected should possess the characteristics explained in paragraph 284. In addition, it preferably is located near the battalion command post.

306. ANTITANK DEFENSE. When the reserve company occupies a prepared position, the principles of antitank defense for a front-line company ap-

ply. If the company occupies an assembly area, the rifle grenadiers, rocket-launcher teams, and 57-mm rifle squads are located to cover likely tank approaches.

307. CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE. a. As the enemy approaches the battle position, elements (if any) of the reserve company on the combat outpost seek to delay and disorganize the enemy and then withdraw. As the attack of the enemy progresses, the reserve company commander keeps himself informed of the situation. The probable use of the reserve company is planned to permit the timely alerting of troops to carry out their mission.

b. If the enemy penetrates the position and the reserve company is ordered to defend from prepared positions which block the threatened area, the conduct of the defense is similar to that of the front-line companies. Because final protective fires are not planned to the immediate front of the reserve company, principal directions of fire to cover avenues of approach inside the battle position are assigned in place of final protective fires. Fire data for high-angle weapons are prepared and closely coordinated with front-line elements to permit the rapid and accurate use of concentrations.

Section IV. OTHER DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS

308. GENERAL. The principles outlined in sections I through III, this chapter, govern the usual organization and defense by a rifle company. Frequently, the rifle company takes part in a defen-

sive operation where the situation is different and requires special considerations. Since the battalion is the basic tactical unit, the rifle company rarely is used as a separate unit. In all these situations, the principles of defensive combat previously covered are followed, if practicable. The application or modification depends on such factors as the terrain, the tactical situation, and the size of the unit involved. Those additional considerations which apply particularly to the rifle company in such situations are described in the paragraphs which follow.

309. DEFENSE ON WIDE FRONT. a. When a battalion defends a wide front, emphasis is placed on the organization of key terrain features. Frequently, the rifle company, reinforced with supporting weapons, is assigned the defense of such a key feature. Units smaller than a rifle company rarely are assigned a key terrain feature. When assigned the mission of defending a key terrain feature and providing assistance in covering gaps between terrain features, the front-line company—

- (1) Physically occupies a normal frontage.
- (2) Emphasizes provisions for the defense of the terrain feature against an attack from any direction.
- (3) Furnishes observation, security, and patrols to cover the gaps.
- (4) Familiarizes key persons with the plans of higher units for covering the gaps by fire.

b. The reserve rifle company, in an extended-

front situation, prepares more positions, is more likely to counterattack, and more frequently occupies an assembly area initially.

310. PERIMETER DEFENSE. a. When a rifle company or a smaller unit is on an independent mission or when it is separated from the battalion and the enemy location is not certain, it usually establishes a perimeter defense. (See figs. 62 and 63.) In such cases the company organizes its position as follows:

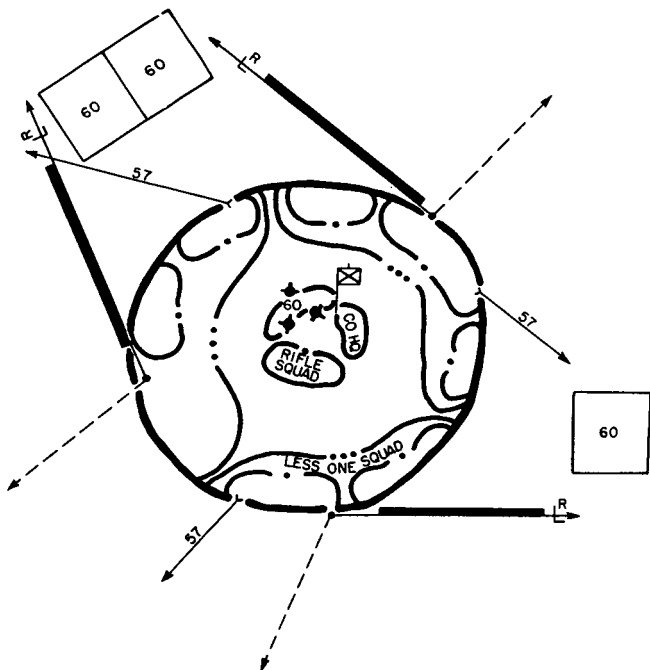


Figure 62. Perimeter defense of the rifle company in close terrain (schematic).

b. Each rifle platoon is assigned a part of the outer perimeter to organize and defend. Each rifle platoon leader normally organizes his assigned sector by placing three rifle squads abreast. The platoon leader places his light machine gun in a position on the perimeter of the platoon sector which allows the best coverage of the platoon front and the best final protective line. He places his rocket launcher on the perimeter where it best can cover the most dangerous tank approach. Two-

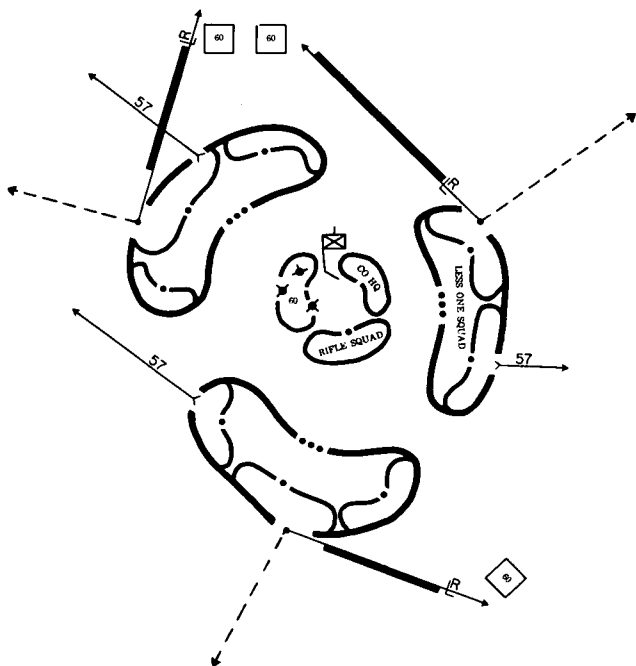


Figure 63. Perimeter defense of the rifle company in open terrain (schematic).

man fox holes normally are dug 5 to 20 yards apart, and 10 to 25 yards are allotted to crew-served weapons.

c. The inner perimeter is organized by the 60-mm mortar section and the headquarters personnel of the company and of the weapons platoon. The company commander may use part of a rifle platoon to strengthen this inner perimeter, when necessary. Normally, not more than one rifle squad is used for this purpose.

d. The company commander closely supervises the rifle platoon leaders' use of their weapons to coordinate effective all-around defense of the company area. If the terrain dictates, he may attach to one platoon the rocket launcher of another platoon in order to give the maximum effective coverage of the most likely tank approach. He usually selects positions on the outer perimeter for all three 57-mm rifles. The 60-mm mortars are emplaced within the inner perimeter close enough together to permit the control from one location. To permit the rapid delivery of fires in any direction, each mortar is given a different sector; however, each mortar is prepared to reinforce the fires of either of the others. When the defensive position is beyond effective range of the main force's supporting weapons, the additional weapons may be attached to the company. Attached machine guns normally are used singly on the outer perimeter.

e. Security outside the perimeter is furnished by small outguards located on likely approaches and on observation points and by passive means such as trip flares and booby traps. In dense terrain

local security detachments may be withdrawn within the perimeter during periods of poor visibility or darkness.

311. DEFENSE OF RIVER LINE. a. General. The conduct of a river line defense normally is decided by commanders of large units. In the offensive type of defense, a rifle company may be assigned the mission of establishing small outguards along the river to give warning and to delay and disorganize the enemy if he attempts a crossing. A rifle company also may be part of a mobile counterattacking force whose mission is to destroy the enemy when he is astride the river or soon after he crosses. In the position-type of defense, the rifle company may be assigned a definite area to organize and defend on or near the bank of the river, or it may be designated the battalion reserve.

b. Frontage. In the defense of a river line, a rifle company normally is assigned a greater frontage than in average terrain. This frontage is covered by extending the intervals between platoons rather than the intervals between men.

c. Employment of weapons. When the main line of resistance is organized on the near bank of the river, 60-mm mortar concentrations and barrages are planned to cover likely avenues of approach to the far bank and probable crossing sites. Machine guns and other direct-fire weapons are assigned wide sectors of fire, and they cover the avenues of approach and areas which offer effective grazing fire. Machine guns are sited to fire final protective lines that graze on the river or the far bank.

Rifle grenades, rocket launchers, and 57-mm rifles are used against enemy groups and equipment on the far bank and on the river. When the main line of resistance is organized back from the river bank, weapons are used as for a normal defense. Final protective fires of the 60-mm mortars and machine guns are placed on the near bank to destroy the enemy as he attempts to gain a foothold on the near bank.

312. DEFENSE IN WOODS. Defense in woods is characterized by short fields of fire and limited observation. To meet this situation, reliance is placed on closely coordinated preplanned defensive fires, obstacles, constant patrolling, extensive use of local security groups, and preparation of routes for the rapid shifting of support and reserve units. Limited fields of fire within the position require the reduction of distances and intervals between men and units. Overhead cover is constructed for fox holes and other emplacements for protection against enemy fire and friendly close-in artillery and mortar supporting fires. The support platoon prepares to counterattack against small infiltrating groups which penetrate the position. Constant patrolling is maintained to the front and the flanks and within the position. Local security groups are equipped with rapid means of communication in order to give immediate warning of the hostile advance. A successful defense depends on vigilance, accurate information of hostile movements, final protective fires, and a rapid counterattack to mop-up hostile groups which infiltrate the position.

313. ANTI-AIRBORNE DEFENSE—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS. a. Measures must be taken by all units to protect themselves against an airborne assault. A rifle company may be used against an airborne attack as follows: if the company is occupying a front-line defense area it defends in place; if company is within a regimental sector and not a front-line company, it may be used as an immediate counterattacking force.

b. Companies used in rear areas may be assigned a definite sector of responsibility to organize against airborne operations; they may organize, occupy, and defend important key points; or they may be a part of mobile striking force.

314. PRINCIPLES OF AIRBORNE DEFENSE. In organizing an area against airborne operations, the following principles are applicable:

a. To *counteract* hostile air reconnaissance, camouflage and concealment are perfected. Alternate positions for weapons and men are dug so that the defense is flexible. Dummy positions are prepared to confuse the enemy and prevent him from locating the exact positions.

b. To give *warning* of hostile landings, a warning system consisting of warning station is established to cover possible landing areas in the area of responsibility. It often is necessary to supplement these warning stations with motorized patrols. All communication means are used to give prompt warning.

c. To provide initial *protection* against hostile landings, small detachments are established in the

vicinity of landing areas, likely airborne objectives, and critical terrain features. These detachments form the local defense force. The purpose of this force is to delay, disorganize, and contain the airborne force until the mobile striking force can counterattack to destroy the enemy. The size of each force is determined by the importance of the area and may vary in strength from a single rifle squad to a rifle platoon reinforced with supporting weapons. Obstacles to landing are constructed, with first priority given to landing areas nearest probable airborne objectives.

d. To give maximum *flexibility* to the defense, a mobile striking force is organized. The purpose of this force is to destroy the enemy by counterattack. It preferably is motorized and strong in fire power, and centrally located in a covered and concealed position. Plans for its use are prearranged and rehearsed.

315. CONDUCT OF AIRBORNE DEFENSE. During hostile air reconnaissance, troops are concealed. During the hostile air bombardment, men occupy covered positions and prepare for the hostile attack. During the initial landings, the defense is aggressive. If low-flying transports or gliders come within range, all weapons fire. Warning stations and local defense forces determine the main landing area and the direction of movement of the hostile force. Maximum fires are directed on the enemy. Local counterattacks inflict maximum casualties and delay the reorganization of forces that have landed. As soon as reliable reports of the

location and strength of an enemy landing are received, the mobile striking force is committed between the enemy's landing area and probable airborne objective. It destroys or contains the enemy. Aggressive and offensive action is necessary for an effective defense against airborne attack.

316. OTHER DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS. For characteristics of combat and tactical principles governing other defensive operations, see FM 100-5 and other appropriate references listed in appendix VIII.

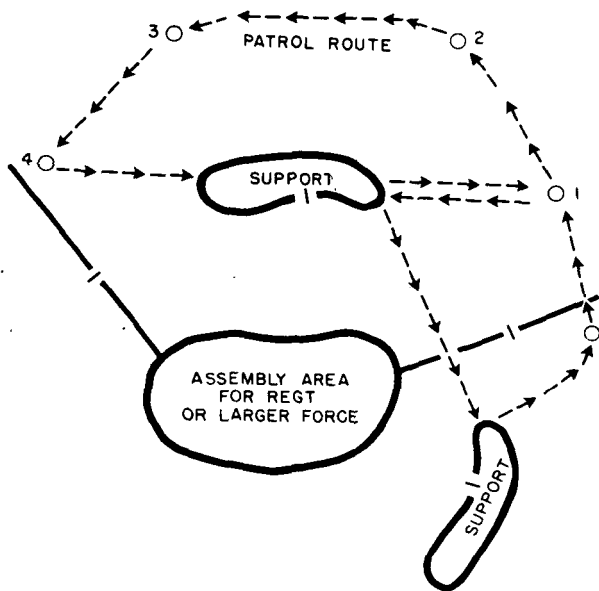
Section V. SECURITY MISSIONS

317. GENERAL. A rifle company may be used for security missions to include—

- a. Assembly area outpost.
- b. General outpost.
- c. Combat outpost.
- d. Local security.
- e. Road blocks and defense of obstacles.
- f. Defense of rear installations.
- g. Rear guard.

318. ASSEMBLY AREA OUTPOST. a. When a force occupies an unprotected assembly area, strong security measures are taken. This security normally is furnished by an outpost. When the force is a regiment or larger, a battalion usually is detailed as the assembly area outpost, and rifle companies occupy assigned sectors of the outpost. (See fig. 64.) When the force is a battalion, one rifle com-

pany (reinforced by supporting weapons) may establish the outpost, but more frequently each company furnishes the outpost protection in the sector corresponding to its position in the assembly area. (See fig. 65.)

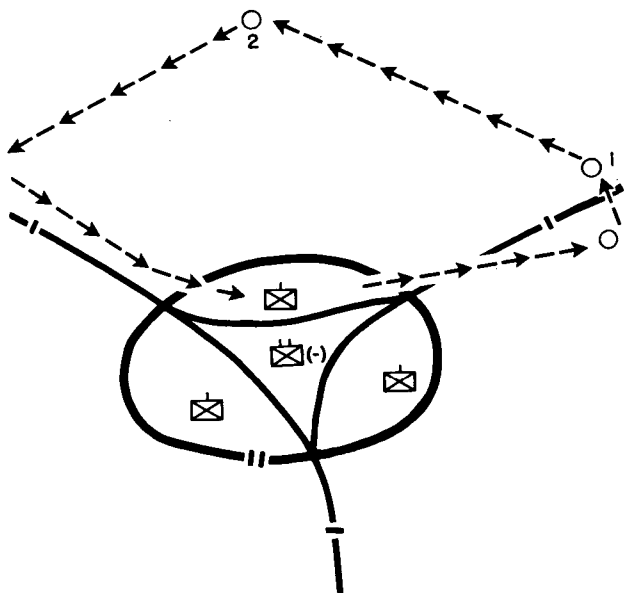


○ OUTGUARD—USUALLY ONE SQUAD OR FRACTION THERE
 - - - - -> ROUTE OF VISITING PATROLS

Figure 64. Assembly area—company sector (schematic).

b. When a rifle company in a battalion assembly area furnishes the outpost protection within an assigned sector, it normally does so by means of a

series of small outguards and road blocks and by patrolling. These outguards are located approximately 200 to 500 yards from the assembly area, with enough outguards and at such critical points



○ OUTGUARD-USUALLY ONE SQUAD OR FRACTION THEREOF

—→ ROUTE OF VISITING PATROLS

Figure 65. When outpostting a battalion assembly area, each rifle company usually furnishes the outpost for its sector.

as to permit long-range observation and fires and to cover probable enemy approaches. Each out-

guard normally consists of part or all of a rifle squad, reinforced with supporting weapons. Observers for supporting high-angle-fire weapons also are posted with these outguards. Control and communication with outguards is maintained by available means, including visiting patrols. The outguards use maximum fire power to delay any observed enemy. They give warning to the troops in the assembly area and withdraw if threatened with close combat or encirclement. Visiting patrols, usually consisting of three men, maintain contact with the outguards and detect enemy activity in the areas between outguards. They are dispatched at intervals not greater than 2 hours, and by routes that cover the sector. To prevent an ambush, the time and the route are varied. In case of an enemy threat, the company occupies a defensive position previously designated by the battalion commander. This position is on the best defensive terrain close to the assembly area. The company commander often details one platoon to establish these outguards and to do the patrolling.

319. GENERAL OUTPOST. a. The general outpost usually is established approximately 6,000 yards forward of the battle position and it is prescribed by the division commander. It aids in securing the front of the battle position and provides warning for the main force and extended surveillance of the area over which the enemy must advance. A rifle company may be assigned an area on the outpost line of resistance to organize and occupy, or

it may be designated as one of the reserve elements.

b. The outpost order may prescribe that the outpost line of resistance be held for a definite time or that the outpost conduct a delaying action. If it is to be held for a definite period, the company organizes its position as for a regular defense. If it is to conduct a delaying action, the principles for a delaying action are used. (See par. 331.)

c. In the organization of the ground, dummy emplacements are constructed to deceive the enemy and to disperse his fire. The company organizes its support position and covers its front with outguards and patrols similar to an assembly area outpost. (See par. 318.)

320. COMBAT OUTPOST—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS. The combat outpost usually is from 800 to 2,000 yards forward of the battle position. It is prescribed by the battalion or the regimental commander. The mission of the combat outpost is to delay, disorganize, and deceive the enemy. It aids in securing the battle position, gains timely information of the enemy, and inflicts maximum casualties on the enemy without engaging in close combat. The responsibility for organizing and occupying this position may be assigned to front-line rifle companies or to elements of the battalion or the regimental reserve. The combat outpost for each battalion varies in size from a rifle platoon to a rifle company reinforced with machine guns, mortars, antitank weapons, and tanks.

321. ORGANIZATION OF A COMBAT OUTPOST. a. The combat outpost is organized as a series of outguards which vary in strength from a half squad to a reinforced rifle platoon. These outguards organize defense areas on terrain features permitting observation, long fields of fire, and close rifle protection for supporting weapons. (See fig. 66.) Outguards organize their positions covering a normal frontage. These positions preferably are located within visual communicating distance of each other. If the terrain prevents this, contact is maintained by patrols or other means of communication. Sentinels and patrols are used to the front, flanks, and rear to furnish security for the outguards. Patrolling between outguards and sentinels is carried on during periods of reduced visibility. Weapons are placed where they can get long fields of fire, and men are placed where they can get maximum observation. This usually is on the topographical crest of the terrain feature organized.

b. In addition to the advantages already stated, such a position aids the withdrawal. A support echelon ordinarily is not used and final protective fires are not planned to protect the position since the combat outpost withdraws before the attacker comes within assaulting distance. Usual deceptive measures are used. Communication is maintained to the rear by wire, radio, and messenger. Routes of withdrawal are selected and reconnoitered, and all men are notified of the withdrawal plan.

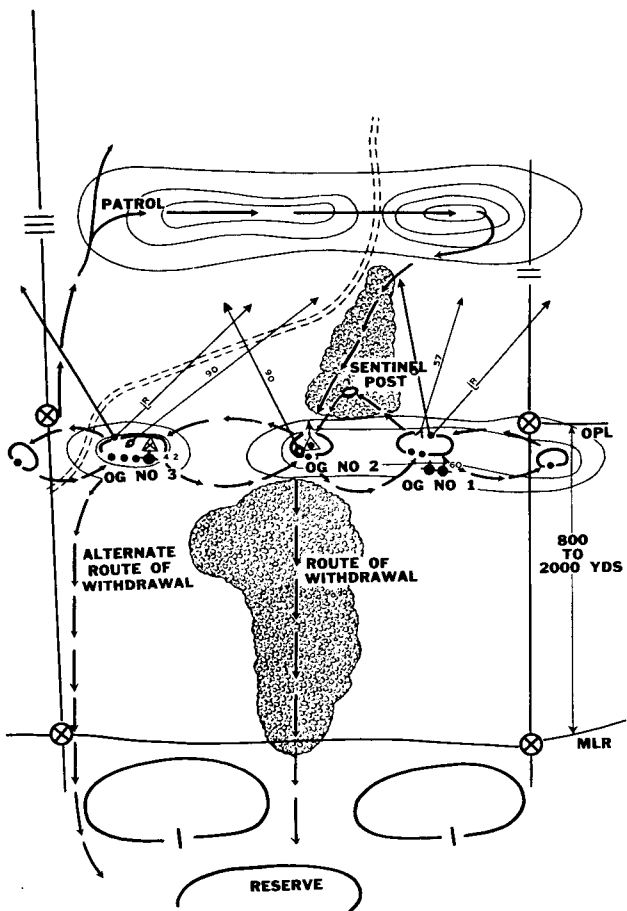


Figure 66. Combat outpost (schematic).

322. CONDUCT OF A COMBAT OUTPOST. When there are no friendly troops forward of the combat

outpost, contact is maintained with the enemy by patrols. In order to inflict maximum casualties and confuse the enemy, fires of all weapons are opened at long range. As the enemy advances, continuous and increasing fire is directed on him. The next higher commander is informed of the first approach of hostile forces and is kept advised of the situation. If the attacker continues his advance and approaches within assaulting distance or threatens an envelopment, the combat outpost withdraws.

323. WITHDRAWAL OF A COMBAT OUTPOST. The decision to withdraw normally is made by the battalion or the regimental commander; however, the combat outpost commander may be given the authority to make this decision. Predetermined and previously reconnoitered routes of withdrawal are used to offer maximum cover and concealment. These routes permit the freedom of fire by flat-trajectory weapons within the battle position and tend to deceive the enemy as to the true location of the battle position. Several plans for the withdrawal are prepared. Normally, the least engaged units withdraw first. Since the distance from the battle position is short, there usually are no intermediate delaying positions and the withdrawal is made directly to positions within the battle position. Friendly elements are kept informed of the withdrawal progress.

324. LOCAL SECURITY. a. The establishment of combat or general outposts by a commander of a

larger unit does not relieve the company of the responsibility of furnishing its own close-in protection. (See fig. 67.) During daylight, observers

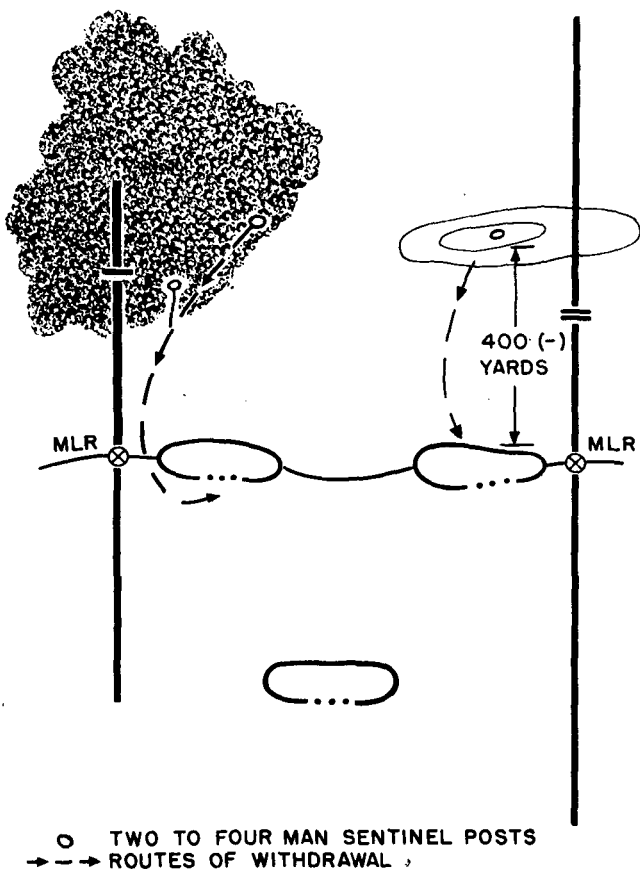


Figure 67. Local security forward of a front-line rifle company.

are posted to observe the foreground and to give warning of an enemy approach. The planned routes of withdrawal of the outpost are included within the areas of surveillance of these observers.

b. Security sentinels are placed on the nearest terrain feature allowing observation of the company's front, generally not over 400 yards from the position. The company commander may direct each front-line platoon to furnish local security to its front, or he may assign the security mission to the support platoon. Security posts normally consist of two to four observers. As the enemy approaches, local security elements give warning and observe to determine the enemy strength, actions and routes of approach. They withdraw to the battle position in time to prevent close combat. At night, listening posts, supplemented by patrols, are established on the likely avenues of enemy approach.

c. Within each squad area, at least one sentinel is alert at all times. At night, double sentinels are posted. Sentinels should be relieved every two hours, or more frequently, to keep them alert.

d. The rifle company adds to its security by passive measures to include control of movement, camouflage, concealment, and light and noise discipline.

325. ROAD BLOCKS AND DEFENSE OF OBSTACLES.

(See fig. 68.) The rifle company often is assigned the mission of establishing road blocks or of defending obstacles. The size of the force necessary for such a mission varies from a rifle squad to a

reinforced rifle company. Depending on the situation, the battalion commander may direct that the defense be maintained at all costs until a specified time or until the enemy pressure threatens to overrun or outflank the position. Troops and weapons are placed so that they can cover effectively, by fire, the road and the area on either side of the obstacle and approaches to it. In periods of good visibility, these positions are placed at such distance from the road or obstacle as to be outside the zone of dispersion of enemy fire directed at the road or obstacle. During periods of poor visibility, positions are occupied closer to the obstacle but beyond hand-grenade range. A small outguard

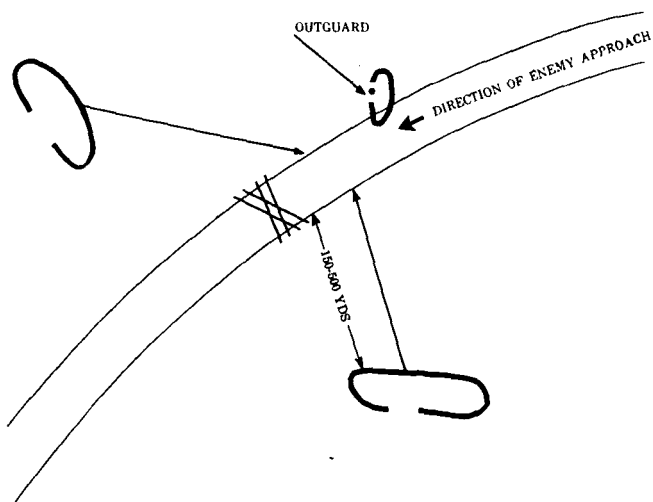


Figure 68. Road block or defense of an obstacle under conditions of good visibility (schematic).

is established where it can give adequate warning of the approach of an enemy force. The leader places guards to warn friendly troops of the obstacle or to prevent unauthorized persons from going beyond the obstacle or road block. The leader maintains contact with his commander and promptly notifies him of enemy action and developments.

326. DEFENSE OF REAR INSTALLATIONS. A rifle company or a smaller unit may be detailed to protect an installation in rear of the battle zone. Hostile actions, against which this unit is prepared to defend, include ground attacks, airborne attacks, guerrilla raids, civilian uprisings, and sabotage. Normally, the unit can provide this protection best by placing security detachments throughout the area and retaining the bulk of its strength mobile. The security detachments may vary in size from individual sentinels to reinforced squads. They may include sentinel posts, outguards, and foot or motorized patrols. Their numbers and locations should permit prompt suppression of minor disturbances or timely alerting of the mobile force in the case of a more serious threat. The mobile force is prepared to defend the installation by attacking the hostile force or by defending from prepared defensive positions.

327. REAR GUARD. a. Rear guards are used to protect a foot or motorized column which is marching away from the enemy, and to protect the rear of a column advancing toward the enemy if an attack

or a harassing action from the rear is possible.

b. When a battalion is the rear guard, its rear rifle company is the *support*. The mission of the support is to protect that element of the rear guard which immediately precedes it in the direction of march.

c. A company having the mission of support of a rear guard battalion adopts a formation similar to that of the support of an advance guard battalion in the reverse order of march. The support is formed in three groups: the support proper, the rear party, and the rear point. The company details one rifle platoon to act as rear party. The rear party platoon details a rifle squad to act as rear point. The distances between elements of the support vary with the situation, the terrain, and the visibility; they correspond generally to the distances between elements of the advance guard (par. 22). When the support is motorized, it moves as a unit. When the column halts, the rear support dismounts and forms a march outpost. When the column moves, whether mounted or dismounted, the support follows the preceding element at a distance set by the battalion commander.

d. When an enemy pursuit is close, elements of the support delay the enemy to permit the next preceding unit to make suitable dispositions. Fire is opened at long range. Usually, elements do not move toward the enemy to reinforce a lower element. The larger element occupies a delaying position to cover the withdrawal of the smaller element. The element in contact with the enemy then withdraws under the protective fires of the ele-

ment occupying the delaying position. The rate of retirement is coordinated with the main body and adjacent rear guard elements. In general, the combat action of a company operating as the support of a rear guard in close contact with the enemy is conducted according to the principles of a delaying action (par. 331).

e. When the *rear party* is on foot, it is disposed in a column of two's with one file on each side of the road. The rear party commander marches behind the rear party. From this position, he can decide quickly what to do when the rear point receives fire. When the rear party commander decides that it is necessary to fight in place, he selects a firing position that provides long fields of fire and is well along the route of march from the position occupied by the point. He sends a runner to the leader of the point to tell him where the position is and to lead the point back in its withdrawal. The withdrawal of the rear party is covered by the support proper.

f. The *rear point* stops to fire only when enemy action threatens to interfere with the march. It signals the rear party commander when the enemy is sighted. The rear point is not reinforced by other troops. When the rear point is ordered to withdraw by the rear party commander, it uses a route that does not mask the fire of the rear party.

Section VI. RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS

328. GENERAL. A retrograde movement is a movement to the rear or away from the enemy. It may

be forced by the enemy, or it may be made voluntarily. Retrograde movements include withdrawals from action, retirements, and delaying actions.

329. WITHDRAWAL FROM ACTION. a. A withdrawal from action is the operation of breaking off combat with a hostile force by a rearward movement. It may be followed by a retirement or by the occupation of a rear position or area from which subsequent offensive or defensive action is conducted. Withdrawals are classified as daylight withdrawals or night withdrawals, according to the time the movement is begun. Daylight withdrawals usually result in excessive losses and are avoided. Secrecy, careful planning, and rapid movement are essential to success.

b. Orders from the battalion commander for withdrawals include—

- (1) Organization and location of the battalion covering force.
- (2) Attachments of elements of the heavy weapons company and other supporting units to the front-line rifle companies.
- (3) Time of withdrawal of each echelon.
- (4) Initial point and zones or routes of withdrawal for each company.
- (5) Location of assembly areas and phase lines.
- (6) Route of withdrawal of the battalion command post and successive locations.
- (7) Requirements for maintaining secrecy and security.

- (8) Administrative details, including removal or destruction of supplies.

330. RETIREMENT. A retirement is an orderly withdrawal of troops according to their own plan and without pressure by the enemy. It follows a withdrawal from action and commences when contact with the enemy is broken completely.

331. DELAYING ACTION. Delaying action is a form of defensive action on one or more positions used to retard the enemy's advance and to gain time without becoming decisively engaged. This delay usually is obtained by forcing the enemy to deploy early and to consume time in preparation for battle.

332. RETROGRADE MOVEMENT TACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS. Retrograde movements are protected by continuous ground reconnaissance to the flanks and rear, by covering forces, by rapid movements under cover of darkness, by strong antiaircraft defense, and by continuous all-around antitank defense. Obstacles and contaminations may be used to protect the flanks and to delay the hostile advance.

333. RETROGRADE MOVEMENT ORDER. The following information is included in a company retrograde order:

- a. Information of enemy and friendly forces.
- b. Company mission and details of coordination applicable to the company as a whole, including

routes or zones of withdrawal, phase lines, formation, and location of the initial point or company assembly area.

c. Tasks for lower units, such as elements of the covering force, its composition, its commander and the time he assumes command, and its route and time of withdrawal. Also, specific tasks for each unit to include attachments to rifle platoons, location of assembly areas for each platoon, routes of withdrawal for all units, and time of withdrawal for all units.

d. Instructions relative to transportation, evacuation of casualties, and supply for covering force elements and other units.

e. Limitations, if any, on radio and special pyrotechnic signals; present or future locations and times of opening command posts; and location of the company commander.

334. NIGHT WITHDRAWAL—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS. A front-line company executes a night withdrawal by all company elements moving to the rear at the same time, less those troops left in place as a covering force. (See fig. 69.) The success of the withdrawal depends on careful coordination and secrecy. The withdrawal of troops and weapons and their subsequent assembly is done as quietly as possible. By their fires and patrolling, troops of the covering force simulate the normal activities of the unit. Elements of supporting units located within a front-line company defense area may be attached to the company for the withdrawal. In preparation for a night withdrawal,

special tactical measures may be used to confuse and disrupt the enemy ; for example, limited objective attacks, raids, and variation of fire plans.

335. COVERING FORCE FOR NIGHT WITHDRAWAL.

a. The strength and composition of the covering force is designated by the battalion commander. It usually does not exceed one-third of the rifle strength of the company with skeleton crews for supporting weapons. Normally, one rifle squad is left in each platoon defense area of the forward rifle companies. As soon as the platoons are withdrawn, men of the squad, left in place, move to where they can cover the most likely enemy approaches to the platoon area and at the same time furnish close protection for the supporting weapons. The squad left in the support platoon area of each front-line company patrols in the rear area. One rifle platoon usually is left in place in the reserve company area. It patrols, protects the covering force command post, and blocks the most likely avenue of enemy approach into the battalion rear area.

b. Machine guns as needed are attached to the covering force. Not more than two 60-mm mortars of each front-line company are left in position to fire normal night missions. Rocket launchers as needed are left in position to cover approaches which can be used by hostile tanks at night.

c. Usually, the company executive officer commands the rifle company elements left as part of the covering force. He takes over the company

command post. He uses messengers, wire, and radio to maintain communication.

336. RECONNAISSANCE FOR NIGHT WITHDRAWAL.

If practicable, unit leaders, down to and including the squad and selected guides, reconnoiter routes to their assembly areas during daylight. If the company organizes and occupies a rear position following the withdrawal, reconnaissance of the rear position is made. Each company places guides at the forward and rear positions. To preserve secrecy, reconnaissance groups are limited in size.

337. EXECUTION OF NIGHT WITHDRAWAL.

Rearward movement of all rifle company elements, less covering force elements, begins simultaneously at the designated time. Men move back to squad assembly areas, squads move to platoon assembly areas, and platoons move to the company assembly area. Small column formations, which aid control, are used. Elements of the reserve company may move directly to the company's assembly area. The movement is timed so that there is no waiting in platoon assembly areas or in the company assembly area. Company transportation meets the company as far forward as practicable. The limit of its forward movement is prescribed by the battalion commander. Vehicles are moved singly or in small groups, and all motor movements are made without lights. Enough vehicles are left with the covering force to move its supporting weapons.

338. SECURITY FOR NIGHT WITHDRAWAL. The covering force provides the primary security for

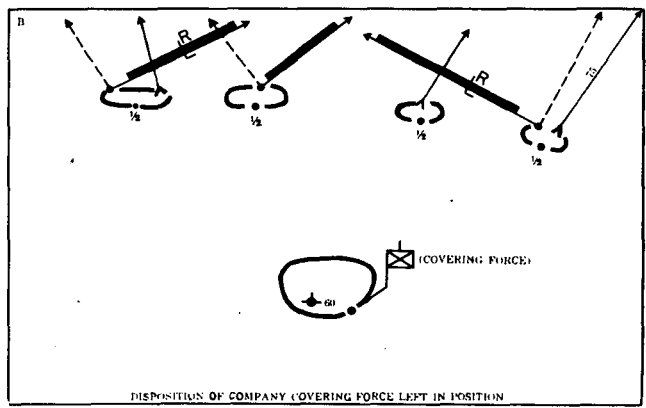
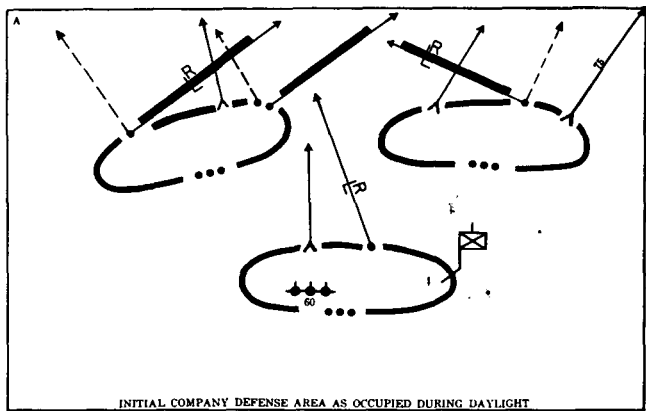


Figure 69. Night withdrawal of a front-line rifle company (schematic).

the company's withdrawal. The company commander provides additional close-in security for the movement to the battalion assembly area.

339. SUPPLY FOR NIGHT WITHDRAWAL. Ammunition supply of the front-line companies is replenished before the beginning of the withdrawal, if necessary. The company commander anticipates his supply requirements for the rear position and arranges to have those supplies moved to a location which simplifies the supply of the company.

340. COMMUNICATION FOR NIGHT WITHDRAWAL.

a. In a night withdrawal, the company command post remains open in its old location until the company, less the covering force, leaves the company assembly area. The time of displacement, the route of movement, and the new location of the company command post are announced in the company order. A wire line may be laid from the assembly area to the old command post to provide rapid communication with the covering force and with the battalion command post.

b. The covering force uses wire lines already established in the old position. The old company command post becomes the command post of the covering force. For purposes of deception, the covering force maintains normal radio traffic. Upon its withdrawal, it cuts wire circuits and removes a portion of the wire to prevent its use by the enemy.

c. During the company's movement from the company assembly area to the battalion assembly

area, the company command post is with the marching column. Radio silence is maintained according to battalion orders. Maximum use is made of existing wire circuits to the rear.

341. WITHDRAWAL OF COVERING FORCE AT NIGHT. The battalion order specifies the condition or time for the withdrawal, the routes of withdrawal, and the assembly area. If a rear position is occupied by the main force, the covering force usually is withdrawn in time to be under the protection of the outpost of the rear position by daylight. All elements of the covering force usually are withdrawn at the same time. The covering force commander protects his movement to the rear by the use of security groups.

342. DAYLIGHT WITHDRAWAL. a. Daylight withdrawals are accomplished best when the situation prevents the enemy from seriously interfering; however, in emergencies, daylight withdrawals may be ordered when the enemy is in close contact. A daylight withdrawal order normally is oral, brief, and fragmentary.

b. In a daylight withdrawal, each echelon covers the withdrawal of the next echelon to the front. (See fig. 70.) The support platoon covers the withdrawal of the front-line platoons. The battalion reserve covers the withdrawal of the support platoon of the front-line companies.

c. The initial withdrawal consists of a thinning out of the defense area troops. Men from front-line platoons are sent to the rear of the support

platoon area, where a platoon noncommissioned officer assembles them or sends them directly to the company assembly area. Automatic weapons in each area cover the withdrawal of the troops of

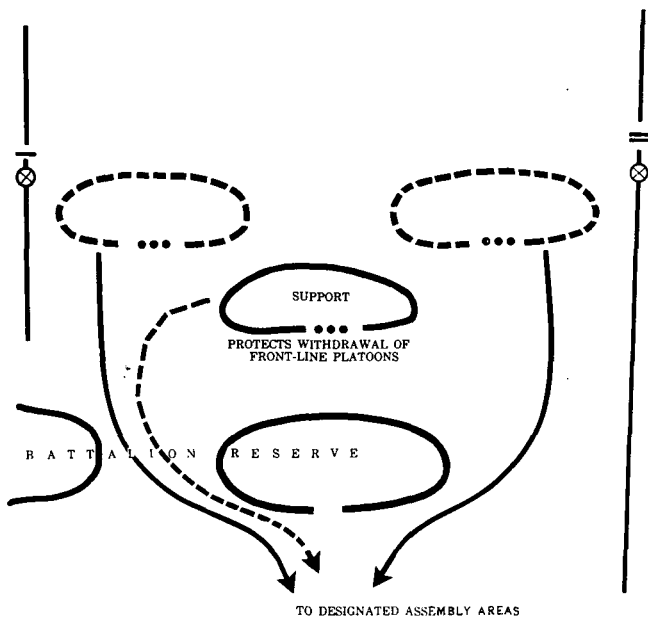


Figure 70. Daylight withdrawal of a front-line rifle company (schematic).

that area. When withdrawn, these weapons move directly to the company assembly area. As soon as the last elements of the front-line platoons have withdrawn, the support platoon similarly with-

draws under the protection of the battalion reserve.

d. Supporting weapons in the rifle company area normally are attached to the company for the withdrawal. Some of these weapons, together with the elements of the weapons platoon, may be used to assist in covering the withdrawal. If 60-mm mortars are located in the forward platoon areas, they are attached to the rifle platoons and are withdrawn with the initial elements of those platoons. If the 60-mm mortars are used in the support platoon area, they support the forward platoons and withdraw with the support platoon. If 75-mm rifles are located in the forward platoon areas, they may be attached to these platoons for the withdrawal.

343. DELAYING ACTION IN SUCCESSIVE POSITIONS.

Since a delay in successive positions is based on limited resistance at any one position, the company may be given a frontage twice as wide as it would have in a sustained defense. This frontage normally is covered by placing the three rifle platoons abreast. Successive positions and routes of withdrawal are prescribed by the battalion commander. The company commander directs early reconnaissance of these positions and routes by his unit leaders. The organization and the conduct of a delaying position defense are according to the principles governing a combat outpost. (See par. 321.) The withdrawal to the next delaying position may be made by withdrawing platoons alternately and covering the gaps thus created by the fire of sup-

porting weapons, or by withdrawing all platoons at the same time, with each platoon covering its own withdrawal. Between the successive delaying positions, intermediate positions offering good fields of fire are occupied by detachments with automatic weapons.

344. DELAYING ACTION IN ONE POSITION. a. The mission of delay may require a force to hold a certain position for a predetermined time. The rifle company assigned a part of a sector on a delaying position with this mission distributes its troops, organizes the position, and plans its final protective fires as in a normal defense. Increased frontages are covered by allowing greater intervals between adjacent defense areas. Intervals between men in platoon and smaller defense areas are not increased. Gaps between units are covered by flanking fire or by the fires of supporting weapons. Mobility is preferable for the support platoon so that it can provide support for the entire company forward area.

b. When the company is assigned the mission of delaying the advance of the enemy along a road, it should select a position where it can bring surprise fire against the enemy maneuvering toward the road block. This may be done by placing a small company element astride the road or in the immediate vicinity of it and dividing the greater part of the company into groups to each side of the road.

CHAPTER 9

COMMUNICATION

345. REFERENCES. For references on the details of installing, operating, and maintaining communications systems, see appendix VIII.

346. COMMUNICATION PERSONNEL. a. *Officers* are trained in the capabilities and the use of the company communication system, including radiotelephone procedure and security. They operate hand or shoulder-carried portable voice sets.

b. The *communication noncommissioned officer* is trained as a communication chief. He keeps his company commander informed on matters pertaining to communication. He supervises the installation, operation, and maintenance of the communication system. He assists in the procurement of signal supplies for the company. He trains company communication personnel and other men designated by the company commander. Part of this training is conducted by battalion and other headquarters.

c. The *communication noncommissioned officer* supervises the maintenance of communication security in the company. He transmits information contained in current communication orders; for example, signal operation instructions (SOI) and

standing signal instructions (SSI). He makes recommendations to his company commander on matters pertaining to communication.

d. The *bugler* is the principal assistant to the communication noncommissioned officer. His duties are assigned to him by the company commander and the communication noncommissioned officer. He is trained to install, operate, and maintain all items of communication equipment in the company.

e. The *radiotelephone operators* operate and maintain the back-packed radio sets in the company. Their training includes radiotelephone procedure and security. They also are trained to install, operate, and maintain all items of communication equipment issued to the company.

f. The *messengers* are selected for their sturdiness, courage, and self-reliance. They must not be subject to night blindness. They are trained to carry written or verbal messages under all conditions and to install, operate, and maintain all items of communication equipment in the company. Messenger training includes work on map reading and organization and practice in recognizing commanders by sight.

g. *Orderlies* and other men designated by the company commander are trained to install, operate, and maintain the company communication system. These men are used to augment communication personnel, especially for installing, operating, and maintaining the wire system and back-packed radio sets.

347. EQUIPMENT. a. *Light-weight switchboards* which can service 6 single channels of wire communication or approximately 24 party-line channels are issued to the company. Battery and sound-powered telephones are provided. Light-weight field wire is available to establish a command and fire-control system. The wire is laid or recovered by light reels which may be hand carried. The wire also is laid by the wire dispenser in which it is issued.

b. Radio equipment includes low-powered portable voice sets. Two types are issued; one is carried in the hand or on the shoulder, and the other is back-packed. Back-packed radios have a range of approximately 3 miles and are frequency-modulated (f-m) with a frequency (channel) which can be changed by the operator. These radios will net with similar type radios mounted in all tanks. The hand or shoulder-carried radio has a range of approximately 1 mile.

c. *Visual* signal equipment consists of fluorescent marking panels with different color combinations, pyrotechnics and smoke in various colors and types, arm-and-hand signals, and improvised lights and flags.

d. *Sound* signal equipment includes whistles, horns, bugles, gongs, small arms, and other noise-making devices.

348. USE OF COMMUNICATION. a. The company commander directs the use of communication available to the company. Communication is kept

flexible to provide a means of contact during the different tactical situations.

b. *Wire communication depends on the time available to install and recover the wire. (See fig. 71.) If enough wire is available, recovery need not be made by the company. In fast-moving situations, time limitations may limit wire usage to short fire-control lines which can be recovered*

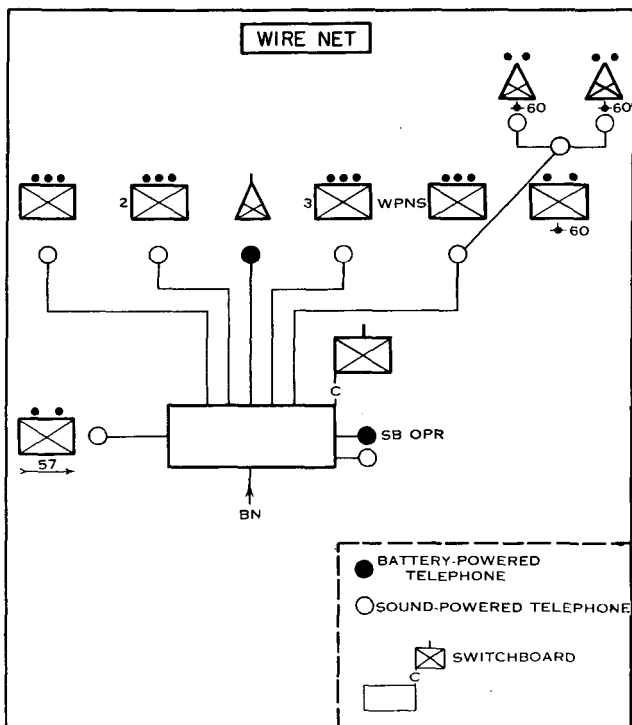


Figure 71. Type rifle company wire net.

quickly. In defensive situations, a complete wire system is installed for fire control and control of units.

c. *Radio* is limited only by the characteristics of the sets, such as range, frequency and type of modulation, security restrictions, and interference from static, jamming, or terrain obstacles. (See fig. 72.) Radio is an ideal means of communication for fast-moving situations. When wire is available, radio normally is held in readiness only. The details of net operation are contained in signal operation instructions; for example, call signs, frequencies, and codes. The efficiency of the radio system depends on operator training.

d. *Foot messengers* operate between the company command post and the command post of battalion and platoons. Messenger communication is used within platoons by the use of platoon messengers or other men. The company sends two messengers to the battalion command post, one of whom returns to the company. This familiarizes messengers with the locations of and routes to the command posts. An exchange of messengers is made when the battalion or company command post displaces. Foot messengers may operate as motor messengers by using company vehicles.

e. *Visual and sound* signals are limited only by the signals themselves and by limitations placed on their use for security reasons. They are a rapid means of communication but are easily misunderstood. Messages must be simple. For effective use of this means of communication, selected men are assigned the duty of remaining on the alert to re-

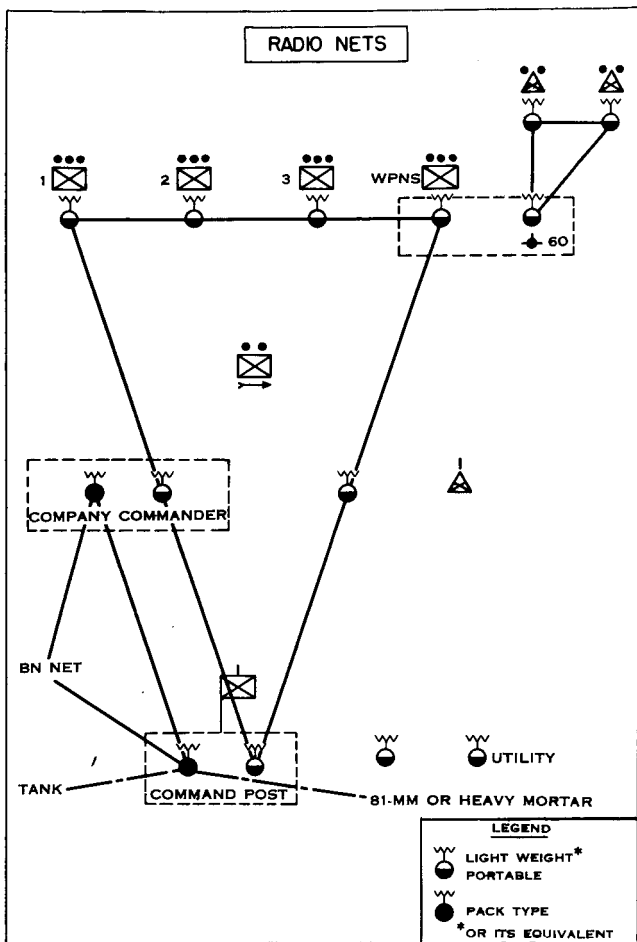


Figure 72. Type rifle company radio net.

ceive them. The meanings of visual and sound signals are prescribed in the signal operation instructions. They are an auxiliary means of communication.

- (1) Panels, smoke, and pyrotechnics are used for marking positions, for identifying units and vehicles, and for sending short prearranged messages. These visual signals are obtained from the signal operation instructions or may be originated by the company commander after proper coordination. Prearranged messages given in the signal operation instructions usually include calls for fire, calls for lifting fire, and objective reached. Improvised lights and flags may be used for special purposes. (For the use of arm-and-hand signals, see app. III.)
- (2) Sound signals are used chiefly to spread an alarm, to attract attention, and to transmit short, prearranged messages. The sound signals used to warn of air, tank, and gas attacks usually are given in the signal operation instructions.

349. COMMUNICATION COORDINATION. The company communication system is part of the battalion system. The company installs, operates, and maintains its system as part of the over-all battalion communication plan. A pack-type radio set is netted with the battalion command net. In defensive situations and when time permits in attack situations, the battalion communication platoon in-

stalls wire from the battalion command post to the company command post.

350. COMMUNICATION ORDERS. The rifle company commander's order contains instructions for communication. Frequently, such instructions consist only of the location of the commander or of his command post. Other instructions relative to communication may be given in fragmentary form. Such instructions include the allotment within the company of the means of communication and the signal operation instructions of larger units that are applicable to the company. In the defense, these instructions include the final protective fires which may be called for by pyrotechnic signal. Platoon leaders acquaint all men with this signal and inform them of the location or locations from which it may be fired. Standing operating procedure may be used to simplify and abbreviate orders. Because of security reasons, the rifle company is not given the complete signal operation instructions. Pertinent information is extracted for the company by the battalion or a higher commander.

CHAPTER 10

ADMINISTRATION

Section I. PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION

351. GENERAL. The company is the basic unit in the army having administrative functions. The entire administrative system of the army, from squad to the Department of the Army, depends greatly on the initial actions of the company commander. Personnel administration within the company involves personnel management and record keeping and reporting.

a. *Personnel management* functions of the company commander are given in paragraphs 10 and 11.

b. *Record keeping and reporting* involve organizational and individual records and reports. Organizational records and reports pertaining to personnel are the morning report, duty roster, sick book, company punishment record, company correspondence file, and a file of regulations including Army Regulations, circulars, bulletins, and orders. Individual records and reports based upon these organizational records are furnished to the unit personnel section of the regiment. This provides the proper maintenance of each man's records, such as the service record, the soldier's qualifica-

tion card, and the pay roll. To assist him in the performance of these administrative functions, the company commander delegates the over-all supervision of administration to his executive officer. The company commander delegates the functions of record keeping and reporting to the unit administrative warrant officer and the first sergeant. The company commander signs or initials these records and reports as required, and he constantly verifies their accuracy to insure efficient administration in his unit.

Section II. SUPPLY

352. GENERAL. a. **Responsibility.** The company commander is responsible for all supplies and equipment issued to his unit. Although the system for accounting for these items may be informal in combat, the company commander sees that his company is completely equipped, that equipment is effectively used, and that equipment on hand is actually needed. He enforces supply discipline through constant care, supervision, maintenance, preservation, and conservation of all types of supplies and equipment.

b. **Supply discipline.** Good supply discipline promotes combat efficiency. It includes proper maintenance, salvage, vehicle recovery, evacuation of captured materiel, prevention of hoarding, and the indoctrination of his men with the importance of supply. Supply discipline is acquired only through training and enforcement by the officers and the noncommissioned officers of the unit. This training

stresses the proper use of food, clothing, weapons, fuel, and motor vehicles, and the practice of hygiene and sanitation. The equipment given to and carried by each man should be that which he actually needs. No individual should be permitted to throw away prescribed equipment, to use transportation unnecessarily, or to handle supplies carelessly or wastefully.

c. Duties of company administrative group. The company commander makes timely requests for supplies, distributes them to his men, and assists in the supply of attached units. He is assisted by the mess and supply personnel in supplying his unit. (For supply procedures within the infantry regiment, see FM 7-30.)

- (1) The *company mess personnel* draw rations, check them, and divide them into meals. The cooks prepare the meals and distribute them and water to the company.
- (2) The *company supply personnel* are the supply sergeant, the armorers, and an orderly. They request, draw, check, and issue all company supplies except rations and water. The armorers, in addition to their supply functions, make minor repairs on weapons and equipment. The orderly drives the company headquarters general utility vehicle. The normal duty post of the supply personnel is at the company supply point.

353. TRANSPORTATION. Transportation for supplies is provided by the rifle company's organic transportation, by a kitchen truck and trailer which is part of the regimental kitchen train, and by battalion-section vehicles of the regimental ammunition train. To centralize the control of these vehicles and to relieve company commanders of administrative detail, the kitchen and ammunition train vehicles are assigned organically to the battalion section of the regimental service company's service platoon. Regimental and battalion vehicles move supplies as far forward as practicable. The company's lighter vehicles and carrying parties move supplies the remaining distance to the troops.

354. FOOD AND WATER. a. *Rations* are issued to the company automatically on the basis of strength; however, in special situations, the company commander often submits an informal ration request for the required quantity of specified types of rations. Rations to be cooked are drawn from the regimental class I supply point and divided into meal lots at the company kitchen. Rations, such as the five-in-one, or the individual type, may be handled similarly, or they may be issued direct to troops by unit supply personnel.

b. The *company kitchen* may be established in the company area, in the battalion kitchen area, or in the regimental train bivouac. The kitchen is moved as far forward as is consistent with the situation. In some situations, it may be necessary for troops to prepare meals individually, by squads, or by platoons.

c. The *company mess location* is as near the troops to be fed as tactical conditions permit. The location should provide defilade from hostile flat trajectory fires and concealment from hostile observation. Consideration is given to vehicular routes and to the accessibility of the location to the troops. As many men as practicable are given water and hot food at mess locations, and others are fed by carrying parties.

d. *Distribution* is accomplished with available transportation. When the kitchen is not in the company area, kitchen trucks or organic company vehicles transport the prepared meal forward under regimental or battalion control to a release point where company guides meet their vehicles and guide them to the company mess location.

355. FUEL. a. The battalion S-4 keeps the companies informed of the location and the time of opening of the class III supply points. Gasoline and oil for company transportation are obtained by filling the empty tanks of the vehicles or by the exchange of empty 5-gallon gasoline drums for full ones at the class III supply points. Requisitions, either formal or informal, usually are not required.

b. Gasoline for kitchen ranges or cooking sets is obtained by exchanging 5-gallon gasoline drums at the class III supply point.

356. CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT. a. The company is issued clothing and equipment as authorized by T/A 21, T/O&E 7-17, and other directives. Replacement of clothing and equipment is obtained by informal requisition to the battalion S-4. He

notifies the company supply personnel when they may obtain needed supplies.

b. The informal requisition to replace lost or destroyed items such as radios, watches, or arms is accompanied by a certificate of loss or destruction, which is informal and states the circumstances of the loss or destruction.

c. Damaged equipment is evacuated and repaired or replaced. Equipment which cannot be repaired within the company is sent by the first available means to the battalion S-4. The battalion S-4 repairs and returns the item to the company, or procures and issues a replacement item to the company. If the item cannot be repaired within the regiment, the regimental S-4 replaces the item with a serviceable one. The battalion S-4 is notified of the location and the damage of all equipment which the company cannot evacuate to the rear.

357. AMMUNITION. a. The basic load of ammunition for a rifle company is the number of rounds by type carrier on the company's organic transportation. This is a fixed quantity of ammunition and is prescribed by the Department of the Army. Issues from the basic load are made to weapons crews and to the men. The basic load is maintained by drawing on the battalion section of the regimental ammunition train. The company commander is responsible for the availability and the adequate supply of ammunition for his platoons. Whenever the company is unable to draw enough ammunition to maintain its basic load, this fact is

reported to the battalion commander. Platoon leaders supervise the delivery of ammunition to the weapons and to the men. Leaders keep their commanders informed of the amount of ammunition on hand.

b. In most situations, each rifle company establishes a company ammunition supply point as close to the forward elements as enemy fire, defilade, and vehicular routes permit. From this supply point, ammunition is delivered to the men or weapons. The supply sergeant operates the company ammunition supply point.

c. As ammunition from basic loads is used, it is replaced by transferring and consolidating loads so that vehicles thus emptied may be dispatched to the battalion ammunition supply point for resupply. Vehicles dispatched for ammunition carry an informal request which states the amount, the type, and the caliber of ammunition needed. Battlefield recovery from casualties also is a source of ammunition replenishment.

d. During offensive combat, ammunition supply is mobile. Before entry into combat, the company commander may issue extra ammunition; the types and quantities depend on the tactical situation. Mobility is permitted by providing the company with only the amount of ammunition needed until a replenishment can be accomplished. Ammunition is replenished whenever needed, either directly from company vehicles, which are kept as close to the troops and weapons as the tactical situation permits, or by hand carry from this transportation. Vehicles dispatched to the battal-

ion ammunition supply point follow the route of ammunition advance so that the ammunition supply point may be found easily if it displaces forward.

e. During defensive combat, it is essential to have a continuity of fire; therefore, enough ammunition is available to every gun position. Normally, the company weapons carriers are under company control. The placing of ammunition on position is not a matter of routine. Ammunition to be placed on positions is determined by careful estimates of the amounts that will be expended before the time that replenishment can be expected. Based on a careful estimate of ammunition needs, the company commander issues instructions for ammunition to be placed at weapons positions. This must be enough to permit continual fire by the weapon. Basic loads are replenished immediately, and the amount placed at weapons is considered as expended. If the ammunition at weapon positions is not fired, it is picked up by the company, returned to the basic load, and, if necessary, reported to higher commanders as excess to the basic load. Basic loads are reduced to their normal level by firing excess amounts before they are replenished. If covered routes are available, the ammunition vehicles may move directly to the platoon defense areas, where the loads are distributed to gun positions or to each man. When conditions prohibit the movement of weapons carriers forward of the company supply point, the ammunition is distributed by hand carry from that point.

358. ROLLS. a. Rolls contain articles needed by the troops for their personal comfort. These include such articles as shelter halves, blankets, or sleeping bags. To avoid confusion and to aid delivery, rolls may be made up uniformly for all men, squads, or other small groups. Rolls usually are carried on the company general utility vehicle.

b. Rolls are delivered when the duration of the halt and the comfort of the troops warrant. During offensive combat, rolls may be sent forward with the supper and collected by the mess personnel after breakfast. In defensive situations, the rolls may be delivered and collected in the same manner, or they may be left with the men. The battalion supply officer supervises the delivery of rolls to companies and recovers them at the time prescribed by the battalion commander.

359. MISCELLANEOUS ADMINISTRATIVE MATTERS.

During combat, many administrative matters are deferred. When the company is in reserve or in a rest camp, these matters are completed under the supervision of the company commander.

a. **Bathing of men.** Normally, a division bath unit is available to the company in the regimental area.

b. **Replacement of clothing.** Except for the exchange of socks, it may be impracticable to issue clean clothing to companies in contact with the enemy; consequently, the company commander arranges with the battalion S-4 to furnish his men clean clothing when his company is in reserve or in a rest area.

c. **Repair and cleaning of clothing and equipment.**

When the company is in reserve or in a rest area, the company commander inspects his troops. He has them make minor repairs to their clothing and equipment. If laundry facilities are not available, the men wash their own clothing.

d. Burial of the dead. By checking with the regimental graves registration section, the company commander verifies that his dead are found, evacuated, and buried, and that their personal effects are collected and forwarded.

360. ORDERS. Supply matters in the company order may include the following:

a. Location of the company and the battalion ammunition supply points.

b. Route of ammunition advances (in attack).

c. Amount of ammunition to be placed on position.

d. Disposition of company vehicles.

e. Amount of field fortification material or infantry entrenching equipment to be available.

f. Plan for feeding.

g. Detailing of guides and hand carrying parties.

h. Delivery of rolls.

Section III. MEDICAL SERVICE

361. GENERAL. The rifle company commander is responsible for the functioning of medical service to provide for the health and sanitation of his command. This service is provided by Medical Department enlisted men from the battalion medical pla-

toon of the regimental medical company who are attached to the rifle company.

362. PERSONNEL AND DUTIES. The Medical Department enlisted men attached to the rifle company are called company aid men. They are attached to the company when it is on the march, in bivouac, or in combat. Their duties include the following:

- a. Administer emergency medical treatment.
- b. Direct walking wounded to the battalion aid station or previously arranged ambulance loading posts.
- c. Move those unable to walk to protected places, to await litter bearers or cross country ambulances.
- d. Keep the rifle company commander informed of the medical situation.
- e. Keep the battalion surgeon informed of the medical and tactical situations.
- f. Attach an emergency medical tag to the dead, when time and the tactical situation permit.
- g. Assist the company commander in supervising sanitation within the company area.

363. MEDICAL EVACUATION. The battalion medical platoon operates the battalion aid station and evacuates the sick and wounded to it. The battalion surgeon commands the platoon. Litter bearers or cross country ambulances accomplish the evacuation. The litter bearers and ambulance drivers also act as messengers, maintain contact with company aid men, and administer emergency medical

treatment to patients being evacuated to the battalion aid station. Cross country ambulances are used as far forward as the tactical situation permits. When these ambulances are unable to reach the casualties, litter bearers carry the seriously wounded to the battalion aid station or to ambulance loading posts.

364. ORDERS. The company order includes the location of the battalion aid station.

365. SANITATION AND PERSONAL HYGIENE. Unit commanders supervise the sanitation of their units and of the areas their units occupy. (See AR 40-205 and 40-210.) Medical Department personnel act as advisers in the technical aspects of sanitation. Each individual is responsible for the enforcement of personal sanitary measures to protect the health of other men and to closely check his own well-being. The care of feet is particularly important in cold and wet weather. Poor discipline regarding the care of feet may cause trench foot. When shoes and socks are wet and no replacement is available, the feet must be massaged to maintain the necessary circulation of blood, and wet socks wrung out twice a day. Leaders must exercise the strongest discipline to enforce these health precautions.

Section IV. MOTOR MAINTENANCE

366. RESPONSIBILITY. The company commander is responsible for the operation and maintenance of his motor equipment. He discharges this responsi-

bility by the selection of drivers and by personal observation and frequent inspection of vehicles, tools, and drivers.

367. DRIVERS. The company commander and his leaders direct and supervise the activities of the drivers. Each driver should be assigned to a definite vehicle and held responsible for its maintenance. Drivers use their vehicle tools to perform daily and weekly preventive maintenance services. These services include inspecting, cleaning, tightening, and the care of tools and accessories. The driver does not lubricate any part of the vehicle where overlubrication would result in damage. He does not tighten any part of the vehicle that involves an adjustment which should be made by a mechanic. Drivers accompany their vehicles and act as mechanic's helpers when maintenance is performed on the company or regimental level.

368. MAINTENANCE. a. *Company-level maintenance* on rifle-company vehicles is performed by the mechanics of the battalion headquarters company. It includes repairs, run-in tests, lubrication and adjustments, limited battlefield recovery, and overflow from driver's maintenance. The monthly preventive maintenance service is performed on the company level.

b. *Regimental-level maintenance* is performed by the maintenance section of the service company's service platoon. This section reinforces the maintenance performed on the company level, and it performs the semiannual preventive maintenance service.

CHAPTER 11

THE AIRBORNE RIFLE COMPANY

Section I. GENERAL

369. REFERENCES. For references on general discussion of airborne operations, data relative to troop movements by air, tactical doctrine and planning procedures for airborne operations, techniques of loading aircraft, and technical training doctrine for parachutists, see appendix VIII.

370. PURPOSE AND SCOPE. This chapter covers the tactical employment of the airborne rifle company in its primary mission of air assault. After it reorganizes following an airborne assault landing, the airborne rifle company operates tactically the same as the rifle company. Therefore, most of the tactical doctrine of the rifle company applies to the airborne rifle company's ground operations. This chapter emphasizes doctrine peculiar to the airborne rifle company—the differences which result from its arrival method in the combat area.

371. ROLE OF THE AIRBORNE RIFLE COMPANY. The airborne rifle company is trained and equipped to enter combat by parachute or glider. It normally uses the parachute. It can drop into unpre-

pared areas on any terrain that is relatively free from obstacles dangerous to a man. The company can fight immediately upon landing; however, it can fight most effectively after a time interval which permits it to recover all combat equipment and to assemble as a tactical unit under the control of its company commander. The company usually fights as a part of a battalion.

372. ORGANIZATION. The airborne rifle company has about the same organization as the rifle company. (See fig. 1.) For minor differences in men and equipment, see the current T/O&E.

373. EQUIPMENT. a. For ground combat, the airborne rifle company has practically the same equipment as the rifle company, but it requires special equipment to enter combat by parachutes; personnel parachutes, aerial delivery parachutes, and cargo parachutes are required. Individual equipment containers are used for the heavy or bulky items of equipment and supplies that are carried on the parachutist; each man carries his individual weapon. Aerial delivery containers are used to parachute the equipment and supplies not carried by the men. Weapons carriers can be dropped in special containers by cargo parachutes. Each parachutist carries as much equipment as possible so that the company is ready to fight soon after landing.

b. The airborne rifle company uses special signal devices to assist the rapid assembly of troops following the assault landing. For a detailed dis-

cussion of these signal devices, see the current field manual and current technical manuals.

c. The weapons carriers of the company can be delivered by parachute, glider, or assault transport. They may accompany the troops in the assault landing, or they may land later under the control of the regimental or higher commander. Vehicles not moved by air join the company when friendly ground forces are contacted. All air-landed vehicles are combat-loaded with supplies and equipment. During the initial phases of the airborne operation, transportation may be limited by a lack of aircraft or suitable landing areas. To increase mobility, maximum use is made of captured transportation.

d. All communication equipment in the airborne rifle company can be parachuted with the men; for example, each operator carries his radio to permit him to enter the radio net promptly on landing. Telephones and some wire are carried by parachutists, and wire in bulk usually is dropped in aerial delivery containers.

e. Company kitchens do not go with the company in the assault echelon, but are brought into the airhead under the control of higher commanders as soon as the situation permits. Until the company kitchens arrive, the troops use individual rations and mess equipment.

374. SUPPLY AND EVACUATION. a. The supply and evacuation of an airborne force is by air until a link-up is made with friendly forces. Air supply

and evacuation usually are coordinated by the division commander or by a higher commander.

b. Accompanying supplies are supplies of all classes which the airborne unit carries into the airhead. The amount depends on the initial combat requirements, the number and the allowable cargo load of the aircraft allotted to the company, and the logistical support to be given by higher units after the company lands. These supplies usually are enough for 48 to 72 hours of combat without a resupply. Therefore, accompanying supplies may exceed the amount the company actually carries with it in the ground attack. These additional supplies usually are recovered by battalion or regiment and placed in supply points.

c. Parachutists carry their own rations and the ammunition for their individual weapons. Ammunition for light crew-served weapons and limited amounts of ammunition for the heavier company weapons can be carried in equipment containers on the parachutist. Ammunition for these crew-served weapons also is dropped in aerial delivery containers. Upon landing, the weapons crew or other previously selected men promptly recover the equipment and supplies which the company needs to carry into combat.

d. Rolls carried by parachutists are kept small and light to keep the troops mobile after they land. Such items as toilet articles and extra socks are carried by the individual in accordance with regimental standard operating procedures.

e. The company aid men enter combat with the company. Litter bearers from the battalion medi-

cal platoon may be attached for the air movement, landing, and reorganization. Casualties are held at medical installations of higher units until evacuation is possible.

f. When the airborne rifle company reorganizes following the assault landing, its supply and evacuation become the same as the rifle company's.

375. SUPPORTING ARMS AND WEAPONS. a. **Artillery.** Light artillery landed by parachute, glider, or assault transport accompanies or closely follows the assault landing of the infantry troops. Forward observers land with their respective rifle companies. They keep abreast of the situation and are ready to direct artillery fires when their artillery units are in a firing position. When the airhead is established, medium artillery may be landed. The principles of field artillery employment generally apply within the restrictions of limited transportation and ammunition, decentralized control, and difficulty of reorganization after landing.

b. **Combat aviation.** Cooperating tactical aircraft give air protection during the air movement, neutralize targets in the objective area before the assault landing, and give close support to airborne units during the ground assault. During the initial stages of the attack, cooperating aircraft supplement artillery, anti-aircraft, and anti-tank weapons—which usually are limited in number. Combat aviation also supplements the striking power of assault troops which is weakened by the absence of friendly armor.

c. **Tanks.** Although the airborne division has no

organic tank units, it is normal to attach tank units to the division for sustained combat. The attachment of these units makes the airborne division equivalent to the infantry division in tank strength. Tank reinforcements usually join the airborne division when it contacts friendly forces after its airborne assault landing. Tanks attached to or supporting the airborne rifle company are used as prescribed in FM 17-32.

d. Regimental and battalion supporting weapons. Except for their lack of organic tanks, the airborne battalion and regiment have practically the same supporting weapons as the infantry battalion and regiment. As in all ground combat, the supporting weapons give close support to the rifle companies. During the initial stages of the ground attack, a shortage of weapons carriers limits the displacement of heavy supporting weapons and also limits the amount of ammunition at firing positions.

376. ANTI-AIRCRAFT SECURITY. For defense against an air attack, the airborne rifle company depends chiefly on passive measures. (See par. 12.) Anti-aircraft units attached to battalion or regiment give additional security. Cooperating aircraft maintain local air superiority.

377. ANTITANK DEFENSE. Airborne troops are particularly vulnerable to an enemy tank attack because of no friendly armor in the airhead. Initially, reliance is placed on antitank mines and rocket launchers. The divisional and regimental antitank weapons, which land with or soon after

the assault elements, give some of the antitank defense usually given by tanks. The antitank weapons and the antitank measures of the airborne rifle company in ground combat are practically the same as those of the rifle company. (See par. 13.)

Section II. PREPARATIONS FOR THE AIRBORNE ATTACK

378. GENERAL. a. Airborne operations require detailed planning at all levels. Plans which are coordinated in detail with participating troop carrier units include the selection of drop and landing zones, the allocation of aircraft, the air movement plan, and the marshaling plan.

b. For coordination, airborne commanders usually participate in the detailed planning of the next higher unit. The security requirements determine the time the airborne rifle company commander is informed of an airborne mission in which his company will participate. Until the units are sealed in marshaling camps, operational information is given only to those who need it to perform their duties. The briefing plan of the division or higher commander indicates when the unit commanders will receive portions of the operations plan. The company commander usually receives a warning order at least one week before the operation.

c. For an airborne attack, the company does its preliminary planning and preparing at its base camp before moving to the marshaling camp. It makes final plans and preparations in a marshaling camp near the departure airfield. A base camp

near the departure airfield may serve also as the marshaling camp.

d. Planning is continuous until the operation is over. The company commander amplifies or changes his plans to meet changes in the situation or in the plans of higher commanders.

e. The company commander usually receives the warning order while in the base camp. The warning order may be in the form of the battalion operations plan. Under exceptionally strict security requirements, the company commander may receive only general information until after the company is sealed in a marshaling camp.

379. BATTALION COMMANDER'S ORDERS. The battalion order gives the company its mission and designates the supporting and attached units. If the company is an assault company, it is given a definite terrain objective or a series of objectives, a zone of action, a direction of attack, a line of departure or attack position, and the time or conditions to begin the attack. The battalion plans and orders also include—

a. Information of the enemy and the terrain in the area of operations.

b. Location of drop zones or landing zones for the battalion.

c. Plan for reorganization after landing. This includes the location of company assembly areas, the assembly aids, the method of collecting stragglers, reports, and security measures.

d. Data on the air movement. This includes the location of the departure airfield; allocation of air-

craft; composition of the aircraft serials; and the time for the loading, the take-off, and the arrival at the destination.

e. Data on marshaling. This includes the location of the marshaling camp, the time and method of movement to it, and the activities inside it; liaison with troop carrier units; and plans for loading aircraft. Data on marshaling may be in a separate order if security requires withholding the airborne mission until arrival in the marshaling camp.

f. Communication within the battalion.

g. Plan for reconnaissance after the landing.

h. Coordination with adjacent units.

i. Antiaircraft and antitank security measures taken on landing and during the attack.

j. Instruction to glider pilots attached to the battalion on landings.

k. Recognition between airborne units and the forces making the ground link-up, when applicable.

l. Details of air-sea rescue, when applicable.

m. Details of time and place of arrival and the use of troops and equipment in the follow-up echelon, when applicable.

n. Organization of and instructions to the rear echelon.

o. Supply and evacuation plan, including the method of recovering supplies and special measures for air resupply and air evacuation.

p. Alternate plans for accomplishing the mission.

380. ORGANIZATION FOR THE ATTACK. a. For the airborne assault, the company adjusts its or-

ganization to meet the requirements of the battalion plans and orders. The company may be reinforced, particularly if it is to reorganize in a separate assembly area or if it is to go on a separate mission after landing. Attachments are executed before the move to the marshaling camp or immediately after arrival in it. This gives the company commander time to coordinate the use of his attached units and to control the preparations for the air movement. In organizing for combat, the company may be divided into assault, follow-up, and rear echelons.

b. The *assault echelon* of the company consists of the troops and equipment initially landed by parachute or glider to seize the company objective. The entire airborne rifle company, with its organic weapons and transportation, can enter combat by parachute, glider, or assault transport; however, it may be necessary to leave some personnel and equipment behind during the assault landing.

c. The *follow-up echelon* is the combat portion of the company which is not included in the assault echelon because of an aircraft shortage or because of the situation. It joins the assault echelon as soon as possible after the airhead is established or after a link-up is made between the assault echelon and friendly ground forces.

d. When weapons carriers, company kitchens, organic trucks, trailers, and their operating personnel cannot be included in the assault echelon or later landings of the assault, they should be included in the follow-up echelon.

e. The *rear echelon* includes any portion of the company not needed for combat. It remains behind to do administrative work which cannot be done efficiently in the combat area. This echelon is kept as small as possible. Its organization and functions usually are prescribed by the battalion commander or by a higher commander. The rear echelon may include guards for organizational property, personnel temporarily disqualified physically for airborne assault landings, and, in some instances, the company kitchens and mess personnel. The rear echelon normally operates under regimental or higher control.

381. RECONNAISSANCE. a. The company commander's reconnaissance before the airborne assault landing ordinarily is limited to a study of maps, terrain models, and photographs of the objective area. For other information of the enemy and the terrain, he relies on higher commanders. He seeks the following information on which to base his attack plans:

- (1) Nature of the drop zone, or landing zone if landing in gliders.
- (2) Nature of his assembly area.
- (3) Location of critical points or areas held by the enemy in or near his zone of action.
- (4) Location and types of obstacles in his zone of action.
- (5) Location of favorable routes of approach to the company objective.

b. The company commander plans his after-

landing reconnaissance before he begins the air movement.

382. MARSHALING CAMP. a. Marshaling is the process in which units participating in an airborne operation move to temporary camps at or near departure airfields, complete their combat preparations, and load into aircraft ready for departure.

b. A marshaling camp is a sealed area for the final preparation of troops for combat. Communications zone personnel construct, maintain, and operate this camp. During the marshaling, they relieve participating airborne units of as many administrative problems as possible. For secrecy, the camp is inclosed by wire or other obstacles. Airborne units enter marshaling camps for close liaison with troop carrier units, for briefing troops, for secrecy, and for control of their final preparations for the air movement. The company marshals in one camp as a part of the battalion or higher unit. The company normally has 4 days in the marshaling camp to—

- (1) Brief the troops.
- (2) Establish liaison with troop carrier units transporting the company.
- (3) Conduct a final equipment inspection.
- (4) Complete procurement of supplies and equipment.
- (5) Issue supplies and special items of equipment.
- (6) Complete the packing of aerial delivery containers.

- (7) Complete operational and administrative planning for the ground attack.
- (8) Combat load aerial delivery containers and other equipment and supplies into the aircraft.

383. BRIEFING. a. The troops are not briefed until they are sealed in the marshaling camp, whereupon they are briefed in exact detail. Briefing aids are used, including low-altitude photos of the operations area, large-scale maps showing enemy defenses and obstacles, and terrain models such as rubber relief maps and sand tables.

b. Platoon leaders brief their troops to let each man know enough of the platoon and company plan to perform his duties. Troops and leaders also are briefed on the plans of battalion and higher units so that, in case of inaccurate landings or unexpected enemy resistance during the landing and reorganization, they can conduct themselves according to the over-all plans of the higher units. Forward observers and attached units are included in the company briefing. Glider pilots are briefed with the troops they transport, since they may have to fight with them. All troops are briefed on alternate plans for accomplishing the company mission.

c. In briefing the troops, the reorganization plan is stressed particularly because, upon landing, each man's ability to orient himself on the ground and to locate the assembly area is an important factor in regaining command control of the troops.

384. LOADING—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS. a.

Loading troops, equipment, and supplies into aircraft is a command responsibility. Aircraft loading is planned in great detail because of the aircraft characteristics and the restrictions for safety in flight. The company loading plan is based on the battalion loading plan. Loading is supervised by troop carrier representatives, usually the pilots, who have final decision on matters affecting their aircraft.

b. *Stations* is the hour the aircraft must be completely combat loaded, with all airborne and troop carrier personnel in their places ready for the take-off.

385. LOADING FORMS. a.

The loading forms used by the company are the air loading table and the flight manifest. The *air loading table* is a data sheet which contains general information of the load that actually goes into each aircraft. The form usually is prepared by the company commander and forwarded to battalion. When approved, this form is the basis for preparing flight manifests.

b. The *flight manifest* is an exact record by name, rank, and serial number of the personnel in each aircraft. It also describes the loaded equipment and supplies other than those carried on the men. In addition, it shows the load computations, the number of the aircraft, and other pertinent information. The airborne commander in each aircraft is responsible for preparing the flight manifest; however, the company commander usually

prepares the form for all personnel and equipment in his unit. A separate copy of the form is made for each aircraft. The number of copies and their distribution is prescribed by higher commanders. (For a discussion and samples of these forms, see FM 71-30.)

386. AIRCRAFT PARKING DIAGRAM. a. The company commander receives an aircraft parking diagram from the battalion commander. This is a diagram of the departure airfield. It shows the exact location and number of each aircraft allotted to the company. All aircraft are marked, usually by chalk on both sides of the fuselage, with numbers corresponding to the aircraft numbers on the flight manifests. For night loading, individual aircraft or parking sites may be identified by lights or luminous markers. Easily visible marking symbols are used to speed identification and loading and to reduce confusion on the airfield.

b. The aircraft parking diagram also shows the location of the reserve aircraft kept at the departure airfield to replace last-minute failures. The loading plan is flexible, and alternate plans are prepared to reload on a priority basis in case of a last-minute shortage of aircraft.

387. LOADING EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES. Equipment and supplies not carried on the men are loaded several hours before stations time. The men assigned to ride in an aircraft load the equipment into that aircraft. Air crews may assist in loading. The troop carrier units provide loading aids such

as ramps, cranes, load spreaders, and tie-down equipment. The company commander determines the adequacy of these aids. Transportation coordination to and from the departure airfield and the loading schedule are made by the battalion or higher commander. The company commander supervises the loading of equipment and supplies for his company and sees that every load is safely balanced and securely lashed.

388. LOADING PERSONNEL. a. The movement from the marshaling camp to the departure airfield is planned and closely supervised to get the troops into the right aircraft before stations time. This movement usually is planned and coordinated by the battalion or higher commander. Before the movement, the men are organized into aircraft load groups, and the airborne commander in each aircraft supervises and controls his load group. Routes to the airfield are reconnoitered and guides are posted to prevent confusion or delay. Before the march, the aircraft load commanders are conducted on a reconnaissance of the route and the aircraft parking area. Upon arrival at the aircraft parking area, groups move to their assigned airplanes or gliders and prepare to load.

b. In a motor march, personnel parachutes may accompany the men. In a foot march, personnel parachutes are dumped at the aircraft before the troops arrive. Movement on the airfield is controlled by the air force. Ground traffic is strictly controlled on runways and taxi strips to prevent confusion and accidents. Before entering the air-

craft, troops and equipment are given a final inspection by load commanders. Particular attention is given to the parachutes, and extra parachutes are kept available to replace last-minute defectives. The company commander supervises the loading of his company.

c. The following principles apply in loading aircraft for airborne operations:

- (1) Enough men ride in each glider to unlash and unload the glider at the destination. This prevents confusion after the landing and permits the rapid assembly and recovery of equipment.
- (2) Commanders strive for tactical unity in loading. Tactical unity of squad and platoons usually can be achieved in individual aircraft. The company is preferably intact in a single serial. Supporting weapons and ammunition accompany their crews.
- (3) Key men and critical equipment are distributed throughout several aircraft. Thus, the loss of any one aircraft does not cause excessive casualties to these men or excessive loss of such equipment.

Section III. AIR MOVEMENT, LANDING, AND REORGANIZATION

389. AIR MOVEMENT. The air movement from the departure airfield to the drop or landing zones is controlled by the commander of the troop carrier unit which transports the airborne units. During

this movement, the company commander relinquishes the tactical control of his troops and does not regain it until after the landing. The air movement is made according to the battalion or regimental air movement table.

390. AIR MOVEMENT TABLE. a. The air movement table is a form prepared by the ground force commander in coordination with the air force commander. It assigns aircraft to the airborne units, designates the number and type of aircraft in each serial, and specifies the departure area, time of loading, time of take-off, and other pertinent data. The air movement table of commanders down to battalion is based on that of the next higher unit. The battalion may not prepare an air movement table. (For discussion and samples, see FM 71-30).

b. Pathfinder serials precede the main troop carrier column. They drop parachute pathfinder teams who operate navigational aids. Parachute serials normally precede glider serials. This permits the parachutists to capture and clear the landing zones. As the parachute serials approach the drop zone, the pilots warn the troops in time for them to make last-minute equipment inspections and to prepare for exit. Before crossing the drop zone, the air column reduces speed. The drop is made on the pilot's signal.

391. ASSAULT LANDING. a. The company usually lands as close as possible to the objective to prevent exhaustion of the troops from carrying heavy

combat loads or manhandling heavy equipment. Greater surprise is gained by landing directly on the objective; however, this increases the problems of reorganization and control when the objective is held by the enemy.

b. The airborne rifle company usually drops on a single drop zone as part of the battalion. The parachutists carry as much equipment as possible. This increases their readiness for action and reduces the assembly time. Additional equipment and supplies are dropped in separate containers. (See par. 374.) During descent and upon landing, each parachutist orients himself. Immediately upon landing, he removes his parachute and checks his weapons and equipment. The company can be dropped in approximately one minute. Ground dispersion in landing depends on the type and formation of airplanes, the jumping altitude, the wind, and the skill of the pilots and parachutists.

c. When a company lands by glider, it usually lands on a single landing zone as part of the battalion. The time required for landing the company in gliders depends on the aircraft type, altitude, number, speed, and formation, the skill of the glider pilots, the terrain, and the landing characteristics of the gliders. The ground dispersion of the gliders inside a landing zone depends on the number of gliders, the obstacles to landing, the landing characteristics of the gliders, and the skill of their pilots. Assault transports have the same relative characteristics as gliders.

d. After landing, the glider pilots come under the command of the ground force commander. Up-

on landing, personnel in the glider promptly unload all equipment and supplies.

e. When the company enters combat by parachute, weapons carriers may land by glider. When this is the case, they may land on the drop zone used by the company and battalion—after the drop zone is cleared of personnel and equipment that would obstruct glider landings. The weapons carriers may land in separate landing zones under the control of the regimental or higher commander.

392. REORGANIZATION. Reorganization after an airborne landing consists of collecting equipment, assembling the tactical units, and regaining command control of the units. During the reorganization, the company is extremely vulnerable to enemy ground attack; therefore, this critical phase is executed with all possible speed—even to the extent of limiting security. The company reorganizes according to a prearranged plan. It uses predesignated assembly areas, assembly aids, and identification markings for personnel and equipment. Pathfinder teams already on the drop zone aid in the assembly of troops.

393. ASSEMBLY AREA. The company assembly area is designated by the battalion commander before the drop. It usually is a part of the battalion assembly area unless the company has an independent mission. Alternate plans for reorganization are prepared in case enemy action denies the selected assembly areas. The company assembly area is as near the drop zone as practicable. For

daylight landings, it provides cover and concealment. For night landings, the assembly area may be located on the drop or landing zone. It should be free of enemy troops and small-arms fire, and near favorable routes of approach to the objective. Good assembly areas are identified easily on the ground by woods, roads, railroads, hills, or other prominent landmarks. An easily identified landmark serves as a reference point by which the assembly area may be located, using specific distance and direction.

394. ASSEMBLY AIDS. Assembly areas are identified further by assembly aids installed by designated men immediately after the landing. For a daylight assembly, these aids may be flags, smoke, flares, panels, and special electronic devices. For a night assembly, the aids may be flares, lights, fluorescent panels, white tape, sound, and special infrared and electronic devices. Battalion or regimental personnel usually install these assembly aids. When the company has a separate assembly area, it may establish its own assembly aids. Pathfinder teams are equipped with aids and can identify assembly areas before the troops land.

395. CONTROL POINT. To direct the troops to their unit areas, a control point is established by battalion or regiment in or near the assembly area. The control point is identified by assembly aids and must be located easily. Predesignated guides from the company report to the battalion or regimental control point immediately after landing to

assist in directing the company to its area. The company also establishes a company control point in the company assembly area; and the platoon usually establishes a platoon control point in the platoon area. Guides from the platoon are stationed at the company control point. For night assembly, company control points may be established on the drop or landing zone.

396. IDENTIFICATION OF PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT. Positive, rapid identification of troops and equipment contributes greatly to the speed and precision of the reorganization. Personnel of various units wear distinctive markings. For example, colored cloth patches may be worn on headgear until assembly is complete. Officers and other key personnel wear additional distinctive markings. Aerial delivery containers are marked in a simple, easily recognizable manner so they can be identified readily by the unit to which they belong. Luminous markers or colored lights may be used in night landings. Aerial delivery containers are marked to identify the contents. Gliders and assault transports may be marked to identify the type of equipment they carry and the unit to which that equipment belongs. The airborne division usually standardizes the marking of its personnel and equipment. Recognition aids must be unintelligible to the enemy.

397. ASSEMBLY. a. Using assembly aids according to prearranged plans, parachutists assemble initially by plane loads right on the drop zone itself.

They check personnel and equipment. The groups then move directly to the control point, carrying with them the equipment needed for the attack. When they reach the control point, they are directed to their respective assembly areas.

b. Troops landed by glider or assault transport promptly unload and move by aircraft loads directly to their assembly areas. Pilots accompany their loads to the assembly area. There they are organized into tactical units under their own officers. They pass to regimental or higher unit control as soon as the situation permits.

398. SECURITY. The first parachute elements to land usually have security missions which include rapidly gaining and maintaining the security of the drop zone, and protecting the assembly of other units. All commanders, however, are responsible for their own security during reorganization, regardless of the security provided by higher units. The size of the security force depends on the expected enemy situation and the terrain, with particular emphasis on the enemy routes of approach. A rifle company may be assigned such a security mission. Having assembled on the drop zone, the security force elements move out on the mission. This lets security groups reach their assigned areas in minimum time. Any enemy troops on or near the drop zone are engaged by the nearest parachute troops upon landing.

399. COMMUNICATION. To aid command control and to speed up reorganization, radio nets are

opened upon landing. Until assembly is complete, platoons and attached units periodically report their status in personnel and equipment, and the company sends similar reports to battalion. Wire normally is not laid during the reorganization. Messengers may be exchanged in the assembly area.

400. SEPARATED PERSONNEL. Troops landed in wrong areas assemble rapidly under the senior officer or noncommissioned officer present. He establishes contact with their respective headquarters as soon as possible. Lacking other orders, such groups direct their efforts toward accomplishing the general mission. Individual stragglers join the nearest unit and rejoin their own units as soon as the situation permits.

401. RECONNAISSANCE. Ground reconnaissance begins during the reorganization. Patrols are sent to reconnoiter the objective and routes to it, and to seek information of the enemy. The company commander makes changes in platoon missions as indicated by the ground reconnaissance, the disposition of his units, and the enemy situation.

402. COMPLETION OF REORGANIZATION. The company's reorganization is complete when its units are assembled and command and fire control communication channels are established. It then is ready to accomplish its ground mission. Because of inaccurate landings, enemy action, or excessive scattering, the company may start the ground at-

tack before completing its assembly. The decision to do this usually is made by the battalion or higher commander. In the absence of other orders, the company commander decides if enough of his company is assembled to accomplish his mission.

Section IV. ACCOMPLISHMENT OF GROUND MISSION

403. MOVEMENT TO OBJECTIVE. a. The assault company moves on its missions when reorganized or when ordered by the battalion commander. The company commander moves his platoons as rapidly as possible, capitalizing on surprise.

b. A line of departure, when used, is designated according to standard doctrine for any ground combat (see par. 177). Lack of detailed enemy information and lack of ground reconnaissance before the landing may make it difficult to select a suitable line of departure. The speed with which the company moves toward the objective frequently prevents a formal deployment along a previously selected line of departure. Company assembly areas may serve as attack positions from which assault companies move out in attack formations. When the objective is a considerable distance from the assembly area and the enemy resistance is expected to be light, assault companies or battalions leave the assembly area in an approach march formation with patrols protecting the flanks and the rear. Adjacent units are contacted to secure information of the enemy and the terrain.

404. CONDUCT OF THE ATTACK. a. The principles for the rifle company in the attack, as prescribed in chapter 7, apply to the airborne rifle company. However, limitations imposed by an airborne assault require all airborne commanders to consider, particularly during the initial stages of the attack, the following:

- (1) Possibility of combat immediately following the landing, with the resulting difficulties of control and reconnaissance.
- (2) Lack of tanks.
- (3) Lack of medium and heavy artillery support.
- (4) Exposure to a counterattack on the flanks and rear.
- (5) Limited ammunition and other supplies.
- (6) Limited transportation.
- (7) Possible lack of reserves.
- (8) Difficulty of control in fast-moving or obscure situations.
- (9) Inability to assemble quickly all or most of their units, because of enemy action or inaccurate landings.

b. The platoons attack according to the company plan or as the plan is modified by the company commander after landing. Changes in the original attack plans are transmitted personally, by radio, or by messenger. The company commander moves to where he best can coordinate and influence the action of his company.

c. The initial stages of the attack are marked by the aggressive action of platoons and squads. These units quickly seize critical points and de-

stroy organized resistance before the enemy recovers from the surprise of the assault landing.

d. Enemy information available before the landing may not have disclosed strong enemy positions short of the objective, thus requiring attacks not previously planned. Platoon and squad leaders direct aggressive local actions to meet unexpected situations. The company commander keeps the attack moving rapidly forward despite unexpected enemy opposition. He accomplishes this by his presence and example in critical areas, by shifting supporting fires, by modifying his scheme of maneuver, and by using his support.

e. Organic and attached antitank weapons cover approaches favorable to enemy armor. They are prepared for all-around defense. The use of the company's antitank weapons is coordinated with those of the battalion to prevent unnecessary duplication and to cover all favorable tank approaches. Company antitank weapons may be attached to platoons or to security patrols, or they may be kept under company control.

f. As in any attack, supporting weapons give continuous close support to the assault echelon. They also are prepared to fire on dangerous approaches into the flanks and rear. Artillery and 81-mm mortar observers move with the company to coordinate and adjust the fires requested by the company commander. The 60-mm mortar observers accompany each assault platoon. To simplify control during the landing, the reorganization, and the initial attack, battalion supporting weapons may be attached to the company for these

periods, and company supporting weapons may be attached to assault platoons.

g. A lack of weapons carriers delays the displacement of supporting weapons and also may require strict economy of ammunition. When supporting weapons and ammunition must be hand carried a considerable distance, additional ammunition bearers are provided.

h. The decision to hold out a support in the initial attack depends on many considerations: the width of the company zone, the distance to the initial objective, the size of the initial objective, the anticipated enemy opposition, the security to flanks and rear provided by the battalion commander, the size, location, and mission of the battalion reserves, and whether it is a day or night attack. When the company commander holds out a support at the start of the attack, he keeps it close enough to the assault echelon to permit its prompt use to maintain the momentum of the attack. The support is used preferably as a complete unit; however, the company commander does not hesitate to sacrifice its tactical unity to repulse counterattacks from the flanks or rear, to exploit a local success, or to speed up the accomplishment of his mission.

i. The absence of ground reconnaissance before the landing and the lack of detailed enemy information requires the company commander constantly to keep informed of the situation. Changes in the situation and new information of the enemy and the terrain are reported promptly to the battalion commander and disseminated to platoon leaders, to company supporting weapons personnel,

and to forward observers. The company commander also informs his security groups of changes in the situation, and he makes necessary adjustments in their dispositions.

405. ASSAULT. When the company launches its assault, usual attack doctrine applies. (See par. 191.) Unexpected situations may result in more or less independent attacks by one or more platoons, each striving to reach the objective and accomplish the company mission. In this case, a platoon arriving within assaulting distance of the objective arranges for the lifting of fires and for the assault signal. Such arrangements are coordinated through the company commander when possible; otherwise, the platoon leaders depend on the forward observers in their areas. The company commander and platoon leaders press the assault with all possible speed and vigor. They capitalize on the surprise gained in the landing, and on the rapidity of the attack.

406. REORGANIZATION. The airborne rifle company reorganizes on the initial objective according to the doctrine prescribed for the rifle company. (See par. 192.) Battalion supporting weapons attached for the landing and the initial attack may revert to battalion control; similarly, company supporting weapons attached to the rifle platoons may return to company control. Security is established against enemy counterattacks from the flanks and rear. Reorganization on the initial objective is accomplished quickly to permit the attack to continue exploiting surprise.

407. CONTINUATION OF THE ATTACK. After capturing the initial objective, the assault company continues the attack according to the battalion plan. The attack continues until the airhead is established. Combat during this phase follows the doctrine outlined in chapter 7—within the airborne limitations on equipment, supplies, and supporting arms and weapons.

408. RESERVE COMPANY IN ATTACK. The doctrine of chapter 7 also applies to the reserve airborne rifle company. The reserve company commander is restricted in planning possible missions by the lack of detailed enemy information and ground reconnaissance before the assault landing. He therefore starts his ground reconnaissance promptly after landing. He gives particular emphasis to plans for protecting exposed flanks and the rear of the battalion. He also is prepared to take over the mission of either assault company.

409. DEFENSE. a. Defense of an airhead is based on three prearranged lines:

- (1) The *reconnaissance and security line*, which marks the outer limit of the airhead. It corresponds to the covering force or outposts of any defense.
- (2) The *airhead line*, which is inside the reconnaissance and security line. It is occupied and organized according to the principles of defense on a wide front, which are stated in paragraph 309.
- (3) The *main line of resistance*, which is in-

side the airhead line. This line must be held if the mission of the larger force is to be accomplished. In the defense it is occupied only as a last resort. It is maintained according to the principles of position defense.

b. When the company captures its final objective, which usually is the part of the airhead line in its zone of action, it normally reverts to the defense. The extent to which the airhead line actually is occupied and organized is determined by the mission of the battalion or larger unit, the enemy capabilities, and the terrain. The company usually is given a wide sector on the airhead line. Its conduct of the defense follows the defensive doctrine in paragraphs 267-344.

410. SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS. The airhead phase of ground combat ends with the link-up with friendly ground forces at which time the airborne units may remain in sustained ground combat or be relieved.

APPENDIX I

RIFLE COMPANY ORDERS FOR ATTACK AND DEFENSE

Section I. ATTACK

1. **GENERAL SITUATION.** a. Information of the enemy to include—

- Composition.
- Location.
- Strength.
- Identification.

b. Information of friendly troops to include mission and location of—

- Next higher unit.
- Adjacent units.
- Supporting units.
- Covering forces.

2. **MISSION.** a. Statement of the task to be accomplished by the company.

b. Details of coordination to include—

- Time of attack.
- Frontage.
- Direction of attack.
- Line of departure.
- Formation.

3. TASKS FOR LOWER UNITS (TACTICAL INSTRUCTIONS). a. These tasks are given under as many lettered subparagraphs as may be necessary, assigning one paragraph to each platoon and attached units in a sequence which designates the forward elements first. The instructions given include—

Attachment to each platoon, if any.

Mission (objective).

Frontage of attack.

Direction of attack.

Reorganization on the objective.

b. Tactical instructions or information (except signal instructions) common to two or more units, or to the entire company, not covered elsewhere in paragraph 3 of the order. The instructions include—

Security measures.

Special measures for control and coordination.

4. ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICAL MATTERS. Instructions of immediate importance to tactical units concerning personnel, supply, and evacuation which are required for the operation. These include—

Arrangements for feeding.

Amount of ammunition to be carried.

Battalion ammunition supply point and route of ammunition advance.

Disposition of vehicles.

Location of battalion aid station.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL MATTERS. a. Orders relative to the use of communication means to include—

Radio.

Wire.

Pyrotechnics.

Signal security.

b. Command posts to include—

Location of battalion command post.

Location of company command post or where messages will be sent.

Tentative subsequent location of the company commander during the attack.

c. Axis of signal communication, which is indicated by subsequent tentative command post locations.

Section II. DEFENSE

1. GENERAL SITUATION. a. Information of the enemy to include—

Composition.

Location.

Movements.

Strength.

Identification.

Direction from which the enemy attack is expected.

Time when the enemy attack is expected.

b. Information of friendly troops to include mission and location of—

Next higher unit.

Adjacent units.
Supporting units.
Security forces.

2. MISSION. a. Statement of the tasks to be accomplished by the company.

b. Details of coordination to include—

Formation.

Boundaries.

General trace of the main line of resistance.

Limiting points.

3. TASKS FOR LOWER UNITS (TACTICAL INSTRUCTIONS). a. These tasks are given under as many lettered subparagraphs as may be necessary, assigning one subparagraph to each platoon and attached unit in a sequence which designates the forward elements first. The instructions include—

Areas and missions of each rifle platoon.

Location and missions of the 60-mm mortars, 57-mm rifles, and any additional weapons attached to the company.

Fire control, to include details relative to calling for final protective fires.

b. Tactical instructions (except signal instructions) common to two or more units, or to the entire company, not covered elsewhere in paragraph 3 of the order. The instructions given include—

Security measures.

Organization of ground to include type of emplacements and priorities of work.

Location of mine fields and obstacles.

4. ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICAL MATTERS.

Instructions to tactical units concerning personnel, supply, evacuation, and traffic details which are required for the operation. These include—

Arrangements for feeding.

Amount of ammunition to be placed on position.

Battalion ammunition supply point and arrangements for distribution.

Disposition of vehicles.

Location of battalion aid station and company aid men.

Sanitation measures.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL MATTERS. a. Orders relative to the use of communication means to include—

Radio.

Wire.

Pyrotechnics.

Signal security.

b. Command posts to include —

Location of company and platoon command posts.

Alternate locations.

APPENDIX II

COMBAT FORMATIONS

Section I. GENERAL

1. PURPOSE AND SCOPE. This appendix is a guide for the rifle company commander, platoon leaders, and squad leaders in the training of the squad and the platoon in combat formations. It covers the various types of squad and platoon formations and prescribes a uniform method of conducting drill in these formations over open ground and varied terrain. The formations are designed specifically for the rifle squad and platoon as organized under the current T/O&E 7-17. (For tactical uses of the combat formations, see paragraphs 56 and 120.)

2. TRAINING. The initial training in squad and platoon combat formations is conducted on open terrain such as a parade ground. As soon as men and units become proficient in assuming the formations, the drill is conducted on varied terrain to get practical training in the application of the formations to the terrain. After completing the training outlined above, the units take part in tactical exercises involving an imaginary or a simulated enemy.

Section II. RIFLE SQUAD

1. ORGANIZATION. The rifle squad consists of the squad leader, No. 1; five riflemen, Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6; an automatic rifleman, No. 7; an assistant automatic rifleman, No. 8; and an assistant squad leader, No. 9. The automatic rifleman and his assistant, No. 7 and No. 8, are referred to as the AR team.

Note. The weapons squad consists of the squad leader, No. 1; a light machine gun team consisting of the gunner, No. 2; assistant gunner, No. 3; two ammunition bearers, No. 4 and No. 5; and a rocket launcher team consisting of the gunner, No. 6; assistant gunner, No. 7; two ammunition bearers, No. 8 and No. 9. The weapons squad may conduct drill in combat formations similar to the rifle squad. When moving as a part of the rifle platoon, the weapons squad usually moves in a march column formation (par. 4) this section.

2. CONDUCT OF DRILL. The instruction in combat drill is conducted at ease. It stresses precision and discipline. The initial training is conducted at a walk. As soon as men understand the formation, the training speed is increased progressively until the movements are executed at a run. For drill purposes, the normal interval between men is approximately 5 paces; however, this distance may be varied. In the initial stages of instruction, the squad leader gives oral commands accompanied by the appropriate arm-and-hand signals (app. III). Duties within the squad should be rotated often to promote interest and to teach each man the entire drill. When executing movements, the rifle and automatic rifle are carried at port arms.

When the squad is halted, rifles are brought to order arms and the automatic rifle to sling arms, and all men remain at ease. The squad leader may leave his normal position in the formation and go where he best can control his unit. Men of the squad base their positions and movements on the number 2 man unless they are directed otherwise by the squad leader.

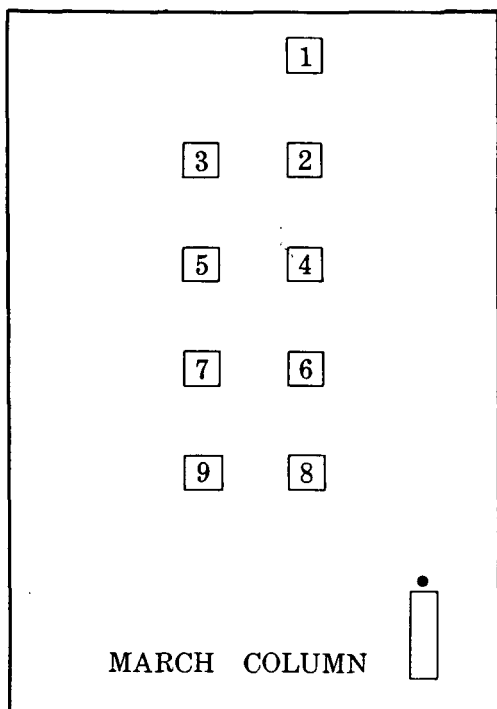
3. OBSERVATION AND CONTROL. The squad always provides observation to the front, flanks, and rear. When halted, men face and observe in the directions indicated in figure 73 ② and ③. While moving, men observe in the same direction. The squad leader controls his squad by oral commands or arm-and-hand signals (app. III). The men often look toward the squad leader for instructions.

4. MARCH COLUMN. To form march column, the squad leader commands and signals: 1. MARCH COLUMN, 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, the squad forms as shown in figure 73 ①.

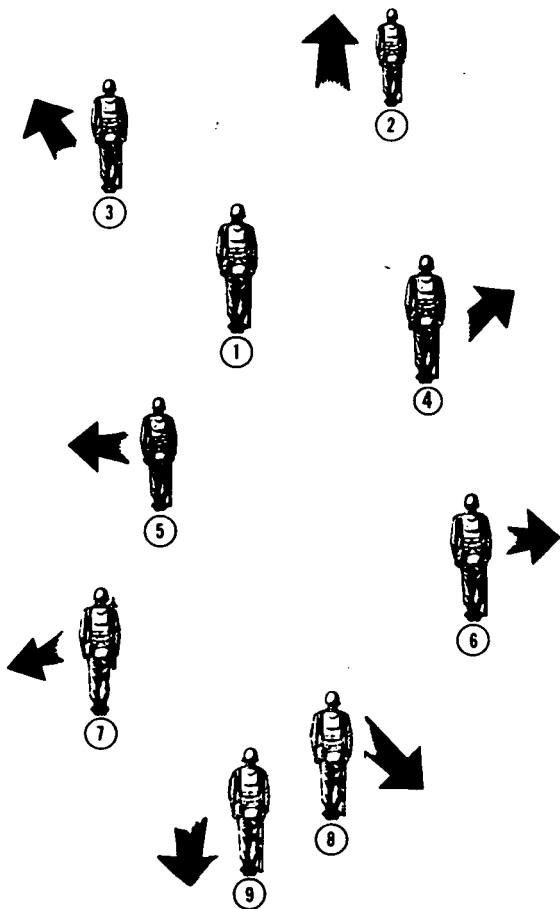
5. SQUAD COLUMN. To form squad column, the squad leader commands and signals: 1. SQUAD COLUMN, 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, No. 2 man moves forward 30 paces and the other men take positions as shown in figure 73 ②. In both squad column and squad diamond formations, the even-numbered men move to the right and the odd-numbered men move to the left of the squad leader.

6. **SQUAD DIAMOND.** To form squad diamond, the squad leader commands and signals: 1. SQUAD DIAMOND, 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, No. 2 man moves forward 15 paces and other men take positions as shown in figure 73 ③.

7. **AS SKIRMISHERS.** To form as skirmishers, the squad leader commands and signals: 1. AS



①
Figure 73. Squad formations.



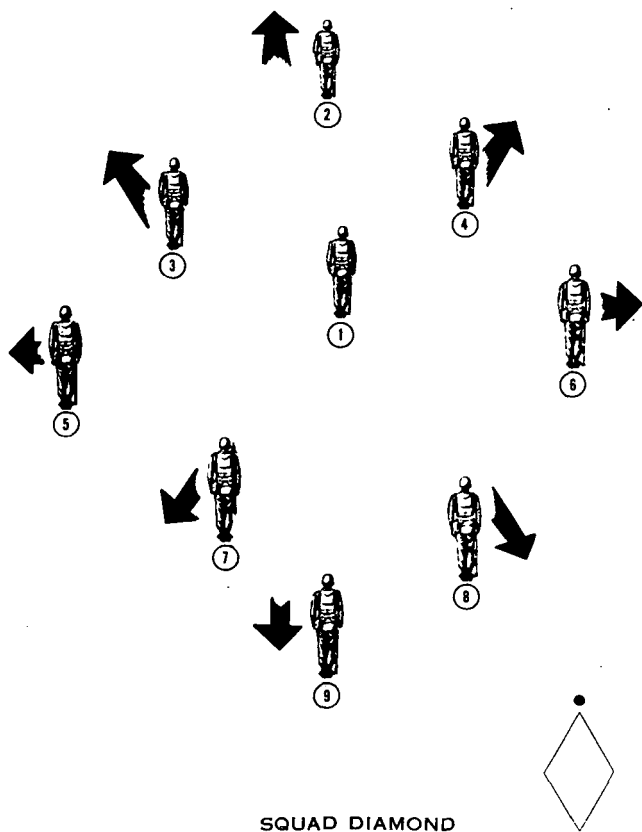
SQUAD COLUMN

②

Figure 73. Squad formations—Continued.



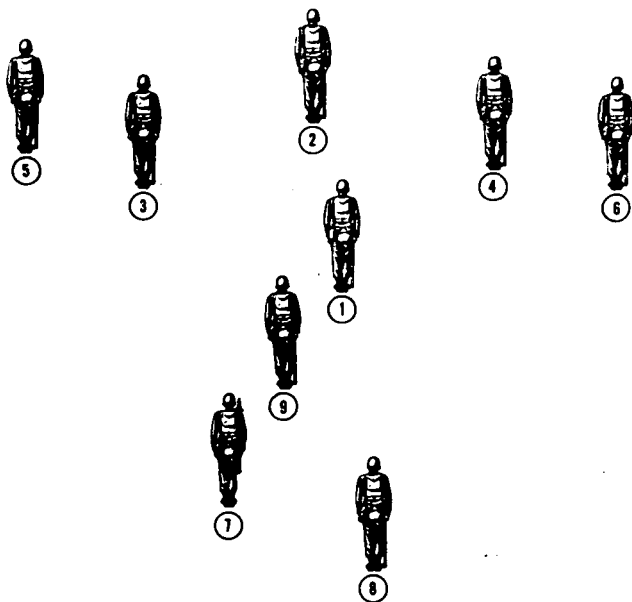
SKIRMISHERS, 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, each man takes his position as shown in figure 73 (4).



(3)

Figure 73. Squad formations--Continued.

8. AS SKIRMISHERS, AR TEAM RIGHT (LEFT). To form as skirmishers, AR team right, the squad leader commands and signals: 1. AS SKIRMISHERS, AR TEAM RIGHT, 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, the men take positions shown in figure 73 (5). To form as skirmishers with the AR team on the left, the commands are: 1. AS SKIRMISHERS, AR TEAM LEFT, 2. MOVE.



AS SKIRMISHERS

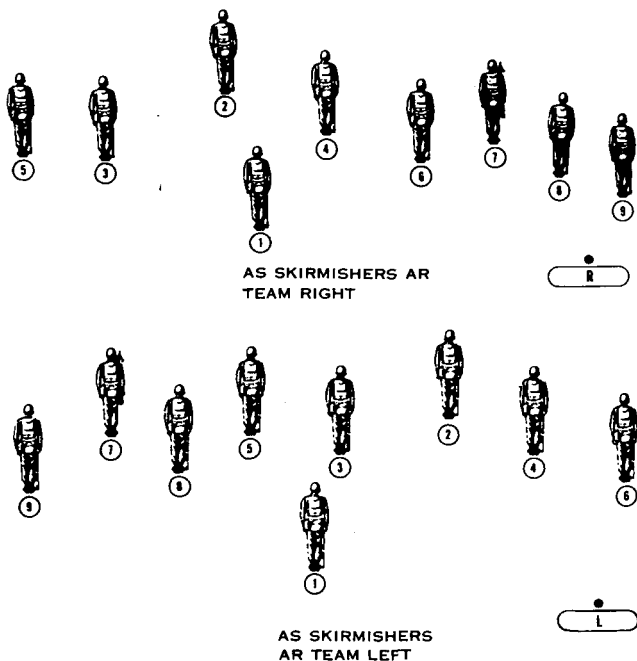


(4)

Figure 73. Squad formations—Continued.

At the command MOVE, the men take positions shown in lower half of figure 73 ⑤.

9. **MOVEMENT.** a. After the squad executes formations promptly, training in movement is begun. The squad then is trained to move in any direction and, while moving, to change from one formation to another upon command and signal of the squad leader. Training progresses until a dispersed and



⑤

Figure 73. Squad formations—Continued.

disorganized squad can assume a combat formation promptly upon a command and signal, showing the direction it is to face and the desired formation. The squad may move as a unit, by groups, or by individuals. The movement may be made by rushes, by walking, or by crawling.

b. To move the squad forward when it is in any formation at a halt, the squad leader commands and signals FORWARD. The squad then moves forward, basing its rate and direction of movement on the squad leader or a previously designated man.

c. To halt the squad, the squad leader commands and signals HALT. At the command HALT, the squad stops in place.

d. To assemble the deployed squad, the squad leader commands and signals ASSEMBLE. Men move at a run and assemble in march column formation facing the squad leader.

Section III. RIFLE PLATOON

1. **ORGANIZATION.** The rifle platoon consists of a platoon headquarters, three rifle squads, and a weapons squad. Squads within the rifle platoon are the first squad, second squad, third squad, and weapons squad. Symbols for the platoon leader, platoon sergeant, assistant platoon sergeant, and messenger are shown in figure 74.

2. **CONDUCT OF DRILL.** Training in combat formations for the rifle platoon teaches the relative positions of the squads in the platoon formations.

Platoon drill resembles that for the squad (par. 2, sec. I, this app.). The platoon deploys with enough distance between squads to permit movement. The arm-and-hand signal PLATOON need not precede arm-and-hand signals for the platoon. Signals

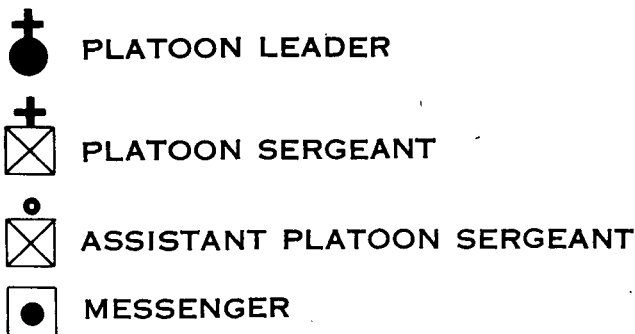


Figure 74. Symbols representing platoon members.

given by the platoon leader are for the entire platoon unless they are preceded by the arm-and-hand signal SQUAD. Oral commands, accompanied by appropriate arm-and-hand signals, are used for this phase of instruction, as for squad drill. For drill purposes, the distances between squads are fixed for each formation, although they may be altered to conform to the size of the drill field. The drill is conducted AT EASE. The squads move at a run when changing formation. When three squads are abreast, the center rifle squad is the base squad. In all other formations, the leading or right leading rifle squad is the base squad. The

squad formations within the platoon formation may vary; however, the weapons squad ordinarily uses the march column formation.

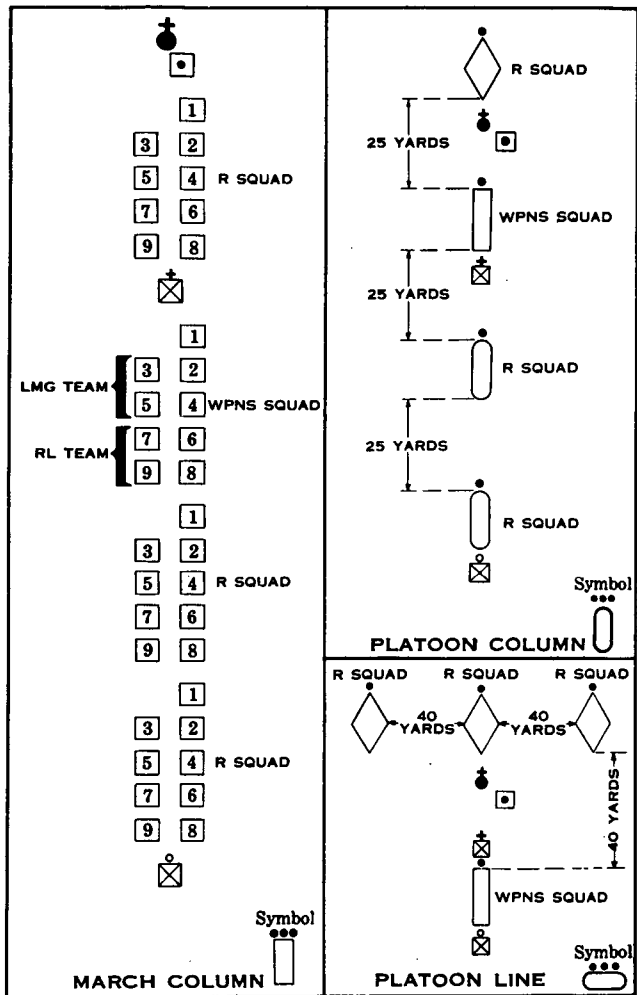
3. OBSERVATION AND CONTROL. In platoon drill, each squad within the platoon observes to its front, flanks, and rear as in squad drill. Squad leaders observe and control their squads and maintain eye contact with the platoon leader. The platoon leader goes where he best can control the platoon. The platoon sergeant and assistant platoon sergeant assist the platoon leader in the control of the platoon. Their positions are not fixed.

4. MARCH COLUMN. To form a march column, the platoon leader commands and signals: 1. MARCH COLUMN, 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, the platoon forms as shown in figure 75 ①.

5. PLATOON COLUMN. To form platoon column, the platoon leader commands and signals: 1. PLATOON COLUMN, 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, the platoon forms as shown in figure 75 ①.

6. PLATOON LINE. To form platoon line, the platoon leader commands and signals: 1. PLATOON LINE, 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, the platoon forms as shown in figure 75 ①.

7. PLATOON VEE. To form platoon vee, the platoon leader commands and signals: 1. PLATOON

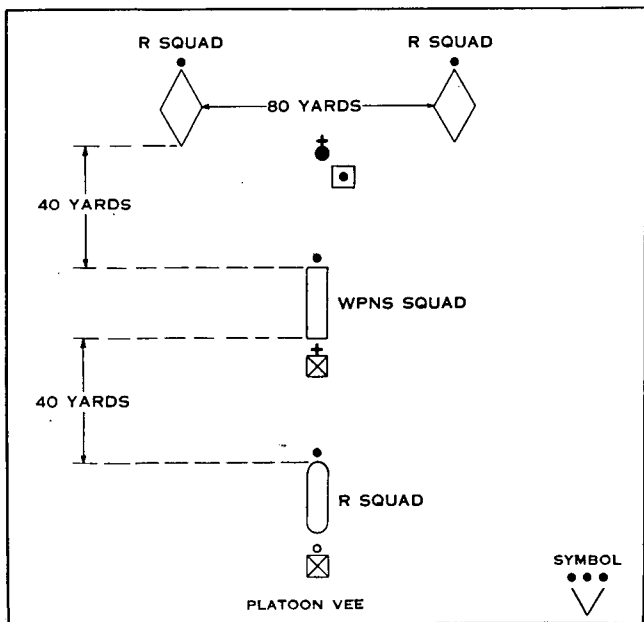


①
Figure 75. Platoon formations.

VEE, 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, the platoon forms as shown in figure 75 ②.

8. **PLATOON WEDGE.** To form platoon wedge, the platoon leader commands and signals: 1. **PLATOON WEDGE**, 2. **MOVE**. At the command MOVE, the platoon forms as shown in figure 75 ③.

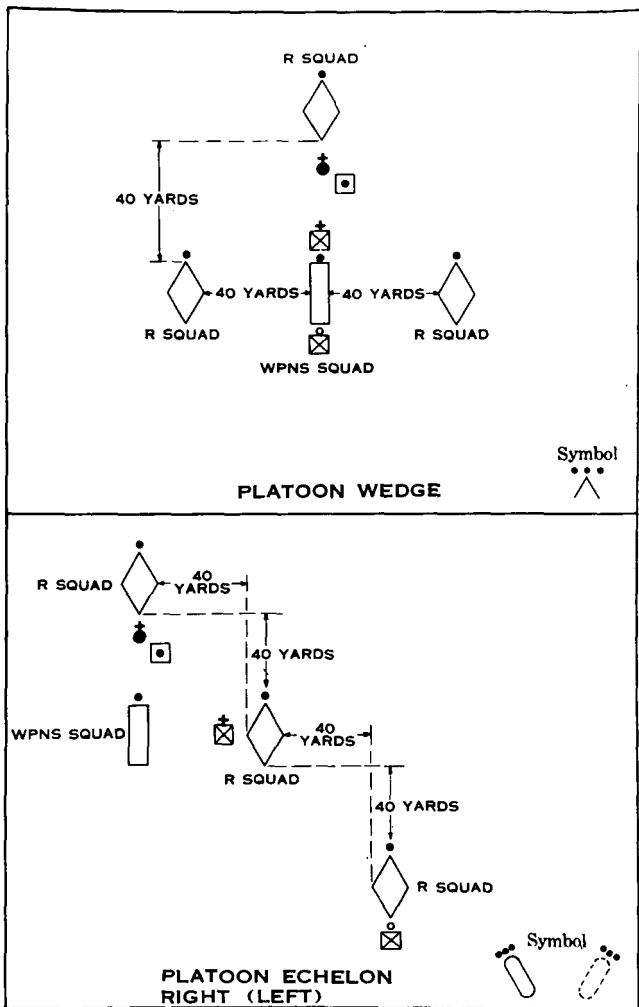
9. **PLATOON ECHELON RIGHT (LEFT).** To form



②
Figure 75. Platoon formations—Continued.

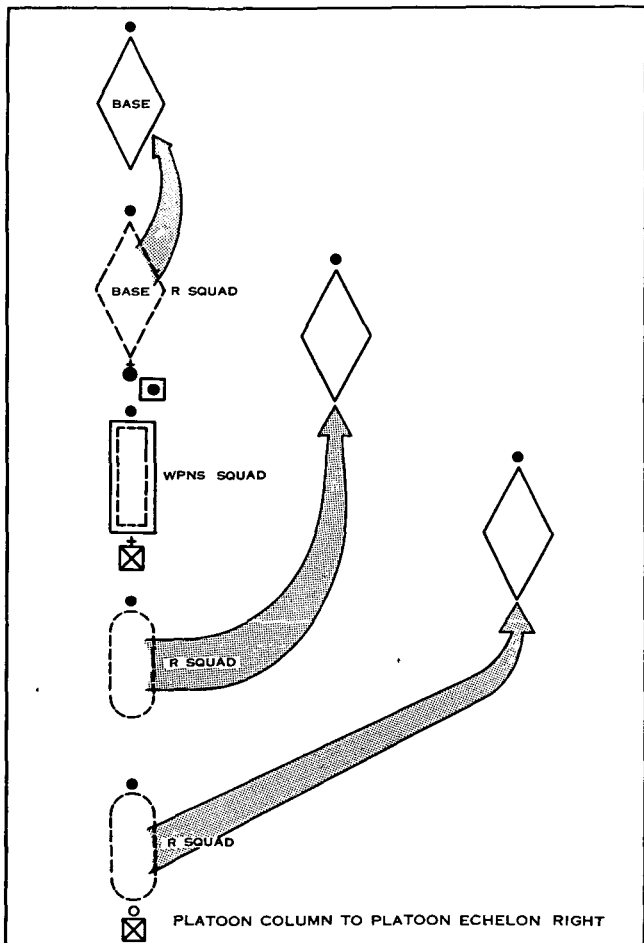
platoon echelon right (left), the platoon leader commands and signals: 1. PLATOON ECHELON RIGHT (LEFT), 2. MOVE. At the command MOVE, the platoon forms as shown in figure 75 ③.

10. MOVEMENT. After the platoon is trained to execute the basic formations promptly on command, it is trained to move and, while moving, to change from one formation to another. The rules for moving and halting are similar to those for the squad. In changing from one formation to another, the base squad sometimes changes in order to conform to the rules as explained in paragraph 2, this section. For example, in changing from platoon vee to platoon line, the right leading rifle squad remains the base squad until the line formation is completed, then the center rifle squad becomes the base squad. The redesignation of the base squad takes place upon completion of the movement. A suggested sequence for drill in changing formations is indicated in figure 76. The sequence takes the platoon successively from platoon column through platoon echelon, wedge, vee, line, and back to column.

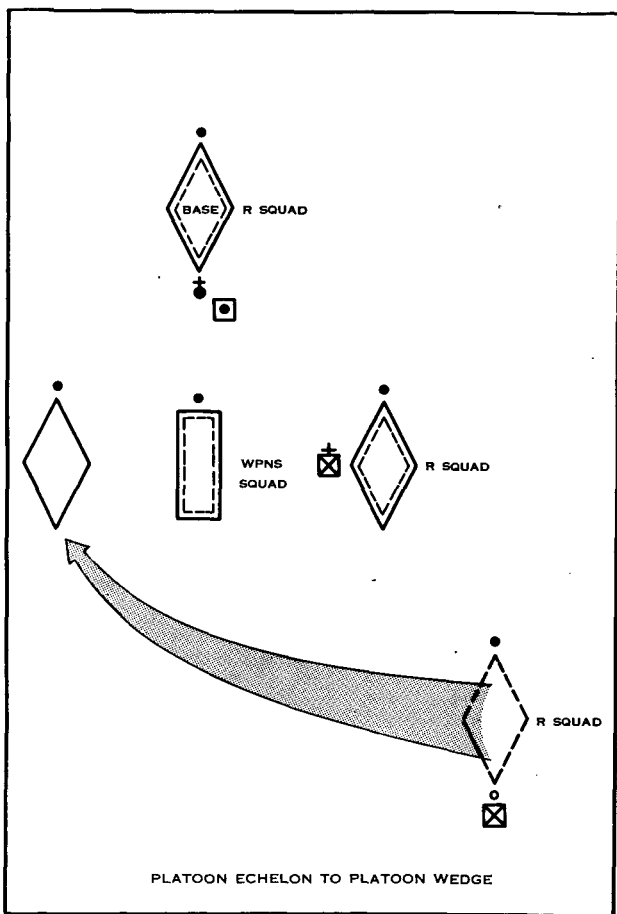


③

Figure 75. Platoon formations—Continued.

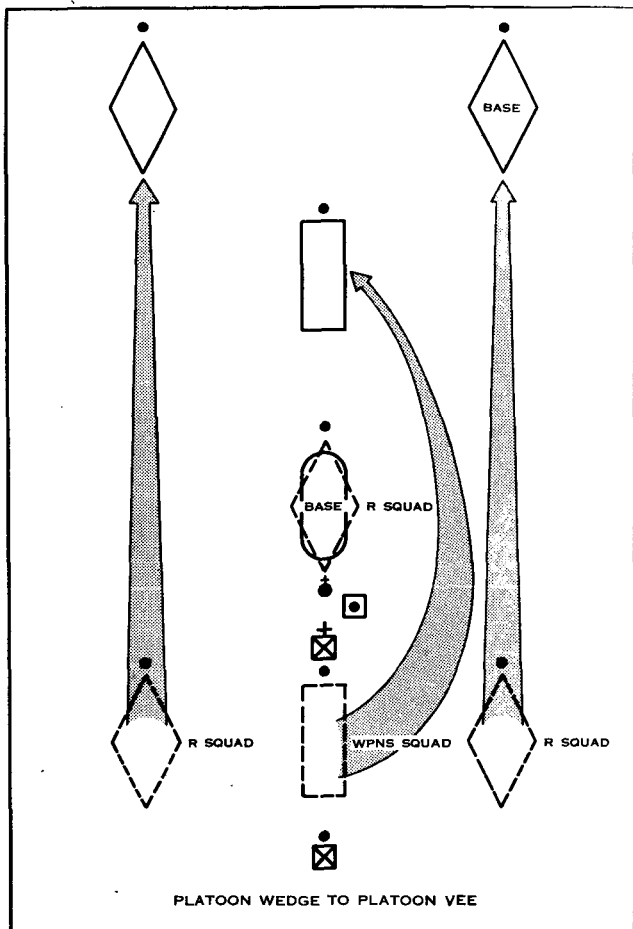


①
 Figure 76. Platoon movements.



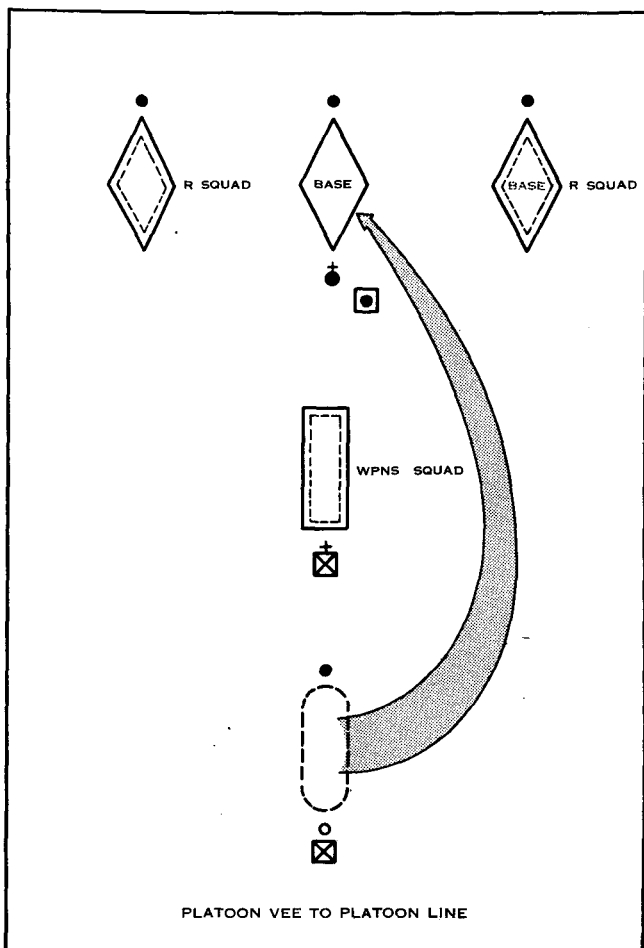
②

Figure 76. Platoon movements—Continued.



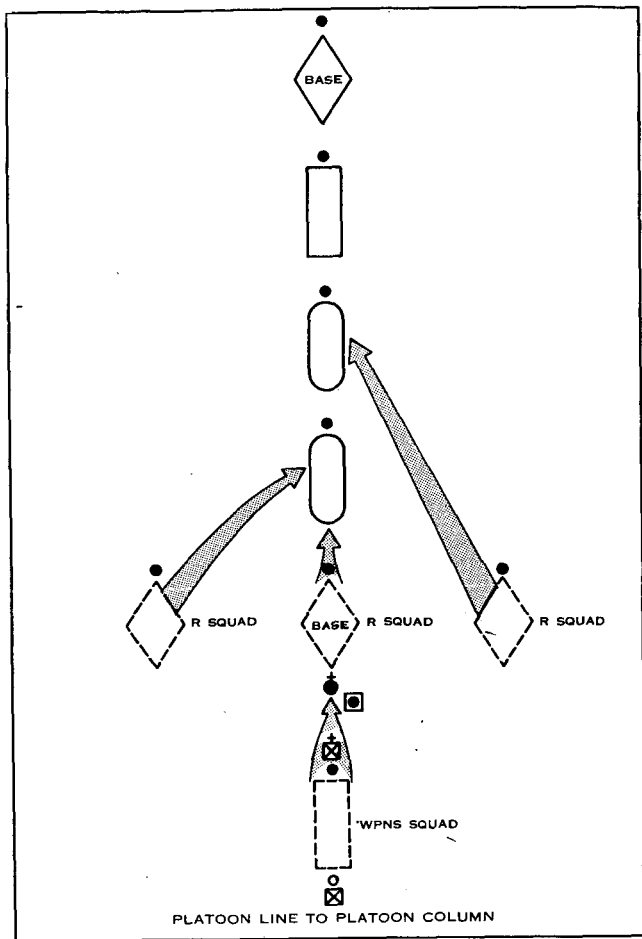
③

Figure 76. Platoon movements—Continued.



④

Figure 76. Platoon movements—Continued.



⑤

Figure 76. Platoon movements—Continued.

APPENDIX III

SIGNALS

1. **PURPOSE.** Signals are used for transmitting essential commands and warning under conditions which make verbal commands or warning inadequate. Visual arm-and-hand signals are used habitually with oral commands during instruction in combat formations in order that men become thoroughly familiar with the meaning of the signal used.

2. **KINDS.** The kinds of signal ordinarily used are sound and visual.

a. *Sound signals* include signals by bugles, whistles, sirens, vehicle horns, or other sound devices; for example, fire alarms, gas alarms (FM 21-40), or the firing of weapons. Special sound signals may be used on night patrols as prescribed by the patrol leader or higher authority. (See FM 21-75.)

b. *Visual signals* include signals made by using the arms and hands, flags, lights, panels, and pyrotechnics. Pyrotechnic signals usually are prescribed in operation orders. Tanks may use flag signals. (See FM 17-5.) Military police use arm-and-hand and light signals to direct traffic. (See FM 19-5.) Motor vehicle operators' signals, and

signals for use in motor marches or drill with vehicles are published in TM 21-305. Additional signals may be improvised and used appropriately. Visual signals within the scope of this appendix do not include semaphore flag codes, blinker light codes, and panel codes.

3. GENERAL RULES. Unit leaders repeat signals or give appropriate commands to their units whenever necessary to insure prompt and correct execution. Unless the signal is preparatory, execution of the movement indicated commences as soon as the signal is completed and understood.

4. AIR OR TANK WARNING. a. The following signals are used by observers of all arms and services in transmitting the warning of the approach or presence of enemy aircraft, parachute troops, or tanks: Three long blasts of a whistle, vehicular horn, klaxon, or siren repeated several times; three equally spaced shots with rifle or pistol; or three short bursts of fire from machine gun or other automatic weapon.

b. In daylight, the man giving the signal points in the direction of the danger. At night, the signal is supplemented by voice warning to indicate the direction of danger.

5. WHISTLE SIGNALS. Whistle signals are limited to ATTENTION TO ORDERS, CEASE FIRING, and AIR or TANK WARNING.

a. For *attention*, blow a short blast with the whistle. The signal is used to fix the attention of

troops or of their commanders and leaders preparatory to giving commands, orders, or other signals.

b. For *cease firing*, blow a long blast with the whistle. This signal is verified at once by an arm-and-hand signal or by other means.

c. For *air or tank warning*, repeat three long blasts several times.

6. ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS. If a movement is to be executed by a particular unit or units of a command, a signal designating the unit or units is given before the signal for the movement. Usually, the person giving the signal faces the unit or persons for whom the signal is intended.

a. **ATTENTION.** Extend the arm sideward slightly above the horizontal, palm to the front, and wave toward the head several times.

b. **READY? REPORT WHEN READY; I AM READY.** Extend the arm slightly above the horizontal, toward the leader or man for whom the signal is intended, hand raised, fingers extended and joined, palm toward the leader.

c. **FORWARD; TO THE RIGHT (LEFT) FLANK; TO THE REAR.** Face and move in the desired direction of march; at the same time, extend the hand vertically to the full extent of the arm, palm to the front, and lower the arm and hand in the direction of movement until horizontal.

d. **HALT or STOP.** Thrust the hand upward vertically to the full extent of the arm, and hold it in that position until the signal is understood.

e. **DOUBLE TIME; INCREASE SPEED; RUSH.** Carry

the hand to the shoulder, fist closed; rapidly thrust the fist upward vertically to the full extent of the arm, and back to the shoulder several times.

f. QUICK TIME. Extend the arm horizontally sideward, palm to the front, and wave downward several times, keeping the arm straight.

g. CHANGE DIRECTION; SHIFT FIRE. Carry the hand (that is on the side toward the new direction) across the body to the opposite shoulder and, with the palm turned in the direction of shift, swing the forearm in a horizontal arc, extending the arm and hand to point in the new direction. For slight changes in direction, wave hand from the final position in the desired direction.

h. ACTION (FRONT, RIGHT, LEFT, OR REAR); ASSAULT FIRE; FIGHT ON FOOT. Thrust the fist several times in the desired direction of action.

i. OUT OF ACTION. Rapidly strike the closed fist of one hand several times against the open palm of the other.

j. JOIN ME; FOLLOW ME. Point toward the vehicle, person, or persons desired, and beckon them to you by holding your arm horizontally, palm up, fingers extended and joined, and waving your hand and forearm toward you.

k. COVER OUR ADVANCE. Repeatedly strike top of helmet with open hand.

l. COLUMN. Describe complete circles by swinging one arm to the rear in a plane perpendicular to the body.

m. MARCH COLUMN. Describe complete circles by swinging both arms to the rear in planes perpendicular to the body.

n. **AS SKIRMISHERS; LINE.** Raise both arms laterally until horizontal, arms and hands extended, palms down.

o. **AS SKIRMISHERS, AR TEAM RIGHT (LEFT).** Raise both arms laterally until horizontal; swing arm, on side toward which AR team is to move, upward until vertical and back immediately to the horizontal position; repeat movement several times; hold the other arm steadily in the horizontal position until signal is completed.

p. **VEE.** Extend both arms downward and to the side at an angle of 45° below the horizontal.

q. **WEDGE.** Extend both arms upward and to the side at an angle of 45° above the horizontal.

r. **ECHELON RIGHT (LEFT).** Face the unit and extend the arm, on the side toward which the column is to be echeloned, downward to the side at an angle of 45° below the horizontal; extend the other arm upward and to the side at an angle of 45° above the horizontal.

s. **DIAMOND.** Raise both arms over the head, elbows slightly bent and fingertips touching.

t. **ASSEMBLE.** Raise the hand vertically to the full extent of the arm, fingers extended and joined, and describe large horizontal circles with the hand and arm.

u. **ENEMY IN SIGHT.** Hold the rifle horizontally above the head with the arms extended.

v. **RANGE OR BATTLE SIGHT.** With the fist closed, extend the arm fully toward the leader or men for whom the signal is intended. This is the signal that the range is to be announced. If no other signal follows, it means that the setting will

be battle sight. If a range other than battle sight is desired, open the fist, and expose one finger for each 100 yards of range.

w. **COMMENCE FIRING.** Extend the arm and hand waist high in front of the body to their full extent, palm of hand down; move them several times through a wide horizontal arc.

x. **ELEVATE; DEPRESS.** Extend one arm toward the gunners concerned, with the palm of the hand toward the ground. Move the hand in a short upward (downward) movement by flexing it at the wrist, exposing one finger for each mil (or for each 100 yards of range) the gun is to be elevated (depressed).

y. **CEASE FIRING.** Raise the hand in front of the forehead, palm to the front, and swing it and the forearm up and down several times in front of the face.

z. **FIX BAYONETS.** Simulate the movement of the right hand in removing a bayonet from its scabbard and fixing it on a rifle.

aa. **MOUNT.** Beginning at the side, raise one arm upward in the plane of the body, palm up, to a position 45° from vertical. Repeat several times.

ab. **DISMOUNT; DOWN; TAKE COVER.** Extend one arm upward at an angle of 45° in the plane of the body and lower it to the side. Repeat several times.

APPENDIX IV

SUPPORTING FIRES

Section I. GENERAL

1. INTRODUCTION a. This appendix is a guide for the rifle company commander. It is concerned with the general composition, missions, capabilities, communication, and methods of requesting fires of the supporting weapons which are available to the company. The standard procedure for requesting the fires of supporting weapons is contained in FM 23-85 and FM 23-90.

b. The organization of the infantry division incorporates supporting weapon elements within each echelon. An infantry battalion has a heavy weapons company; a regiment has a heavy mortar company and a heavy tank company; and the division has a tank battalion and the division artillery consisting of three battalions of 105-mm howitzers and one battalion of 155-mm howitzers. Normally, one 105-mm howitzer battalion is placed in direct support of each infantry regiment. When an infantry regiment is in reserve, the 105-mm howitzer battalion which normally supports this regiment, together with the 155-mm howitzer battalion, are placed in general support of the other regiments.

2. MISSION OF SUPPORTING WEAPONS. The mis-

sion of all supporting weapons is to deliver fire to assist or protect a unit in combat.

3. COMBAT CONTROL. **a. General support.** Supporting units are in general support when the next higher commander controls their fires in support of any or all combat elements. They usually continue in general support as long as this control can be exercised to provide maximum support. The heavy weapons company is considered to be in general support when its fires are controlled by the battalion commander, the heavy tank and heavy mortar companies by the regimental commander, the tank company and the battalions of the division artillery by the division commander.

b. Direct support. Supporting units are considered to be in direct support when their unit commanders are given the responsibility for control of their fires in support of a specific combat element. A supporting unit may be placed in direct support when its fires cannot be controlled effectively by the next higher commander, or when it becomes desirable to allot its fires exclusively to a specific combat unit. However, an artillery battalion in direct support of an infantry regiment remains under division artillery command. While this battalion executes fires for the infantry regiment it supports, its fires may be massed elsewhere in an emergency.

c. Attachment. When a supporting unit is attached to a combat unit, command and control passes to the commander of the supported unit. He becomes responsible for its tactical employ-

ment, control of its fires, and its combat supply. Attachment may be made when it becomes impracticable or undesirable to use the supporting unit in general support or in direct support.

Section II. HEAVY WEAPONS COMPANY

1. **ORGANIZATION.** a. The *heavy weapons company* consists of a company headquarters, a machine gun platoon, an 81-mm mortar platoon, and a 75-mm rifle platoon.

b. The *machine gun platoon* has a platoon headquarters and two sections, each consisting of two squads.

c. The *81-mm mortar platoon* has a platoon headquarters and two sections, each consisting of two squads.

d. The *75-mm rifle platoon* has a platoon headquarters and two sections. There are no squads.

2. **MACHINE GUN PLATOON.** a. *Missions* for the machine gun platoon include—

- (1) Supporting advancing friendly forces by neutralizing enemy positions.
- (2) Protecting the flanks when they have become exposed by the advancing of the battalion.
- (3) Protecting rifle units during reorganization and consolidation of an objective.
- (4) Assisting in repelling enemy counterattacks.
- (5) Firing in support of outposts.
- (6) Firing along final protective lines in a defensive position.

(7) Firing long-range overhead fire to harass the enemy.

b. The effective *range* of the machine gun is limited by observation. Ground observation rarely is effective beyond 2,000 yards.

c. Suitable *targets* for the machine gun platoon include—

(1) Point targets, such as enemy crew-served weapons and embrasures of enemy pill-boxes.

(2) Targets in width, such as an enemy skirmish line.

(3) Targets in depth, such as enemy column moving toward or away from the front.

d. When the machine gun platoon is in direct support of or attached to the rifle company, the instrument corporal of the machine gun platoon usually acts as a *liaison* agent between his unit and the rifle company. This liaison agent transmits fire requests desired by the rifle company commander.

e. The *communication facilities* available to the heavy machine gun platoon are radio, wire, messenger, and visual signals. Ordinarily, there is no direct radio or wire communication between the rifle company and the machine gun platoon. However, both the rifle company and heavy weapons company are in the battalion command net.

f. *Fire requests* by the rifle company are transmitted through the liaison agent. In his absence, requests are made by direct contact with machine gun unit leaders in the company area or through

command channels. In an emergency, the machine gun platoon can be contacted directly by radio.

3. THE 81-mm MORTAR PLATOON. a. *Specific missions* include—

- (1) Supporting advancing friendly forces by neutralizing enemy positions.
- (2) Firing countermortar fires, smoke missions, interdiction fires, harassing fires, defensive fires, and protecting rifle units during reorganization and consolidation on an objective.
- (3) Repelling enemy counterattacks.
- (4) Supporting outposts.

b. *Maximum effective range:* HE light ammunition approximately 4,000 yards (effective bursting radius 17 yards), HE heavy ammunition approximately 2,600 yards, and WP approximately 2,400 yards.

c. *Suitable targets* for the 8-mm mortar platoon include—

- (1) Grouped personnel.
- (2) Reverse slopes and defilade areas.
- (3) Crew-served weapons.
- (4) Light fortifications.

d. A *forward observer* party, usually consisting of a section leader and a radiotelephone operator, goes forward with each front-line rifle company. They control the fire of the platoon as required by the rifle company. The forward observer does not necessarily remain with the rifle company commander at all times; however, the rifle company commander remains in communication with the

forward observer. Having a forward observer with each rifle company permits fire requests to go to the mortar platoon by the most direct channel.

e. The *communication* facilities available to the 81-mm mortar platoon are radio, wire, messenger, and visual signals. One radio is operated in the heavy weapons company command net. The remainder of the radios are operated in a platoon fire control net, one with each forward observer and one at the platoon fire control point.

f. *Fire requests* by the rifle company normally are transmitted by or through the forward observer of the mortar platoon. However, fire requests may be transmitted through command channels if the forward observer cannot be contacted readily. *Initial fire requests* by other than a trained forward observer include, as a minimum, the following elements, in the sequence indicated:

- (1) The *observer identifies* himself usually by the use of a code word or words: UNION BAKER ONE.
- (2) The *observer alerts the fire control point* by saying: FIRE MISSION.
- (3) The *azimuth* is given to the target by the observer from his position; example: AZIMUTH 2760.
- (4) The *target location* is designated by giving first the azimuth from the observer to the target and then by giving a shift in yards from a known point to the target (fig. 77) (shift is given in the sequence. Known point, deflection, and

range—example: FROM CR 695, LEFT 200, ADD 400) ; or by giving coordinates referring to a map; or by requesting a marking round from which the observer can shift to the target (observer may say: MARK CENTER OF SECTOR or MARK BASE POINT).

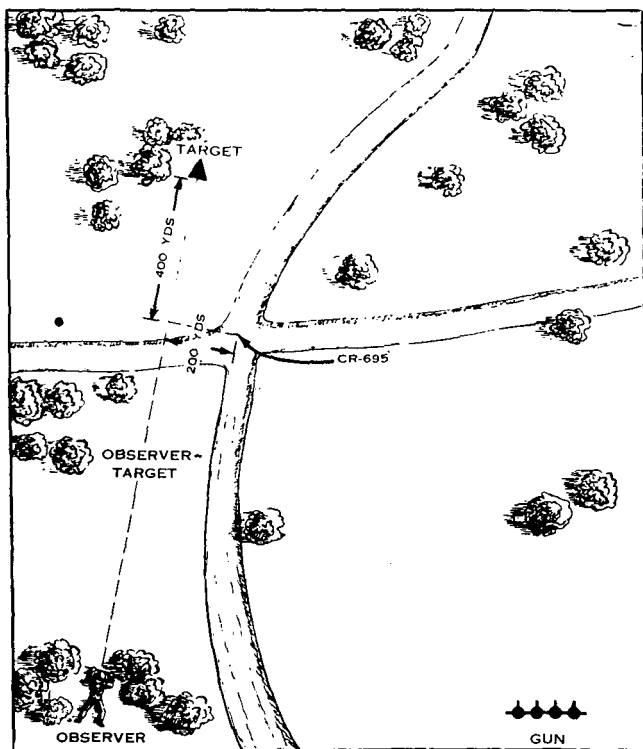


Figure 77. Target designation.

g. The *nature of the target* consists of a description of the enemy installation, personnel, equipment, or activity which is observed; example: MACHINE GUN.

h. The observer's designation of *control consists* of the term: WILL ADJUST or FIRE FOR EFFECT if the observer believes the target is located accurately enough to be hit without adjustment.

i. An example of an initial fire request is as follows:

UNION BAKER ONE
FIRE MISSION
AZIMUTH 2760
FROM CR 695, LEFT 200, ADD 400
MACHINE GUN
WILL ADJUST

4. THE 75-mm RIFLE PLATOON. a. *Specific missions* include—

- (1) Supporting advancing friendly forces by neutralizing enemy positions.
- (2) Protecting rifle units during reorganization and consolidation of an objective.
- (3) Assisting in repelling enemy counterattacks.
- (4) Firing indirect fire on interdiction and harassing missions.
- (5) Providing antitank protection in the battalion zone of action.

b. *Maximum effective range*: HE ammunition 6,955 yards, HE-AT ammunition 1,700 yards, and WP ammunition 7,020 yards.

c. *Effective bursting area*: 15 yards by 45 yards

(long axis perpendicular to the direction of fire).

d. *Armor penetration*: 4 inches up to 30° angle of incidence.

e. The 75-mm rifle platoon is used most effectively to fire on the following *targets*: grouped personnel, automatic weapons, casement embrasures, antitank guns, tanks, and vehicles.

f. The *communication facilities* of the 75-mm rifle platoon are radio, wire, messenger, and visual signals. Ordinarily, there is no direct radio or wire communication between the rifle company and the 75-mm rifle platoon.

g. *Fire requests* by the rifle company for fire are made by direct contact with the 75-mm rifle unit leaders in the company area.

Section III. HEAVY MORTAR COMPANY

1. **ORGANIZATION.** The heavy mortar company consists of a company headquarters and three platoons. Company headquarters includes an operations and fire direction section which establishes and operates a company fire direction center. Each platoon has a platoon headquarters and four mortar squads.

2. **SPECIFIC MISSIONS.** The heavy mortar company is charged with the following specific missions:

a. To support advancing friendly forces by neutralizing enemy positions.

b. To fire countermortar fires, smoke missions, interdiction fires, harassing fires, and defensive fires.

c. To protect rifle units during reorganization and consolidation on an objective by repelling enemy counterattacks. To support outposts.

3. MAXIMUM EFFECTIVE RANGE. The maximum effective range is HE 4,400 yards (effective bursting radius 20 yards), WP 4,260 yards.

4. TARGETS. Suitable targets for the heavy mortar platoon include grouped personnel, reverse slopes and defilade areas, crew-served weapons, and light fortifications.

5. FORWARD OBSERVERS. Forward observers from the mortar platoons operate in the zones of action of the front-line battalions. The forward observers transmit requests for and adjust the heavy mortar fires.

6. LIAISON. One man in each platoon headquarters is designated as a liaison agent for the supported battalion. He receives and transmits fire requests and advises the battalion commander of the capabilities of the heavy mortars.

7. COMMUNICATION. Within the company, there are two radio nets. One net includes the forward observers and the fire direction center; the other net includes the firing positions and the fire direction center. There is no direct radio or wire communication between the rifle company and the mortar company except by prearrangement.

8. FIRE REQUESTS. Requests for fire by the rifle company are made by direct contact with a forward observer operating in the rifle company zone of action or through command channels. In an emergency, the heavy mortar company can be contacted directly by radio. For the technique of requesting fire, see paragraph 3, this section.

Section IV. TANK COMPANY

1. ORGANIZATION. The regimental tank company consists of a company headquarters and four tank platoons. There are two M45 tanks in company headquarters. Each tank platoon consists of two sections. The first section contains the platoon leader's tank and two tanks; the other section contains two tanks. Platoons are equipped with M26 tanks.

2. MISSIONS. Missions of the regimental tank company are to—

a. Support the advance of infantry by direct fire, maneuver, and shock action.

b. Provide antitank protection.

c. Protect rifle units during reorganization and consolidation of an objective.

d. Assist in repelling enemy counterattacks.

e. Engage in exploitation and pursuit operations supported by infantry.

3. ARMAMENT. a. The M26 tank is equipped with one 90-mm gun, two caliber .30 machine guns, and one caliber .50 machine gun.

b. The M45 tank is equipped with one 105-mm howitzer, two caliber .30 machine guns, and one caliber .50 machine gun.

c. Maximum effective ranges—

- (1) *90-mm gun*: HE ammunition 19,560 yards (effective bursting area 40 yards by 12 yards); HVAP ammunition, 2,400 yards (armor penetration, 7.8 inches up to 30° angle of incidence at 1,000 yards); APC ammunition, 2,400 yards (armor penetration, 4.8 inches up to 30° angle of incidence at 1,000 yards).
- (2) *105-mm howitzer*: HE ammunition, 12,205 yards (effective bursting area, 50 x 15 yards); HE-AT ammunition, 1,500 yards (armor penetration, 5½ to 6 inches).
- (3) *Caliber .30 machine gun*: 2,000 yards.
- (4) *Caliber .50 machine gun*: 2,000 yards for ground fire; 1,000 yards for antiaircraft fire.

4. **TARGETS.** Tank fires are most effective against the following targets: enemy tanks and other vehicles; direct-fire weapons emplacements; fortifications; and personnel.

5. **COMMUNICATION.** Communication between the tanks and infantry is by radio, external tank telephone, or visual signals.

a. Each tank has two *radios*, one of which operates in the supported unit net and the other in the tank unit net.

b. Each tank has an *external tank telephone* over which a man outside the tank can talk to a man inside the tank.

c. *Visual communication* between infantry and tanks is by arm-and-hand signals, tracer bullets, pyrotechnics, colored smoke, and panels.

6. FIRE REQUESTS. Fire requests are transmitted directly to the tank unit or single tank by any of the available means of communication.

Section V. ARTILLERY

1. MISSIONS. a. To give close support to combat units.

b. To fire long-range interdiction, harassing, and counterbattery fires.

c. To isolate enemy positions.

2 RANGE. a. *105-mm howitzer*: 12,200 yards (effective bursting area; 15 yards by 50 yards).

b. *155-mm howitzer*: 16,400 yards (effective bursting area, 18 yards by 60 yards).

3. TARGETS. The artillery is used most effectively to fire on the following targets: grouped personnel, reverse slopes and defilade areas, light fortifications, tanks, vehicles, and crew-served weapons.

4. FORWARD OBSERVERS. An artillery forward observer party normally goes forward with each rifle company to adjust needed artillery fire. The

forward observer party is not attached to the rifle company.

5. LIAISON. With each infantry battalion there is an artillery liaison officer. He supervises the forward observers assigned to that infantry battalion, advises the supported unit commander of the capabilities and limitations of the artillery, and transmits fire requests of the battalion commander.

6. COMMUNICATION. The communication facilities of the forward observers and liaison officer are radio and wire. Wire is the primary means of communication. Radios in the artillery fire direction net supplement the wire. The artillery installs, maintains, and operates its radio and wire communication.

7. FIRE REQUESTS. Requests for fire by the rifle company normally are transmitted through the forward observer; however, requests may be transmitted through command channels if the forward observer cannot be contacted readily. For methods of requesting fire, see paragraph 3, section II, this appendix.

APPENDIX V

WEAPONS EMPLACEMENTS

1. GENERAL. All men are trained to seek individual protection when halted. When the halt is expected to be brief, troops take advantage of natural protection allowed by the terrain, such as ditches or holes in the ground. When the situation temporarily is stabilized, they dig intrenchments for their individual protection and emplacements for their weapons. Intrenchments and weapons emplacements are located to cover a selected area with fire. At the same time they provide maximum concealment and protection from air and ground observation and fire. They are developed as rapidly as combat conditions permit. In order to confuse the enemy, decoys or dummy positions are used. For the construction of individual prone shelters and fox holes, see FM 5-15.

2. TOOLS. Tools normally used for hasty fortification work are carried by individual soldiers. These may be supplemented by additional tools obtained from engineer supplies. Under unusual terrain conditions (frozen or rocky ground, for example), engineers furnish equipment such as air compressors, bulldozers, and explosive charges.

3. OBSERVATION POSTS. a. Initially one-man fox holes or two-man fox holes make good observation posts. Both of these positions are well camouflaged for this purpose. (See fig. 78.)

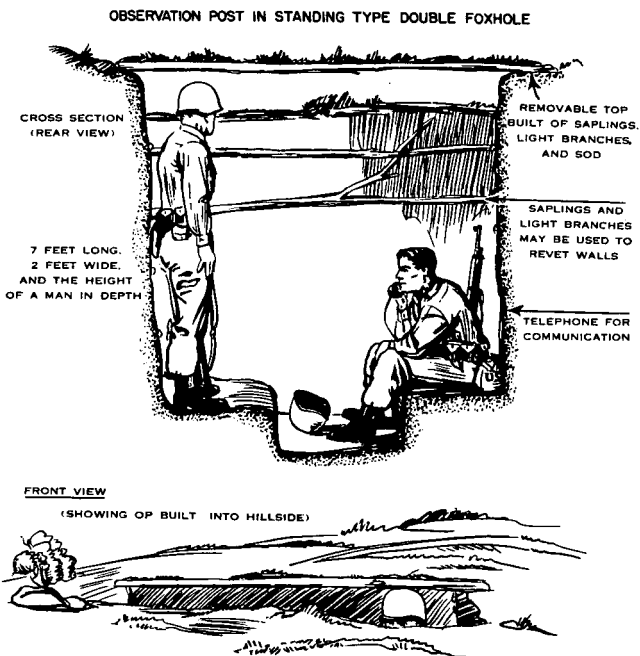


Figure 78. Two-man fox hole observation post.

b. When positions are occupied for considerable time, it may be desirable to construct a sturdier type observation post for greater protection. Such an observation post is shown in figure 79.

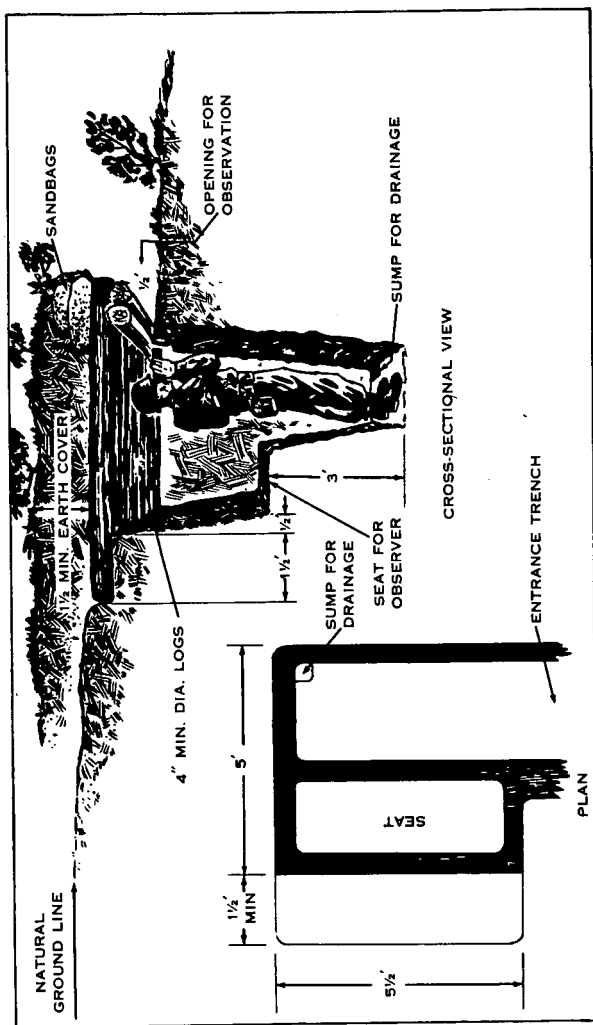


Figure 79. Observation post with overhead cover.

4. OVERHEAD COVER. (See fig. 79.) Individual soldiers and crew-served weapons require overhead cover for protection from air bursts. Such protection must not interfere with the use of weapons, nor be so bulky as to make it impossible to maintain the camouflage of the position. Local materials are used, supplemented by any additional materials available. In a fully developed position, overhead cover consists of a minimum of $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet of earth supported by 4-inch logs.

5. EMPLACEMENT FOR LIGHT MACHINE GUN. a. Initial stage. The initial stage in the development of this emplacement is the excavation of an open shallow pit. (See fig. 80.)

b. Horseshoe emplacement.

- (1) The emplacement is developed further by digging out a horseshoe-shaped trench, about 2 feet wide, along the rear and sides of the pit. A chest-high shelf to the center and front is left to serve as a gun platform. The spoil is piled around the emplacement to form a parapet at least 3 feet thick and low enough to permit all-around fire. The parapet is camouflaged carefully. (See fig. 81.)
- (2) This emplacement furnishes protection against small-arms fire and shell or bomb fragments except from air bursts. In firm soil, this emplacement offers protection against the crushing action of tanks. In loose soil, logs about 8 inches in diameter, placed across front, rear, and sides

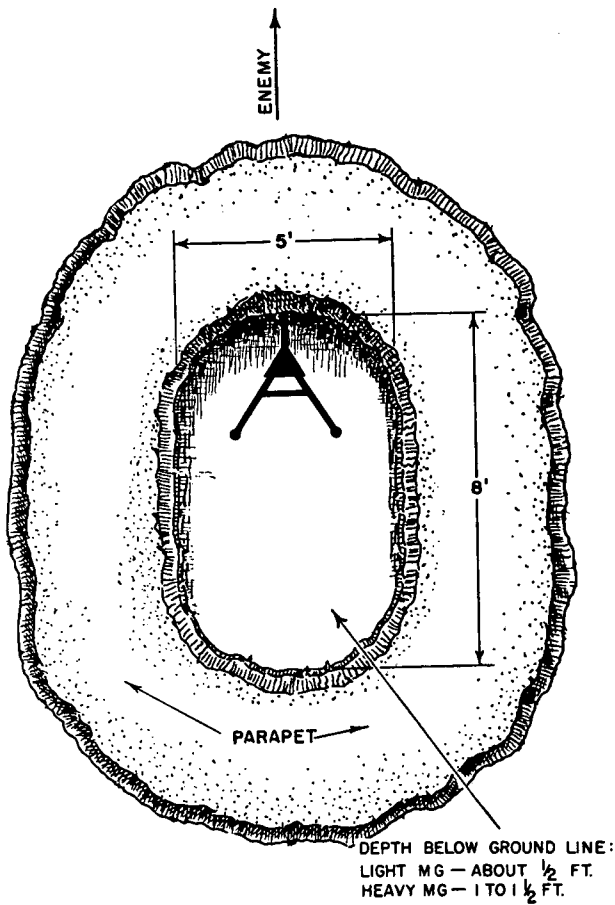


Figure 80. Initial stage of emplacement for the caliber .30 light machine gun.

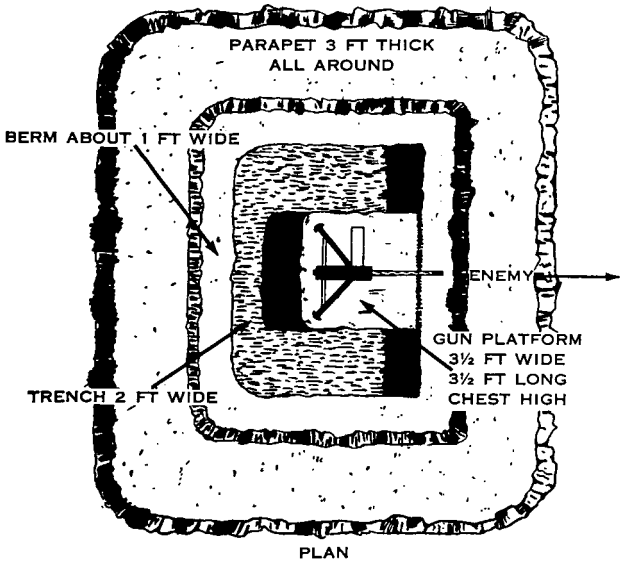
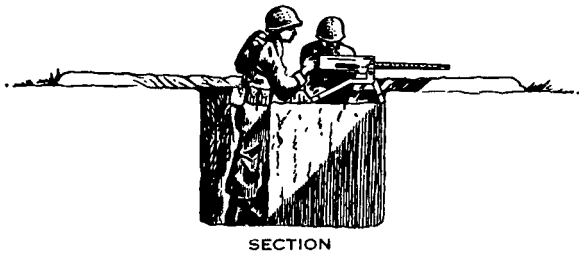


Figure 81. Horseshoe-type emplacement for the caliber .30 light machine gun (camouflage not shown).

of the emplacement and embedded flush with the top of the ground, help to make the emplacement resistant to the crushing action of tanks. When tanks are about to overrun the position, the gunners pull the weapon to the bottom of the trench at the rear of the emplacement and then crouch down to either side.

c. **Overhead cover.** The final step in the development of the light machine gun emplacement is to provide overhead cover following the principles already discussed. In open ground, concealment may be difficult due to the high silhouette created by the overhead cover. In broken ground, the entire emplacement may be excavated as a cave in an embankment or beneath a large tree or rock.

6. EMPLACEMENT FOR ROCKET LAUNCHER. a. **Initial stage.** This emplacement initially is a circular pit, 3 feet in diameter and about $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet deep. It is large enough for two men. It permits the assistant gunner to move as the gunner traverses the weapon. This permits the assistant gunner to avoid being in rear of the weapon when it is fired. It is deep enough that the rear end of the rocket launcher, at the launcher's maximum elevation in any direction, is clear of the parapet. Thus, the back blast from the rocket will not be deflected into the emplacement, burning the occupants. Except in firm soil, the requirement for depth can be met only by an emplacement which is too shallow to give protection against the crushing action of tanks. Therefore, fox holes for the gunner and for the assistant gunner are dug near by.

b. Pit emplacement. In firm soil, the circular pit can be enlarged from 3 feet to 4 feet in diameter, with an additional circular pit 2 feet deep and 2 feet in diameter dug in the center. This results in a circular fire step 1 foot wide and about 3½ feet below the surface. When tanks appear about to overrun the position, the gunner and assistant crouch down into the lower pit. (See fig. 82.)



Figure 82. Pit-type emplacement for the rocket launcher team.

c. **Overhead cover.** When heavy logs are available, the pit emplacement is completed by constructing two one-man fox holes with overhead cover (see fig. 83.) This method is practical only when there is no danger of the overhead cover deflecting the back blast into the firing pit. To prevent this possibility, it may be necessary to raise the fire step approximately 1 foot. The alternate method is to provide overhead cover for nearby fox holes.

7. EMPLACEMENT FOR 57-mm RIFLE. a. **Initial stage.** First, dig an open shallow pit, as shown in figure 80.

b. **Oval emplacement.** Next, dig an oval-shaped trench around a waist-high firing platform which supports the tripod. In most types of soil, it is necessary to revet the firing platform. It must be high enough to let the back blast escape over the parapet. The oval emplacement permits fire in all directions.

c. **Overhead cover.** The oval emplacement is completed by providing overhead cover and concealment for the gunner, his assistant, and the rifle. Space can be provided under cover on one side of the emplacement for two men, and on the other side for the rifle. (See fig. 84.) The emplacement is camouflaged by stretching a suitably colored net over the entire position at least 18 inches above the rifle. Unless the soil is exceptionally firm, it is necessary to dig nearby fox holes for the gunner and assistant gunner to protect them from the crushing action of tanks.

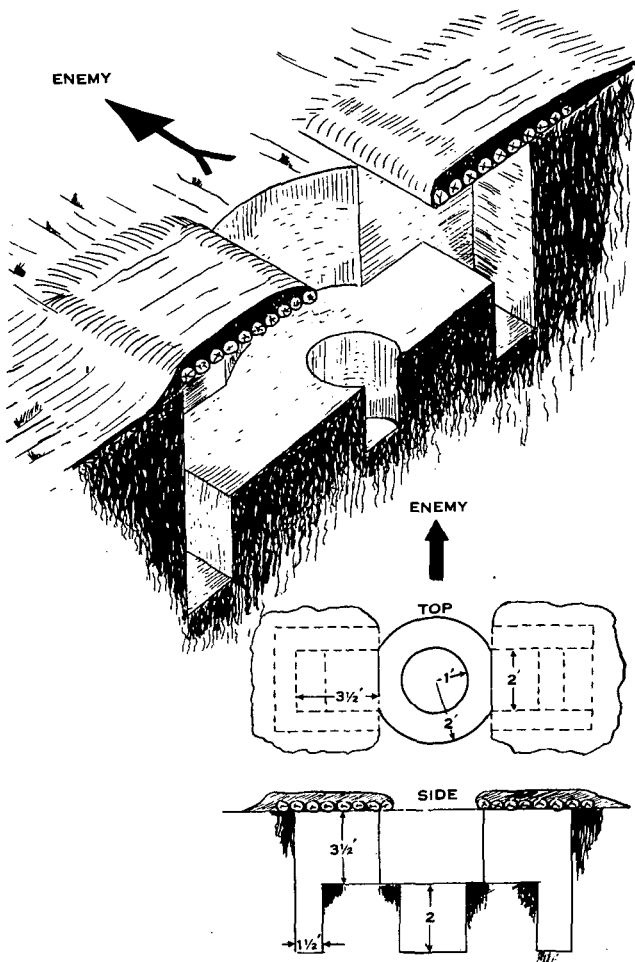


Figure 83. Rocket launcher position with overhead cover (camouflage not shown).

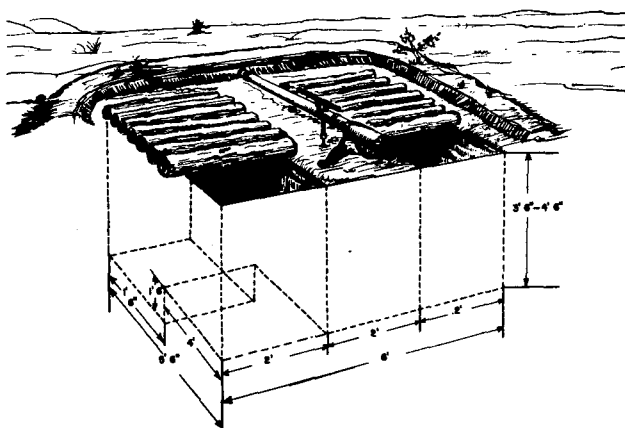
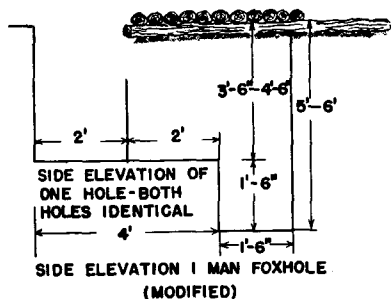


Figure 84. The 57-mm rifle position with overhead cover (camouflage omitted).

8. EMPLACEMENT FOR 60-mm MORTAR. a. Initial stage. Partial protection from direct fire can be obtained by digging two one-man fox holes near the mortar position. (See fig. 85.) In defiladed posi-

tions, this emplacement is satisfactory when completed by adding overhead cover and camouflage for each fox hole.

b. Pit emplacement. If the position is exposed, enlarge one of the fox holes to form a pit emplacement (fig. 86). This gives a rectangular pit large enough to hold the mortar, the gunner, and the assistant gunner. Keep the emplacement small enough to give protection from bomb and shell fragments, but allow room for firing the mortar and for storing necessary ammunition. The front edge is sloped so that there is mask clearance, and the aiming stake, at least 10 yards to the front, is visible through the sight. Pile the spoil all around the pit to form a low parapet. Fox holes for members of the mortar squad not required at the gun are prepared near the emplacement. Additional ammunition is placed in nearby shelters.

c. Overhead cover. (See fig. 87.) The pit emplacement is completed by digging an additional area in the rear of the open pit and by covering this area, as well as part of the open pit, with logs and earth.

9. CAMOUFLAGE. **a.** Camouflage is of prime importance in concealing defensive works. Before any excavation is started, all turf, sod, leaves, or forest humus is removed carefully from both the area to be excavated and from the area on which spoil is to be piled. This material is set aside and later replaced over the spoil when the work is completed. The workers confine their activities to the area beneath the camouflage net. The net is suspended



*Figure 85. Two one-man fox hole emplacement for the 60-mm mortar
(camouflage not shown).*

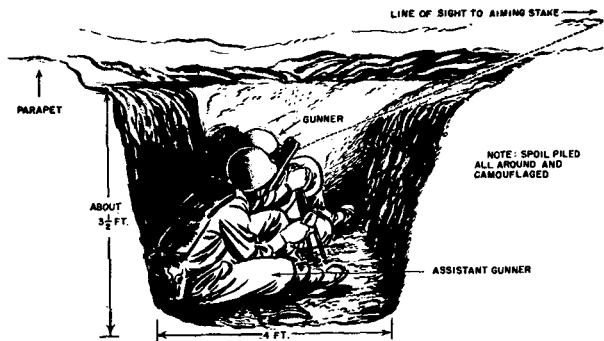
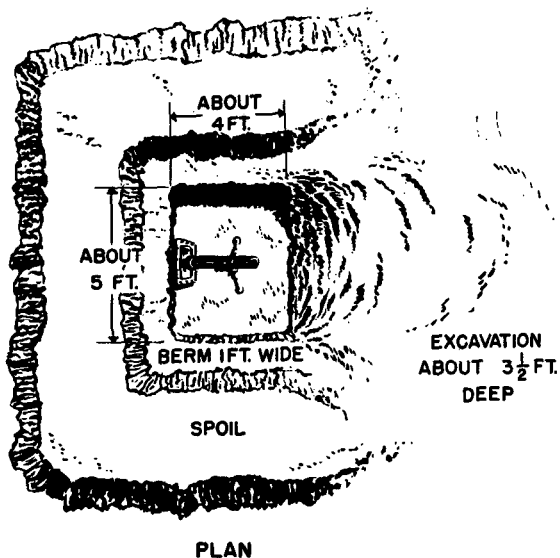


Figure 86. Open emplacement for the 60-mm mortar.

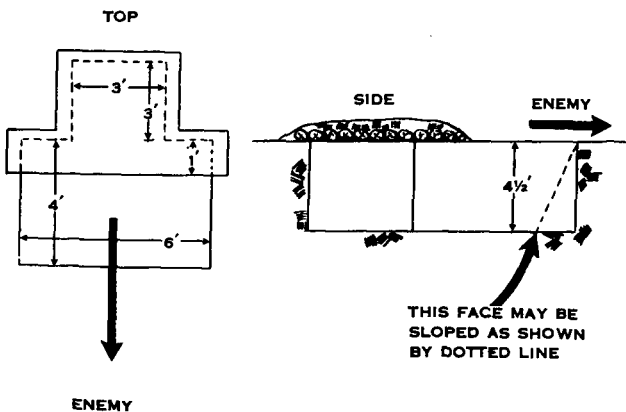
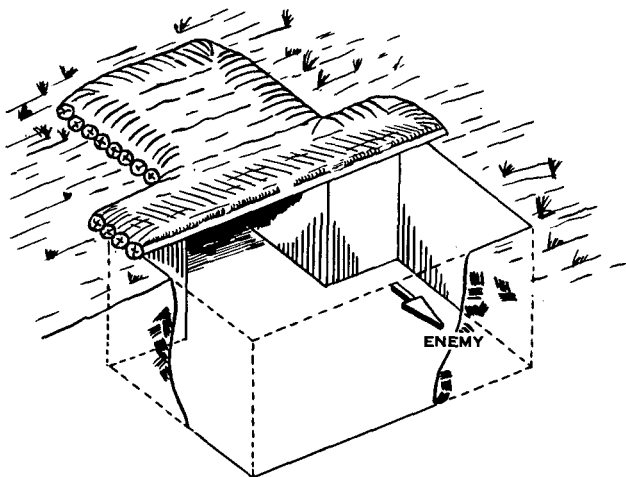


Figure 87. A 60-mm mortar position with overhead cover (camouflage omitted).

high enough above the ground to permit excavation without snapping equipment or entrenching tools.

b. After the excavation is completed and the spoil covered with sod or other natural camouflage material, the net is lowered close to the ground so that it is inconspicuous when observed from the ground. Nets are kept in position when the weapon is not being fired. Arrangements are made to withdraw or lift the net during action. Figure 88 illustrates the basic principles of camouflage.

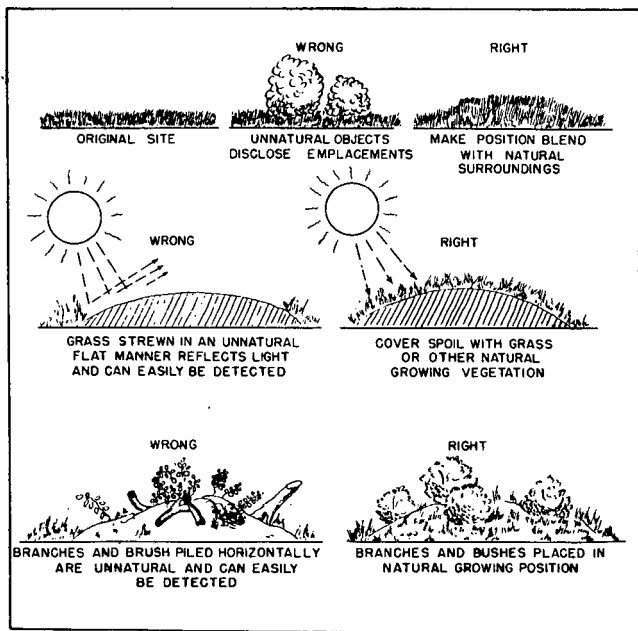


Figure 88. Camouflage.

10. DISPOSAL OF SPOIL. Complete removal of spoil aids in concealing an excavation. When this is done, the excavation is made somewhat deeper in order to obtain the same protection that is given when the spoil is used to construct a parapet. In disposing of spoil, care is taken not to create paths or vehicle tracks which might disclose the position. The spoil is dumped in inconspicuous locations, as at the base of trees, along natural drainage ditches, or along hedgerows.

11. REVETMENT. (See fig. 89.) Revetment is necessary in soft or sandy soil to prevent caving. It consists of lumber, wire netting, small branches, brush, sandbags filled with earth, or other available materials. The dimensions of the excavation are modified slightly to provide for the space occupied by the revetment.

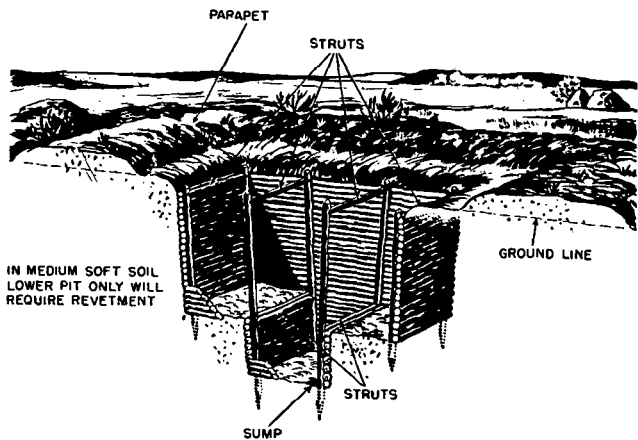


Figure 89. Cut-timber revetment.

12. DRAINAGE. Provision is made to take care of rain water, surface drainage, and seepage. In general, a shallow ditch a few inches deep around the excavation will carry off surface water. Water which falls into an excavation or seeps in through the ground is removed by bailing.

APPENDIX VI

TRAINING PROGRAM

Section I GENERAL

- 1. PURPOSE.** This appendix is a general guide for the tactical training of the rifle company and its squads, sections, and platoons (in preparation for further training on the battalion level).
- 2. APPLICATION.** Tactical training within the company is conducted according to the doctrine and procedures described in FM 21-5. Unit tactical training begins after the men have completed individual training, including the performance of their principal duty; care, operation, and use of their individual and crew weapons; and general instructions in the use of other platoon weapons. Throughout the training period, the application of prior instruction to current training is stressed. Each man is conditioned mentally for the shock of battle; every opportunity is taken to subject personnel to overhead fire, fire past their flanks, and the movement of tanks over fox holes and weapons emplacements. The development of leadership and initiative in unit leaders is kept in mind constantly throughout tactical training.

3. **MODIFICATION.** As in any program, it is necessary to modify details of the program to meet changes in the training time available, to make the best use of existing training facilities, and to conform to the weather. The general sequence of subjects and the general balancing of time among subjects should be preserved.

4. **TACTICAL TRAINING.** a. **General conduct of training.** When possible, the training should follow this sequence: conference, demonstration, practical work, and critique.

- (1) The *conference* is an explanation of the principles to be taught.
- (2) The *demonstration* or a tactical walk shows how it is done. When it is impracticable to present a demonstration or tactical walk, a sandtable exercise can be used. Training films also are used as an aid in the conference or as a substitute or supplement for the demonstration or tactical walk.
- (3) *Practical work* of the most value is in field exercises by the units concerned. Leaders observe execution and correct errors without discouraging enthusiasm and initiative. There are pauses in the exercises to allow corrections to be made.
- (4) A critique discusses the good and bad points of the exercise. It includes both commendation for proper application of tactical principles and constructive criticism for failure to apply those principles.

If the phases of training represented by the exercise is completed satisfactorily, the fact should be stated. Deficiencies are noted and corrective measures initiated.

b. Explanation of terms.

- (1) A *field exercise* is an exercise conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions, in which troops and armament of one side actually are present in whole or in part, while those of the other side are imaginary or represented.
- (2) A *conference* is a directed discussion of a subject. In the initial exercises in combat training, each exercise or phase of the exercise is preceded by a conference treating briefly the points to be covered during the exercise or phase. When a demonstration is used, part of the conference may be given concurrently with the demonstration. A conference includes class participation; a lecture includes little or none.
- (3) A *demonstration* is an accurate portrayal of a subject or procedure to be taught. During the demonstration, personnel receiving training are assembled on commanding ground to observe, and the instructor explains the lessons and principles being illustrated. While a demonstration is a valuable aid to the instruction, particularly in the early stage of combat training, it is not a substitute for practical work.

- (4) A *tactical walk* is an exercise in which a series of military operations are stated and solved on the ground, the troops being imaginary. A tactical walk can be used to supplement or replace a demonstration when it is impossible to prepare troops to present the demonstration. The instructor conducts the personnel receiving the instruction over suitable terrain, explaining and pointing out on the terrain the principles and situations involved. When a field exercise on the same subject is to follow a tactical walk, the most value can be obtained from the tactical walk when it is conducted over the same terrain on which the field exercise is to be held.
- (5) A *sand table* is a shallow box containing sand used to reproduce terrain in scale models. When it is impracticable to present a demonstration or tactical walk, the tactical principles can be presented effectively on a sand table. For details on the construction of a sand table, see FM 21-8.

c. Field exercises.

- (1) The greater portion of the training program prescribes a series of field exercises on the squad, platoon, and company level. The subjects listed and the hours shown should be used as guides for the minimum required to prepare the company progressively for training on the battalion level.

(2) Appendix VII contains a series of type field exercises for the subjects outlined in the training program. For some subjects, time has been allotted to conduct more than one field exercise. For example, in the training program (see par. 2, sec. II, this app.), 15 hours are given to the rifle squad in the attack. These 15 hours should be given over to a series of squad attack problems similar to the type field exercise (see par. 3, sec. II, app. VII) outlined for the rifle squad in the attack.

5. PHASES. The training program divides the training as follows:

| <i>Phase</i> | <i>Hours</i> |
|---------------|--------------|
| Squad | 44 |
| Platoon | 64 |
| Company | 100 |
| | <hr/> |
| Total | 208 |

Section II. SQUAD PHASE

1. **GENERAL.** The training program for the *rifle squad* is outlined in paragraph 2, this section. A program is not outlined for the *other squads* of the company (weapons, 57-mm rifle, and 60-mm mortar) because they ordinarily are not used as independent units. The rocket launcher team and the light machine gun team of the weapons squad usually operate with elements of the rifle platoon and on divergent missions; the 57-mm rifle squad or-

dinarily is placed in direct support of or attached to a rifle platoon; and the 60-mm mortar squad usually functions directly under section control. In the squad phase, these elements are given training which prepares them to operate efficiently during the platoon phase. This training includes as much of the following as is applicable to the various squads:

- a. Selection, occupation, and organization of positions in normal terrain, in woods, and in towns.
- b. Preparation of range cards.
- c. Establishment of observation posts.
- d. Use of communication.
- e. Ammunition supply.
- f. Displacement.
- g. Night occupation of positions.
- h. Night movement.

2. RIFLE SQUAD TRAINING SCHEDULE. (Total hours, 44.)

| Period | Hours | Lessons | Text references | Area | Training aids and equipment |
|--------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | 8 | Point of the advance guard. Conference, 1 hour. Field exercises, 7 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 52. | Classroom (indoors or outdoors) and ap- propriate terrain. | For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. |
| 2 | 4 | Flank guard Conference, ½ hour. Sand table, ½ hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 54. | Do. | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. |
| 3 | 16 | Attack Conference, 1 hour. Field exercises, 15 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 61 to 68, incl. | Do. | For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. |

2. RIFLE SQUAD TRAINING SCHEDULE (Continued)

| Period | Hours | Lessons | Text references | Area | Training aids and equipment |
|--------|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | 4 | Infiltration Conference, 1 hour. Field exercises, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 263 to 265, incl. | Do. . . . | Do. |
| 5 | 8 | Defense Conference, 1 hour. Field exercises, 7 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 77 to 82 incl. | Do. . . . | Do. |
| 6 | 4 | Outguard Conference, ½ hour. Sand table exercise, ½ hour. Field exercises, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 83. | Do. . . . | For instructor: blackboard, charts, and sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. |

Section III. PLATOON PHASE

1. **GENERAL.** The training program for the *rifle platoon* is outlined in paragraph 2, this section. A unit training program is not provided for the *weapons platoon* because the platoon does not operate as a unit; during combat the sections of the platoon function independently of each other on divergent missions. During the platoon phase, sections of the weapons platoon receive tactical training as indicated below.

a. The squads of the *57-mm rifle section* train with the rifle platoons in their normal role of attachment.

b. The training program for the *60-mm mortar section* is outlined in paragraph 3, this section. Of its total time (64 hours), 36 hours are allotted to the section for independent training, and 28 hours are allotted for combined training with rifle platoons. The section functions in direct support of a rifle platoon during specified field exercises.

2. RIFLE PLATOON TRAINING SCHEDULE. (Total hours, 64.)

| Period | Hours | Lessons | Text references | Area | Training aids and equipment |
|--------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | 8 | Advance party Conference, 1 hour. Sand table exercise, 1 hour. Field exercises, 6 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 116 to 121, incl. | Classroom (indoors or outdoors) and appropriate terrain. | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, individual equipment. |
| 2 | 16 | Attack Conference, 1 hour. Sand table exercises, 1 hour. Field exercises, 14 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 122 to 129, incl. | Do | Do. |
| 3 | 4 | Reorganization Conference ½ hour. Tactical walk, 1 hour. Field exercises, 2½ hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 73, 103, 130. | Do | For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil, individual equipment. |
| 4 | 8 | Night attack Conference, 1 hour. Field exercises, 7 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 200 to 225, incl. | Do | Do. |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | 4 | Attack in woods Conference, 1 hour. Field exercises, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 241 to 244 incl. | Do | Do. |
| 6 | 4 | Night raid Conference, 1 hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 245 to 262, incl. | Do | Do. |
| 7 | 8 | Defense Conference, 1 hour. Tactical walk, 1 hour. Field exercise, 6 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 132 to 141, incl. | Do | Do. |
| 8 | 4 | Combat outpost Conference, ½ hour. Sand table exercise, ½ hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 320. | Do | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, individual equip- ment. |
| 9 | 4 | Night relief of a front-line platoon Conference, 1 hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 290. | Do | For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil, individual equip- ment. |

2. RIFLE PLATOON TRAINING SCHEDULE (Continued)

| Period | Hours | Lessons | Text references | Area | Training aids and equipment |
|--------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10 | 4 | Night withdrawal Conference, 1 hour. Sand table exercise, 1 hour. Field exercise, 2 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 334. | Classroom (indoors or outdoors) and appropriate terrain. | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, individual equipment. |

3. 60-mm MORTAR SECTION TRAINING SCHEDULE. (Total hours, 64.)

| Period | Hours | Lessons | Text references | Area | Training aids and equipment |
|--------|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | 4 | Advance guard Conference, ½ hour. Sand table, ½ hour. Field exercises, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 22, 151, 152, and 157 to 162, incl. | Classroom and appropriate terrain. | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | 8 | Attack Conference, 1 hour. Sand table, 1 hour. Field exercises, 6 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 153 to 162, incl. | Do | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. For student: individual equip- ment. |
| 3 | 4 | Attack in woods Conference, 1 hour. Field exercises, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 241 to 244, incl. | Do | For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. For student: individual equip- ment. |
| 4 | 8 | Support of a rifle platoon in the attack Field exercises. | None | With rifle platoon. | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil and individual equip- ment. |
| 5 | 4 | Defense Conference, 1 hour. Sand table, 1 hour. Field exercises, 2 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 164 to 170, incl. | Classroom and ap- propriate terrain. | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil and individual equip- ment. |

3. 60-mm MORTAR SECTION TRAINING SCHEDULE (Continued)

| Period | Hours | Lessons | Text references | Area | Training aids and equipment |
|--------|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | 8 | Support of a rifle platoon in a night attack Field exercises. | None | With rifle platoon. | For student: individual equipment. |
| 7 | 4 | Support of a rifle platoon in attack of woods Field exercises. | None | With rifle platoon. | For student: individual equipment. |
| 8 | 4 | Combat outpost Conference, ½ hour. Sand table, ½ hour. Field exercises, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 320. | Classroom and appropriate terrain. | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, individual equipment. |
| 9 | 8 | Support of a rifle platoon in defense | None | With rifle platoon. | For student: individual equipment. |
| 10 | 4 | Support of a rifle platoon as a combat outpost . . . | None | Do | Do. |

| | | | | |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 11 | 4 Night relief Conference, 1 hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 290. | Classroom and ap- propriate terrain. | For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil, in- dividual equipment. |
| 12 | 4 Night withdrawal Conference, 1 hour. Sand table exercise, 1 hour. Field exercise, 2 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 333 and 334. | Do | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. |

Section IV. COMPANY PHASE

1. GENERAL. The training program for the rifle company is outlined in paragraph 2, this section. During this phase, the company is trained as a fighting team to execute battle missions under varying conditions.

2. RIFLE COMPANY TRAINING SCHEDULE. (Total hours, 100.)

| Period | Hours | Lessons | Text references | Area | Training aids and equipment |
|--------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | 8 | Support of an advance guard battalion Conference, 1 hour. Sand table exercise, 1 hour. Field exercises, 6 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 22, 52, and 116 to 121 incl. | Classroom (indoors or outdoors) and appropriate terrain. | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. |
| 2 | 4 | Support of a motorized advance guard battalion. Conference, ½ hour. Sand table exercise, ½ hour. Field exercises, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 31. | Do | Do. |
| 3 | 4 | Motorized detachment . . . Conference, ½ hour. Sand table exercise, ½ hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 34. | Do | Do. |

2. RIFLE COMPANY TRAINING SCHEDULE (Continued)

| Period | Hours | Lessons | Text references | Area | Training aids and equipment |
|--------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | 16 | Attack Conference, 1 hour. Sand table exercise, 1 hour. Field exercises, 14 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 171 to 191 incl. | Classroom (indoors or outdoors) and ap- propriate terrain. | For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. |
| 5 | 4 | Reorganization Conference, ½ hour. Sand table exercise, ½ hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 192. | Do | Do. |
| 6 | 8 | Night attack Conference, 1 hour. Sand table exercise, 1 hour. Field exercises, 6 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 200 to 225 incl. | Do | Do. |
| 7 | 4 | Attack in woods Conference, ½ hour. Sand table exercise, ½ hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 241 to 244 incl. | Do | Do. |

| | | | |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Attack of a river line . . . Conference, 1 hour. Sand table exercise, 1 hour. | FM 7-10, pars. 226 to 240 incl. | Do |
| 9 | Field exercise, 6 hours. Night raid Conference, 1 hour. Field exercises, 7 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 245 to 259 incl. | Do For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. For instructor: blackboard, charts, sand table. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equipment. For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil, and individual equip- ment. |
| 10 | Defense Conference, 1 hour. Sand table exercise, 1 hour. Field exercise, 6 hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 267 to 289 incl. | Do |
| 11 | 4 ³ Night relief Conference, ½ hour. Field exercise, 3 ½ hours. | FM 7-10, par. 290. | Do |

2. RIFLE COMPANY TRAINING SCHEDULE (Continued)

| Period | Hours | Lessons | Text references | Area | Training aids and equipment |
|--------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12 | 4 | Night withdrawal Conference, ½ hour. Field exercise, 3½ hours. | FM 7-10, pars. 333 and 334. | Classroom (indoors or outdoors) and ap- propriate terrain. Do | For instructor: blackboard, charts. For student: notebook, pencil and individual equipment. Do. |
| 13 | 8 | | | | |
| 14 | 4 | Reverse slope defense . . . Conference, 1 hour. Field exercise, 7 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 291. | Do | Do. |
| 15 | 4 | Perimeter defense Conference, 1 hour. Tactical walk, 1 hour. Field exercise, 2 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 310. | Do | Do. |
| 16 | 4 | Assembly area outpost . . . Conference, 1 hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. Establishment and defense of road blocks Conference, 1 hour. Field exercise, 3 hours. | FM 7-10, par. 318. FM 7-10, par. 325. | Do Do | Do. Do. |

APPENDIX VII

FIELD EXERCISES

Section I. GENERAL

1. **GENERAL.** This appendix is a guide for the preparation and conduct of field exercises for the rifle company and its units. The exercises outlined cover most of the actions in which a rifle company is involved during combat. These exercises should be modified as local situations and the particular needs of individual units warrant.

2. **PREPARATION.** a. **General.** For a general discussion of the preparation of field exercises, see FM 21-5 and TF 7-295. For the control and conduct of field exercises, see FM 21-5. Officers and non-commissioned officers who are to participate in the exercise are instructed and oriented in the principles and methods of troop leading in advance of each field exercise. All personnel charged with the conduct of tactical training should study not only the text references listed in appendix VI, but also should read other pertinent literature concerning the subject. Preparation by instructors is essential. Provision is made for the absence from scheduled training of the minimum number of

officers and noncommissioned officers when such absence is for the preparation of instruction.

b. Tactical situation. The tactical situations are made logical and simple. The general situation furnishes the background information for the exercise, describing the situation as it exists at the beginning of the exercise. It states, in general terms, the information that the participants would know if they actually were in combat. The initial situation starts the action and normally consists of an order from the next higher commander. The initial requirement indicates in general terms what is expected of the unit. Subsequent or additional situations are prepared to continue the action through a definite phase of combat. A requirement similar to the initial requirement is prepared for each subsequent situation. In preparing exercises, it is kept in mind that teamwork of the unit in executing essential tactical operations is emphasized throughout the exercise, and that the exercise is for the benefit of all men. Terrain permitting, it often is advantageous for related exercises to be based on a continuing tactical situation. For example, separate exercises are fitted into one continuing situation for successive training in the approach march, attack, assault, and reorganization.

c. Terrain. After preparing a brief written outline of the scope of the exercise, the instructor makes a thorough reconnaissance of available terrain. This reconnaissance includes the selection of the most suitable area—one offering the largest variety of terrain features for a continuous de-

velopment of the exercise. For instance, training a unit in the defense requires a terrain which offers observation for smaller units and permits the delivery of effective fires. For the attack, it is desirable to have rolling terrain with open fields, thickets, woods, hedges, and buildings. In the area selected, the zone of action is checked beginning at the starting point and ending at the objective. Motor reconnaissance of the terrain is not sufficient. The instructor walks over the entire area and often assumes the prone position to examine the terrain as it will be seen through the eyes of both friendly and enemy troops. In such a manner, a general plan of the exercise—the place for the initial situation, the zone of action, and the position of the enemy—takes shape. Consideration is given to the effect which distant commanding terrain, in the direction of the enemy, may have on the tactical situation.

d. Representation of enemy. For details of the Aggressor Army, see FM's 30-101, 30-102, 30-103, and 30-104. The conduct of the enemy is confined to definite actions corresponding to the plan of the exercise. Aggressor tactics are planned in advance to provide as much realism and detail as are consistent with safety and the availability of personnel and materials. The enemy shows himself, fires, digs in, conceals himself, ceases fire, and screens himself by smoke in the manner and at the time and place ordered by the instructor. Artillery and mortar fires are represented best by explosive charges; fountains of earth rising into the air are a spectacular substitute for supporting artillery

fire. To represent hostile small-arms fire, the instructor or his assistants use signals or words to indicate the area covered by fire, showing whether the unit itself or some adjacent unit is the target. Communication between the instructor and the enemy leader, to bring about the desired action of the enemy at the proper time, is established best by radio or by prearranged flag signals. It is not desirable to prescribe the action of the enemy on a time schedule. Telephone, radio, and prearranged signals help the instructor to maintain firm control over the exercise at all times and permit brief interruptions of the exercise for timely corrections.

e. Ammunition. Fire as much ammunition as permitted. Field targets are used and scored. Blank ammunition is used when the use of live ammunition is not feasible. The ammunition supply plan is simulated realistically by the use of substitutes representing the volume and weight of ammunition requirements.

f. Equipment. The unit uses all weapons, vehicles, and other equipment authorized.

g. Administrative arrangements. In his written plans for the exercise, the instructor preparing the problem states when, how, and by whom the administrative arrangements for all units will be made. Such arrangements include familiarizing the umpires and the enemy personnel with the problems and with their own functions; arrangements for procuring and placing targets, procurement of ammunition; range guards and safety precautions; transportation, uniforms and equipment of par-

ticipating units; road closures, and permission to use the area.

3. CONDUCT. a. General. A field exercise is prepared as a realistic situation in which the enemy is represented. It is executed forcefully as one coherent operation and is followed by a critique. Combat missions are executed by the application of tactical principles and not by following arbitrary rules. In the tactical training of small units, combat procedures are stressed. Unit umpires closely observe the use of defiladed routes, individual cover and concealment, response to orders and signals, proper technique of fire, fire and maneuver, and exploitation of supporting fires.

b. Umpires. For the responsibilities, duties, and conduct of umpires, see FM 105-5. Umpires supply the elements of action which are lacking under simulated conditions, especially the effect of fire. Keeness, enthusiasm, and imagination are essential to effective umpiring. All umpires are informed in advance of the object of each exercise, the situation, the plan of action, the type of assumed fire actions, and any special duties. During the exercise, umpires make notes of points to be covered in the critique. Umpires and their assistants should be marked distinctively by white helmet bands or shoulder loops.

c. Instructor. The instructor directs the exercise and is chief umpire. He does not command the unit undergoing the instruction. The company commander umpires exercises involving his pla-

toons. Platoon leaders umpire exercises involving the sections and squads of their platoons.

d. Assistants. In small units, umpires usually are noncommissioned officers who observe the course of the action and guide it through its phases which are coordinated by the instructor. One umpire with an assistant, if available, is assigned to each squad and platoon. The assistant checks the execution of the tactical phases and such technical matters as safety regulations and proficiency in the technique of fire.

e. Orientation. On the day of the exercise, the enemy troops are concealed in position before the units undergoing training arrive in the training area. Following any necessary conference on the exercise, the instructor orients the unit on the ground and announces the initial situation to the assembled unit. The exercise is begun on orders or by a prearranged signal from the instructor.

f. Development of the action.

- (1) The plan of conducting the exercise includes the progressive development of the action as to time and space; the representation of troops and fires; use of smoke; use of explosive charges and other noise producers; use of gas masks; use of road block signs; arrival of messages and orders; occurrence of simulated casualties essential to the conduct of the exercise; replacement of leaders; cooperation with supporting weapons; appearance of friendly and hostile aircraft and tanks; and progressive maneuvers of the enemy

forces represented by troops or prearranged signals.

- (2) During the conduct of the exercise, leaders are allowed a reasonable time for reconnaissance, decisions, plans, and issuance and execution of orders. Excessive speed in the execution of an exercise usually destroys training values. Properly conducted progressive training in combat technique teaches unit leaders to make rapid decisions when a quickly changing situation requires such action.
- (3) When necessary, the exercise is interrupted for correction of errors or for brief discussion. Pauses are announced by a prearranged signal and are conducted under nontactical conditions—which may be indicated by having the men remove their headgear. This method of interrupting the exercise for brief discussion is recommended especially for early periods of combat training in order to emphasize principles while the actions still are fresh in the minds of the men, to ascertain the right and wrong of orders issued by leaders, and to insure that each individual understands the situation. At the conclusion of the exercise, as well as at the end of each phase, men are assembled for a critique.

g. Critique. While personnel are assembling for a critique, the instructor holds a brief discussion with the umpires and consolidates their notes pre-

pared during the exercise. An essential factor of good instruction in combat training is tactful and constructive criticism. In his critique, conducted on the ground immediately after each field exercise, the instructor discusses the performance in each phase of the exercise and makes comparisons with other possible solutions. To state merely that a certain part of the exercise was well done, or poorly or incorrectly done, has no instructional value. Instead, the *why* and the probable consequences in actual combat are emphasized in regard to the possible solutions. Praise and criticism are weighed carefully at the critique. Recognition increases the self-reliance of any man or leader. On the other hand, tactical errors and their consequence are discussed in detail. In making criticisms, the instructor avoids ridicule, sarcasm, and any remarks which might be harmful to initiative or which might lead, in the minds of men, to a dislike of assuming responsibility. The critique is concise and factual so that the men leave the critique feeling that they have benefited by it.

Section II. RIFLE SQUAD

1. POINT OF THE ADVANCE GUARD.

Scope

A problem involving the use of the rifle squad as the point of an advance guard.

Situations are drawn to require—

a. Orders and the initial formation for the advance.

b. Action of the squad during the advance before making contact with the enemy.

c. Action of the squad when contact with the enemy is made.

Standard procedure

The squad leader's order is brief, concise, and clear and is based on the platoon leader's order. The order covers the mission assigned to the squad and the initial formation.

The squad precedes the advance party along the axis of advance. It observes toward the front and flanks and halts only when ordered by the advance party commander.

The squad leader, through aggressive leadership, controls the action of the squad. The squad attacks by fire all hostile elements within range and reports the presence of these elements to the advance party commander. Hostile elements beyond effective range are reported.

2. FLANK GUARD.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle squad which has been detailed to act as a flank guard to protect a unit on the march.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Movement of the squad to a series of designated positions on the flank of a marching column.
- b. Investigation of areas likely to conceal hostile elements or to provide the enemy observation on the marching column.
- c. Selection of firing positions for each man in the squad.
- d. Actions when a hostile force is observed or encountered.

Standard procedure

The squad moves by the fastest suitable route to the designated locality to be investigated or occupied.

Vehicles are used by the squad to prevent delay in occupying positions and returning to the column.

The squad leader selects firing positions for each man for all-around security. Observers are posted. Hostile elements are reported to the commander who sent out the squad and immediately are attacked by fire if within effective range.

The squad leader exercises aggressive leadership and initiative in accomplishing his mission.

3. ATTACK.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle squad attacking as part of an assault platoon.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Occupation of the squad is part of the platoon assembly area, preparations of the squad for attack, and movement to the attack position.
- b. Squad leader's orders.
- c. Crossing the line of departure.
- d. Conduct of the attack.
- e. Assault.
- f. Reorganization.

Standard procedure

The rifle squad occupies a part of the platoon assembly area as designated by the platoon leader.

The squad leader disperses his men, has them take advantage of cover and concealment, and checks their condition, weapons, and equipment. After receiving the platoon leader's order, the squad leader makes a reconnaissance, plans the attack, and issues his order.

The squad moves to the platoon attack position and across the line of departure under the control of the platoon leader. When first firing at the enemy, the squad leader seeks to establish fire superiority by placing a volume of intense, accurate fire on the enemy. Members of the squad continually

move forward, covered by the fire of other men of the squad.

The squad leader controls the fire and movement of his squad. He places his automatic rifle team in positions where it can fire most effectively on the enemy and thereby cover the forward movement of other men of the squad. When the assault position is reached, the squad leader has the squad start the assault according to the platoon leader's instructions.

When the objective is captured, the squad leader moves his squad into position to repel an enemy counterattack, according to the platoon leader's orders. When all men are in position, he reorganizes his squad and checks the condition of the men, the weapons, and the status of ammunition. He reports his strength and weapons and ammu-

dition requirements to the platoon leader. Reconnaissance relative to continuing the attack is begun.

4. INFILTRATION.

Scope

A problem involving the rifle squad in infiltration.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Preparation, reconnaissance, and orders by the squad leader.
- b. Actions of the squad in carrying out the assigned mission.

Standard procedure

Based on orders from the platoon leader, the squad leader selects an assembly area within friendly lines, selects the point where the squad will pass the friendly outpost, selects the route from the assembly area to the friendly outpost line, reconnoiters the terrain over which the squad is to move, selects tentative rallying points where the squad will reassemble if members become separated, selects an assembly area within enemy lines and issues a clear, detailed order indicating what each man will do.

The squad advances silently in column.

Security is provided to the front and flanks. The squad leader moves where he best can control the squad and constantly checks the route and direction. Enemy outposts are avoided or eliminated as quietly as possible. The squad moves into the designated assembly area. The squad leader exercises aggressive leadership and initiative in accomplishing the assigned mission.

5. DEFENSE.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle squad as part of a platoon in the organization, occupation, and defense of an interior front-line defense area.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. The squad leader's order.
- b. Organization and occupation of the squad defense area.

Standard procedure

The squad leader, assigned a defense area, determines the exact location for each member of the squad and individual sectors of fire. When practicable, he issues the defense order on the position.

During the organization of the position, the squad leader supervises closely the execution of the assigned tasks. The defense

c. Conduct of the defense to include—

- (1) Fire control.
- (2) Final protective fires.
- (3) Action against an enemy penetration of an adjacent defense area.
- (4) Occupation of supplementary positions to meet a threatened envelopment of the platoon defense area.

area, when organized, provides overlapping fires within the squad and fires to both flanks.

During the hostile attack, the squad leader controls the fire of his squad to defend the position and to give assistance to adjacent units. He takes part in the fire fight only to assist in close-in defense of the squad.

6. OUTGUARD.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle squad as an outguard for a rifle platoon assigned as a combat outpost.

Situation is based on establishing an outguard to conform with the orders of

Standard procedure

The squad leader reconnoiters the assigned outguard position and selects positions for men in the squad which permit good observation and long fields of fire.

The outguard is organized on a normal

Scope

the platoon leader and is drawn to require—

- a. Reconnaissance of the designated outguard position and the selection of individual firing positions.
- b. Establishment of the outguard position by the squad leader.
- c. Actions of the outguard.

Standard procedure

frontage, fox holes are dug, the position is camouflaged, and routes of withdrawal are selected. Sentinel and listening posts are established and patrols are detailed according to instructions from the platoon leader.

The outguard gives warning of the approach of hostile forces and opens fire at long range. The outguard continues to fire on the enemy until ordered to withdraw by the combat outpost commander. The withdrawal is made according to his instructions over a route which does not interfere with fire from the battle position.

Section III. RIFLE PLATOON

1. ADVANCE PARTY.

Scope

An advance guard problem involving

Standard procedure

The platoon leader makes prompt deci-

the use of the rifle platoon as an advance party.

Situations are drawn to require—
a. An advance party order prescribing the formation, the disposition of organic and attached weapons, and instructions relative to flank security.

b. A series of decisions, plans, and orders by the platoon leader relative to action involving the point, connecting files, and the advance party in carrying out the assigned mission.

sions; issues clear and concise orders to carry out his plans; maintains contact with the point by radio and by connecting files; and keeps the support commander informed of the situation.

When the point is unable to drive off the enemy without delay, the advance party is committed aggressively. When the enemy is destroyed or driven off, the march is resumed promptly in a suitable formation.

The platoon leader, through aggressive leadership, controls the actions of his platoon in carrying out the assigned mission.

2. ATTACK.

Scope

A problem involving an interior rifle platoon, as part of a larger force in the assault echelon.

Standard procedure

Movement into the assembly area is quiet and orderly. Rations and extra ammunition are issued to prevent the bunching of men.

Scope

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Movement from tactical column into an assembly area, preparation of the platoon for the attack, and movement from the assembly area to an attack position.
- b. Reconnaissance and observation of the ground over which the platoon will attack.
- c. Plan of action.
- d. Orders.
- e. A series of decisions and orders by the platoon leader during the attack to cope with developments.
- f. Assault of the enemy's position.

3. REORGANIZATION.

Scope

A problem involving an interior rifle

Standard procedure

The platoon leader, with such assistants as he may select, makes a thorough reconnaissance. He prepares his plan of action and issues his orders from a concealed point where, if possible, the ground over which the platoon will attack can be pointed out. His decisions and orders during the attack are prompt, clear, and concise. By aggressive leadership, he controls his platoon during the attack and the assault.

Standard procedure

Upon capture of the objective, the platoon

platoon, as part of a larger force, reorganizing on the initial company objective.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. A plan for reorganization.
- b. Disposition of the platoon to repel a counterattack.
- c. A series of decisions and orders by the platoon leader (to include the use of supporting fires) to repel a counterattack.
- d. Preparation to continue the attack, based on the company commander's order.

leader supervises the reorganization of his platoon. When necessary, he alters the instructions given in the attack order.

Weapons cover avenues of enemy approach and rifle squads are assigned sectors to defend.

Communication with supporting weapons is established promptly.

The platoon leader controls the fires of his platoon in repelling a counterattack.

Squad leaders begin the reorganization of their squads as soon as they are in position to repel a counterattack. Reports from squad leaders are consolidated, adjustments made where necessary, and a report is made to the company commander.

Casualties, prisoners, and battlefield intelligence are sent to the rear promptly.

. According to the company commander's

order, the platoon leader starts his reconnaissance for the future use of his platoon.

4. NIGHT ATTACK.

Scope

A problem involving the use of a rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in a night attack.

Situations are based on an attack shortly before daylight to seize a limited objective which will facilitate continuation of the attack after daylight, or an attack shortly before nightfall to exploit a successful day attack. They are drawn to require—

a. Reconnaissance of routes, line or point of departure, and of the ground over which the attack will be made.

Standard procedure

After receiving the company commander's orders, the platoon leader reconnoiters in detail the terrain from the assembly area to the objective.

The platoon leader's plan and attack order is based on the company attack order. It is simple. Provisions are made for likely developments.

The platoon leader places his unit in the formation ordered by the company commander. He marches at the head of his column and constantly checks on the maintenance of direction and contact. He sends out necessary security elements and controls

- b. Formulation of plan and issuance of order by the platoon leader.
- c. Maintenance of direction, contact, security, and control during a silent advance to the line of deployment.
- d. Assault of the objective.
- e. Reorganization after capture of the objective.

their action, and he sees that the advance is made quietly with all secrecy measures enforced.

The platoon advances in column to the line of deployment where it deploys silently as skirmishers. After deployment, the advance continues at a walk in coordination with the advance of the remainder of the company.

The assault is launched aggressively as soon as hostile resistance is encountered or the attack is discovered.

Upon capture of the hostile position, the platoon is disposed to repel a hostile counter-attack and prepares to continue the attack.

5. ATTACK IN WOODS.

Scope

A problem involving an interior rifle

Standard procedure

Security elements precede the platoon,

Scope

platoon, as part of a larger force, in an attack in woods.

Situations are based on the assumption that the platoon has gained the near edge of the woods, reorganized, and is ready to continue the attack.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Use of security elements to cover the advance.
- b. An advance made by azimuth direction and, when the wooded area is large, by bounds within the woods.
- c. Formation in a line of squad columns.
- d. Provision for flank protection.
- e. Decisions and orders by the platoon leader upon encountering resistance within the woods.

Standard procedure

reconnoitering to the front and flanks. They signal the platoon to advance when all is clear. The formation of the platoon varies with the density of the woods. When advancing within the woods, the platoon leader takes precautions to prevent the loss of direction, maintains contact with adjacent units, and provides for security.

Movement is made by bounds. Contact and control is regained after each bound. The attack on hostile resistance consists of a series of maneuvers to gain local objectives, primarily by flanking action. The platoon leader's decisions are prompt and his orders clear and brief. He controls his platoon by aggressive leadership.

6. NIGHT RAID.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle platoon making an unsupported night raid with the mission of gaining information and capturing prisoners.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Organization of the raiding force.
- b. Orders and instructions by the platoon leader.
- c. Plans and preparations for the execution of the mission.
- d. Execution of the raid.

Standard procedure

After a thorough map study and ground reconnaissance, the platoon leader makes his plan. His preparations for the raid include providing for visible identification marks for each man at night; signals for control; inspection of physical condition, arms, and equipment of men of the platoon; removal of distinctive insignia, written matter, maps and documents; designation of key noncommissioned officers to assist in control during the movement and the raid; and rehearsal of the platoon on similar ground, when practicable.

The platoon leader organizes the platoon for control and all-around security. His orders are clear and in detail. The men are given information of the mission, enemy situation, general route to be followed, disposi-

tion of friendly troops through which the platoon will pass, and the probable time of return. Instructions on actions taken in case of discovery are specific. Rallying points are designated for use if men of the platoon become separated.

The platoon moves to its objective in secrecy, accomplishes its mission, and returns through friendly lines.

7 DEFENSE.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in the organization, occupation, and defense of an interior front-line platoon defense area. Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Reconnaissance of the area.

Standard procedure

The platoon leader precedes the platoon, reconnoiters the area to be occupied, formulates his defense plan, and issues his order so that the platoon may move into the area without delay.

When organized, the defense provides for

b. Formulation of the platoon defense plans.

c. Issuance of the platoon defense order.

d. Organization and occupation of the platoon defense area.

e. Conduct of the defense to include—

- (1) Fire control
- (2) Final protective fires.
- (3) Action against an enemy penetration of an adjacent platoon defense area.
- (4) Occupation of one or more squad supplementary positions to meet a threatened envelopment of the platoon defense area.

mutual support, close protection for supporting weapons, and fires to cover the assigned front. Full use is made of natural features for camouflage and concealment during organization of the position, the platoon leader and squad leaders closely supervise and control all tasks to see that the defense plan is carried out.

The platoon leader, through aggressive leadership, uses all the means at his disposal to defend the position and to assist adjacent units.

8. COMBAT OUTPOST:

Scope

A problem involving a rifle platoon as the combat outpost for an interior front line battalion.

Situations are based on establishing a combat outpost to conform with orders of the battalion commander and are drawn to require—

- a. Reconnaissance of the designated outpost position and the selection of outguard positions by the platoon leader.
- b. Establishment of the combat outpost by the platoon leader to furnish the required security.
- c. Actions of the combat outpost.

Standard procedure

The platoon leader makes a map or visual reconnaissance of the outpost position. He selects terrain for outguard positions which allows long-range observation and fields of fire. Outguards organize their positions covering a normal frontage. Sentinels or patrols are used to the front, flanks, and rear to furnish security. Provisions are made for patrolling between outguards and for contact with adjacent outpost positions.

The combat outpost warns of the approach of a hostile force and opens fire at long range with all available weapons. The combat outpost delays the enemy's attack until he is within assaulting distance or threatens to envelop the outpost position. The outpost then withdraws by previously selected

routes which do not interfere with fire from the battle position.

9. NIGHT RELIEF OF A FRONT-LINE PLATOON.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in a night relief of a front line platoon.

Situations are drawn to require—

a. Prior planning by the platoon leader to include—

- (1) Inspection of individual equipment, arms, ammunition, and rations.
- (2) Daylight reconnaissance and inspection of the position, accompanied by the platoon leader to be relieved.
- (3) The plan of defense.

Standard procedure

The incoming platoon leader, assisted by his noncommissioned officers, inspects his platoon in detail for the prescribed equipment, arms, ammunition, and rations.

Both platoon leaders make a thorough inspection of the position and recommend the transfer of supplies and weapons, if appropriate.

The incoming platoon leader orients himself on his mission, the organization of the ground, the plan of defense, and supply. He obtains all available information on local hostile and friendly dispositions, habits, obstacles, and fires. He passes this informa-

Scope

- (4) Arrangements for guides to conduct elements of the platoon to their positions.
- b. The execution of the relief, under cover of darkness, as planned by the platoon leader.

Standard procedure

tion on to his platoon and assigns squads to positions in the defense area.

He arranges for guides to lead elements of his platoon to their assigned positions during darkness. The relief is made quietly and without lights. After the major part of the platoon is in position, the platoon leader assumes responsibility for the defense. He makes periodic reports to the company commander during the relief. After the relief is completed, he inspects the position and notifies the company commander.

10. NIGHT WITHDRAWAL.*Scope*

A problem involving the night withdrawal of a front-line rifle platoon as part of a larger force. Situations are drawn to require—

Standard procedure

Men selected by the platoon leader mark routes of withdrawal and reconnoiter and mark assembly areas during daylight. Reconnoitering groups are kept small to pre-

a. Reconnaissance of the platoon and company assembly areas and routes of withdrawal.

b. Issuance of orders.

c. Designation and use of the covering force.

d. Control measures for movement of the platoon to the company assembly area.

e. Sequence of withdrawal of personnel.

f. Secrecy measures.

g. Ammunition supply.

serve secrecy. Routes which can be identified easily after dark are chosen.

The platoon leader personally issues the withdrawal order to his lower unit leaders. When practicable, integrity of squads is maintained in designating the platoon covering force.

Rearward movement begins after dark according to battalion orders. Men move to squad assembly areas where squad leaders regain control and move squads to the platoon assembly area. Small column formations are used. The movement is made quietly, without confusion, and with secrecy. The covering force simulates normal activity. Enough ammunition for its needs is left with the covering force; surplus ammunition is carried to the rear or made useless.

Section IV. 60-MM MORTAR SECTION

1. ADVANCE GUARD.

Scope

A problem involving the use of the 60-mm mortar section as part of a rifle company acting as the support of an advance guard battalion.

Situations are based on the platoon leader's order and are drawn to require—

- a. Section leader's order.
- b. Use of the weapons carrier to transport mortars and ammunition.
- c. Hasty occupation of firing positions in support of an attack by the advance party.
- d. Use of the section to support the

Standard procedure

The section leader, after receiving the platoon leader's order, makes necessary plans and issues his order.

Before starting the march, the section leader checks the men of the section for proper equipment and sees that the weapons carrier load is complete and compact.

During the march, the section leader controls the movement of the section. He also observes for firing positions to be occupied if contact is established with the enemy.

When contact is established, he moves the section into position as directed by the platoon leader. By aggressive leadership and

company, attacking resistance which is holding up the advance party.

without detailed reconnaissance, he sees that mortars are placed quickly in position to support an attack promptly.

When the support proper assists the advance party, the section leader sees that his weapons are in a proper position to give fire support.

2. ATTACK.

Scope

A problem involving the use of the 60-mm mortar section as part of a rifle company in the assault echelon.

Situations are drawn to require—

a. Movement from tactical column into an assembly area, preparation of the section for the attack, and movement from the assembly area to the firing position.

Standard procedure

Movement into the assembly area is quiet and orderly. Rations and extra ammunition are issued to prevent the bunching of men.

The section leader makes a thorough reconnaissance of the firing position area. He issues his orders from a concealed point where, if possible, the ground over which the attack will be made can be observed.

He supervises the occupation of firing

Scope

- b. Reconnaissance for firing positions.
- c. Section leader's order.
- d. Occupation of positions.
- e. Fire support of assault platoons.
- f. Displacement to continue close support for assault platoons.
- g. Use of the section in support of the company in repelling a hostile counterattack.
- h. Preparation to continue the attack, based on the platoon leader's order.

Standard procedure

positions and the movement of the weapons carrier. During the attack, he controls the fire of his section and displaces forward, when necessary, to closely support the assault platoons. He anticipates the resupply of ammunition and uses his weapons carriers to the maximum for this purpose.

Upon capture of the initial company objective, the section leader supervises the displacement to previously reconnoitered firing positions where the section can cover hostile avenues of approach. He sees that the displacement is prompt and that communication with forward observers is maintained.

When a hostile counterattack is made against the position, he controls the fire of the section in support of the rifle company.

Reports as to strength, weapons, and ammunition requirements are obtained from

squad leaders; adjustments are made where necessary; casualties are evacuated; and a report is made to the platoon leader.

Maximum use is made of the weapons carrier in displacement and ammunition resupply.

Reconnaissance is started promptly for positions to support the continuation of the attack.

3. ATTACK IN WOODS.

Scope

A problem involving the use of the 60-mm mortar section, as part of a rifle company, in an attack in woods. Situations are based on the assumption that the company has gained the near edge of the woods, reorganized, and is ready to continue the attack.

Standard procedure

During the reorganization of the rifle platoons, after the capture of the near edge of the woods, the section leader reconnoiters for positions to support the continuation of the attack. Positions selected use openings in the woods for mask clearance.

The section leader supervises the occupa-

Scope

- Situations are drawn to require—
- a. Selection of positions in woods to support the assault platoons.
 - b. Occupation and organization of positions.
 - c. Support of advance through the woods.
 - d. Displacements.
 - e. Provisions for security.

Standard procedure

tion of the firing positions and the movement of the weapons carrier. During the attack, he controls the fire of his section and displaces, when necessary, to provide close support of the assault platoons in their attack through the woods.

Local security is established as a precaution against enemy infiltration. If the terrain prohibits the use of the weapons carrier, the section leader supervises the handling of an adequate supply of ammunition.

4. DEFENSE.*Scope*

A problem involving the use of the 60-mm mortar section as a part of a rifle company, in the organization, oc-

Standard procedure

The section leader reconnoiters the position area, formulates a plan for the use of the section, and issues his order so that the

cupation, and defense of an interior front-line company defense area.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Reconnaissance of the area.
- b. Section leader's order.
- c. Organization and occupation of the positions.
- d. Preparation of firing data for concentrations and barrages.
- e. Supporting fires during the defense.

section can move into the area without delay.

He supervises the organization of the position, seeing that maximum use is made of natural features for camouflage and concealment and that the defense plan is carried out. Firing data are prepared, ammunition stored, and communication established.

During the hostile attack, he controls the fires of the section and uses all the means at his disposal to maintain adequate fire support for the company.

5. COMBAT OUTPOST.

Scope

A problem involving the use of the 60-mm mortar section attached to a combat outpost.

Situations are based on establishing

Standard procedure

The section leader reconnoiters to select firing positions where the section best can support the outguard positions. The positions are occupied and the mortars are reg-

Scope

a combat outpost to conform with orders of the battalion commander and are drawn to require—

- a. Reconnaissance of the designated outpost position to select firing positions to support the outguard positions and routes of withdrawal.
- b. Occupation of positions.
- c. Use of the section in support of a combat outpost.

Standard procedure

istered on likely avenues of hostile approach into the outpost position.

The combat outpost warns of the approach of a hostile force. The mortars open fire at their extreme range and keep the hostile force under fire until ordered to withdraw by the combat outpost commander. The section withdraws by a previously selected route which does not interfere with fire from the battle position. The weapons carrier is used to the maximum extent in all phases of the operation.

6. NIGHT RELIEF.*Scope*

A problem involving the use of the 60-mm mortar section, as part of a rifle company, in a night relief.

Situations are drawn to require—

Standard procedure

The incoming section leader makes a detailed inspection of his section for the prescribed equipment, arms, ammunition, and rations for each man and squad.

a. Prior planning to include—

- (1) Inspection of individual and squad equipment, arms, ammunition and rations.
- (2) Reconnaissance and inspection of the position occupied by the 60-mm mortar section to be relieved.
- (3) Securing firing data from the unit to be relieved.
- (4) Arrangement for guides to conduct the section to the firing position.
- (5) Arrangements for taking over mortar ammunition of the unit in position.

b. The execution of the relief under cover of darkness.

The section leader inspects the position occupied by the unit to be relieved in order to make recommendations on the transfer of weapons and supplies. He secures firing data for concentrations and barrages. The incoming leader orients himself on the mission, organization of the position, the plan of defense, and supply arrangements. He obtains all available information on local hostile and friendly dispositions, obstacles, and fires. This information is passed on to the squads. Arrangements are made for guides to lead the sections during darkness to the assigned position area. The relief is made quietly and without lights. After the major part of the section is in position, the section leader assumes responsibility for the defense. When the relief is complete, the

*Scope**Standard procedure*

section leader inspects the position and notifies his platoon leader.

7. NIGHT WITHDRAWAL*Scope*

A problem involving the use of the 60-mm mortar section, as part of a rifle company, in a night withdrawal. Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Reconnaissance of a company assembly area and a route of withdrawal to it.
- b. Issuance of order.
- c. Designation of squads to remain with the covering force.
- d. Control measures for movement of the section to the company assembly area.
- e. Sequence of withdrawal.

Standard procedure

The route of withdrawal to the company assembly area is reconnoitered and marked during daylight. To preserve secrecy, reconnoitering groups are small. The route is chosen for easy identification after dark.

The section leader's order is clear as to the sequence of withdrawal, the route to the rear, and location of the assembly area.

One or more squads are left in position, attached to the company covering force.

Rearward movement begins after dark according to battalion orders. The movement is made quietly, without confusion, and with secrecy. The squads attached to the cover-

- f. Secrecy measures.
 - g. Ammunition supply.
- ing force simulates normal activity. Orders for the withdrawal of the covering force are issued by the covering force commander. Enough ammunition is left with the covering force mortars; surplus ammunition is carried to the rear or made useless.

Section V. RIFLE COMPANY

1. SUPPORT OF AN ADVANCE GUARD BATTALION.

Scope

A problem involving the rifle company as the support of an advance guard battalion in the approach march. Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Issuance of a company order prescribing the mission, composition, formation, and instructions relative to flank security.

Standard procedure

The company commander issues a clear, concise order. He details one platoon as the advance party and specifies the composition of the advance party and the support proper. He designates the formation of the entire support, to include distances between elements. He issues instructions relative to flank, antiaircraft, and antitank security.

Scope

b. A series of decisions, plans, and orders by the company commander involving the advance party and the support proper in carrying out the assigned mission.

Standard procedure

He maintains contact with the support by means of radio and connecting files and with the advance guard reserve by means of radio and messengers.

When the advance party is unable to drive off the enemy without delay, the support proper is committed aggressively. When the enemy is destroyed or driven off, the march is resumed promptly in a suitable formation.

The company commander, through aggressive leadership, controls the actions of his company in carrying out the assigned mission.

2. SUPPORT OF A MOTORIZED ADVANCE GUARD BATTALION.

Scope

A problem involving the rifle company as the support of a motorized ad-

Standard procedure

The company commander issues a clear, concise order. He specifies the composition

vance guard battalion in the approach march.

Situations are drawn to require—

a. Issuance of a company order prescribing the mission, composition, formation, and instruction relative to flank security and contact with a preceding motorized security detachment.

b. A series of decisions, plans, and orders by the company commander involving the motorized support carrying out the assigned mission.

and formation of the support, issues instructions relative to flank, antiaircraft, and anti-tank security and provides for contact between the company and the motorized security detachment by means of motorized patrols and radio.

When the motorized security detachment is unable to drive off the enemy without delay, the support is committed aggressively. When the enemy is destroyed or driven off, the march is resumed promptly in a suitable formation.

The company commander, through aggressive leadership, controls the actions of his company in carrying out the assigned mission.

3. MOTORIZED DETACHMENT.

Scope

A problem involving the rifle com-

Standard procedure

The company commander issues clear and

Scope

pany, with appropriate reinforcements, acting as a motorized detachment preceding an advance guard battalion. The reinforcements used in the problem depend on what is made available by higher commanders.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Orders for assembling the detachment and moving out on the assigned mission.
- b. Security measures against ground, air, and tank attacks.
- c. Conduct of the detachment in reconnoitering the route of advance of the column.
- d. Actions when the enemy is encountered.

Standard procedure

detailed orders so that all elements of the motorized detachment assemble in an orderly manner with the proper equipment. His orders provide for communication within the detachment and with the main body commander. He prescribes the formation and controls movement by assigning march objectives and phase lines. Advances are made by bounds from one terrain feature to the next.

When the enemy is encountered, the company commander promptly issues orders for the use of the detachment, to protect the advancing column from a meeting engagement.

4. ATTACK.

Scope

A problem involving an interior rifle company, as part of a larger force, in the assault echelon.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Movement from tactical column into the assembly area, preparation of the company for the attack, and movement from the assembly area to an attack position.

- b. Reconnaissance and observation of the ground over which the company is to attack.

- c. Troop leading procedure by the company commander.

- d. A series of decisions and orders by the company commander during the attack relating to the use of the assault platoons, the weapons platoon, the

Standard procedure

The movement into the assembly area is quiet and orderly. The platoons occupy part of the assembly area according to their expected future use. Steps are taken to establish camouflage and security. Troops are rested, and ammunition and rations are issued.

The company commander, with selected assistants, accomplishes the various phases of troop leading procedure. They culminate in an order issued to the platoon leaders and other necessary persons from a concealed point where, if possible, the terrain over which the company will attack can be pointed out.

The company moves to the attack position while the company commander is making his reconnaissance. Movement from the attack

Scope

support platoon, and supporting fires in gaining the company objective.

e. Assault and capture of the company objective.

Standard procedure

position is started to permit the assault platoons to cross the line of departure at the prescribed time without halting.

During the conduct of the attack, the company commander aggressively controls the actions of the assault platoons; uses the weapons platoon to assist most effectively the advance; uses the support platoon, if necessary, in the way which best will influence the action and calls for additional supporting fires from higher commanders to overcome stubborn resistance.

He provides for mutual support within the assault platoons and with adjacent units; provides for security and the maintaining of contact; and keeps the battalion commander informed of the situation.

He advances his assault platoons as close to the objective as possible, lifts or shifts supporting fires, and begins the assault.

5. REORGANIZATION.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company in the reorganization on a captured objective.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Plans for the reorganization.
- b. Movement to the objective in the assault.
- c. Reorganization on the objective to—

(1) Repel enemy counterattack.

(2) Prepare to continue the attack.

Standard procedure

Immediately upon capture of the objective, the elements of the company occupy positions to repel an enemy counterattack according to the plans included in the company commander's attack order. The company commander makes necessary adjustments, and he plans the use of all available supporting fires.

After all weapons and personnel have been disposed to repel a counterattack, reconnaissance is begun for a continuation of the attack. Concurrently, the company commander causes his platoon leaders to reorganize their platoons. Upon receipt of reports from the platoon leaders, the company commander has additional ammunition brought forward, if required. He reports the situation and strength of his company to the battalion

commander. Intelligence information is reported and prisoners are sent to prescribed collecting points.

The completion of the reorganization finds the company regrouped into an effective team with control reestablished, enough ammunition distributed, and adequate plans made to continue the attack.

6. NIGHT ATTACK.

Scope

A problem involving the use of a rifle company in a night attack.

Situations are based on an attack shortly before daylight to seize a limited objective, to aid the continuation of the attack after daylight or an attack shortly after nightfall, to exploit a successful day attack. They are drawn to require—

Standard procedure

After receipt of the battalion commander's order, the company commander alerts his company and makes a detailed reconnaissance of the terrain from the assembly area to the objective. He selects an attack position and routes to it.

The plan of attack is simple and issued as a clear, concise order in time for lower unit leaders to make their own reconnaissance.

- a. Daylight reconnaissance of the terrain by the company commander and selected leaders.
- b. Formulation of the plan and issuance of the order by the company commander.
- c. Execution of the attack.
- d. Reorganization after capture of the objective.

The company moves in column from the attack position to the platoon release point. The company commander provides for security to the front and flanks and insures direction and control. He requires that the advance be made quietly and that all security measures are enforced. He marches where he best can control the movement of the company.

The company is deployed as skirmishers at the line of deployment; the advance is continuous at a walk.

The assault is begun aggressively as soon as hostile resistance is encountered or the attack is discovered, and it is continued until the limit of advance is reached.

Upon capture of the hostile position, the company is disposed to repel a hostile counterattack and preparations are made to continue the attack.

7. ATTACK IN WOODS.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company in an attack in woods.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. The company halted within the near edge of the woods.
- b. Issuance of orders for the attack through the woods.
- c. Decisions and orders by the company commander during the advance through the woods relative to frontal and flank security, maintenance of direction and control, and the reduction of resistance.

d. Reorganization within the far edge of the woods and preparation to attack from the woods.

Standard procedure

The company is halted within the near edge of the woods. The proper formation is assumed, according to the density of the woods and the amount and type of enemy resistance expected.

After a careful consideration of all information obtainable and of factors influencing operations in woods, the company commander issues a clear, concise order for the advance.

During the advance, the company commander provides frontal and flank security by the use of patrols or connecting groups and, if necessary, he provides rear security for the company. He assigns a magnetic azimuth to leading platoons and checks to determine that the proper direction is maintained.

Resistance is eliminated quickly and aggressively by a combined frontal attack and flanking action.

The advance is halted near the far edge of the woods, positions are occupied to repel a hostile counterattack, and preparations are made to continue the attack out of the woods.

8. ATTACK OF A RIVER LINE.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company as part of a leading battalion which is assigned the mission of crossing a river, the far bank of which is held by the enemy. Engineers and assault boats required are made available by higher commanders.

Situations are drawn to require—

a. Reconnaissance of the attack po-

Standard procedure

The company commander uses his unit leaders to assist in reconnaissance and in obtaining information relative to the operation. He coordinates plans for the crossing with the leader of the engineer unit assisting his company. He divides the company into boat groups and allots boats to these groups. Tactical unity is maintained as far as practicable.

Scope

sition and routes to it, the crossing site, and the terrain on the far bank.

b. Organization of boat groups and assignment of personnel to boats by boat group leaders.

c. Plans for movement to the river, the crossing, and action after landing.

d. Orders.

e. Crossing the river and capture of the initial objective.

Standard procedure

The movement to the attack position and to the river is planned and executed to avoid pauses and so that boats of the leading wave are launched at approximately the same time. If the crossing is opposed, boat teams advance to the initial objective without attempting to reorganize into platoon groupings. Platoon leaders regain control of their platoons as soon as they can.

9. NIGHT RAID.*Scope*

A problem involving a rifle company in a supported night raid.

Situations are drawn to require—

a. Recommendations by the company commander relative to routes of advance and withdrawal and fire support.

Standard procedure

The company commander and his unit leaders make night and daylight reconnoissances; patrols are sent out to obtain information of the routes of advance and withdrawal and enemy strength and dispositions. The company is organized into a number

b. Plans and orders relative to—

- (1) Reconnaissance.
 - (2) Organization of the company.
 - (3) Equipment.
 - (4) Passage of obstacles.
 - (5) Rallying points.
 - (6) Flank protection.
 - (7) Withdrawal.
- c. Execution of the raid.**

of assault and support parties, each of which is assigned specific tasks.

Silent weapons, demolitions, and extra automatic weapons may be included in the equipment carried. Hands and faces are blackened and special means of identification are provided.

Wire cutters and bangalore torpedoes may be provided for breaching gaps in wire.

Supporting and protective fires are arranged for by the battalion commander in coordination with the company commander.

Rallying points are prescribed by the company commander along the routes of advance and withdrawal, in the vicinity of the objective area, and behind friendly lines.

Artillery and mortar concentrations on probable avenues of enemy approach and the

use of support parties as flank patrols are used for flank protection.

The withdrawal is ordered by the company commander through the use of a prearranged signal. The raiding force, less its covering force, assembles at rallying points and withdraws, covered by its covering force and the planned fires of supporting weapons.

The attack phase of a night raid is conducted similar to a night attack.

10. DEFENSE.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company, as part of a larger force, in the organization, occupation, and defense of an interior front-line defense area.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Movement of troops to the defense

Standard procedure

The company commander makes a tentative plan, based on a thorough map study of the assigned company defense area, and initiates the movement of troops to the area. Accompanied by necessary leaders, he precedes the company and completes as much

area during the reconnaissance of this area by the company commander and lower unit leaders.

b. Troop leading procedure by the company commander.

c. Organization and occupation of the company defense area.

d. Conduct of the defense against an attack of hostile combined arms to include—

(1) Action of local security groups.

(2) Action of troops on the main battle position before the enemy assault.

(3) Action of troops on the main battle position during the enemy assault.

(4) Action against an enemy pene-

of his troop leading procedure as is practicable. Orders are issued as soon as the troops arrive to enable work to commence without delay.

The position is organized to provide the maximum coverage of the most dangerous avenues of approach, mutual support between front-line platoons and with adjacent company defense areas, all-around defense, and protection for supporting weapons located in the company defense area. Fox holes and weapons emplacements are dug and camouflaged. Enough ammunition is placed on position and arrangements are made for resupply. The company commander closely supervises and controls the organization and occupation of the position to see that his defense plan is carried out.

Local security groups open fire on the

Scope

tration of an adjacent company defense area.

- (5) Action against an enemy penetration of a front-line platoon defense area.
- (6) Action when the company is surrounded.

Standard procedure

enemy at long range, delay him as long as possible, and withdraw by previously selected routes.

Requests for supporting fires are made by the company commander. Troops on the main battle position open fire on appropriate targets when the enemy comes within effective small-arms range.

Final protective fires by all weapons and units are delivered against the enemy when he reaches the area covered by these fires.

Assistance is given to adjacent company defense areas by flanking fire on any enemy who penetrates their positions.

An enemy penetration of a front-line platoon defense area is resisted by the fires of adjacent platoons and the support platoon.

If the company is surrounded, the company commander issues orders for a redistri-

bution of troops and weapons to permit continued all-around defense of the area.

The defense is characterized by aggressive action; the position is held at all costs.

11. NIGHT RELIEF.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company in a night relief of a front-line company. Two companies are required for this exercise, one to occupy the front-line defense area and one to execute the relief.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Plans and preparations of the relieving commander.
- b. Plans and preparations of the commander of the company being relieved.
- c. Execution of the relief.

Standard procedure

The incoming company commander and his lower leaders inspect the position during daylight. Key personnel of the incoming company remain on the position to keep abreast of changes in the situation.

Both company commanders recommend to the battalion commander the transfer of weapons, ammunition, and supplies, if appropriate. They coordinate the time and order of relief.

The incoming commander obtains all available information concerning local, hos-

tile and friendly dispositions, habits, obstacles, and fires. He passes this information to his platoon leaders and assigns platoon defense areas. He arranges for guides to lead his company elements to their positions.

The outgoing company commander arranges for the movement of his company elements to the company assembly area.

Periodic reports are made to the battalion commander as to the progress of the relief.

The incoming company commander assumes responsibility for the defense of the area when the major part of his company is in position and he has established communication and control.

12. NIGHT WITHDRAWAL.

Scope

A problem involving the night with-

Standard procedure

The order for a night withdrawal is issued

drawal from contact of an interior rifle company.

Situations are drawn to require—

a. Reconnaissance of the company assembly area and routes of withdrawal.

b. Issuance of the order.

c. Designation of the company covering force, its commander, and instructions relative to accomplishing its mission.

d. Control and secrecy measures relative to the movement.

e. Measures to provide for rear, flank, and antitank security.

f. Ammunition supply and the evacuation of the wounded.

g. Execution of the withdrawal.

to the company commander in sufficient time to allow him to make a daylight reconnaissance. The company commander, accompanied by designated leaders, selects a company assembly area and routes to it. He makes his plan of withdrawal and issues his order.

He designates the company units which will make up the covering force and appoints its commander.

Activity which might indicate a withdrawal is restricted.

Security to the rear and flanks is furnished by the covering force and patrols.

The covering force protects the withdrawal of the company and withdraws on order of the company commander or according to a prearranged time schedule.

Provisions are made for the evacuation of

casualties. Enough ammunition is left with the covering force; the remainder is evacuated or destroyed.

Rearward movement begins after dark. Platoons move to the company assembly area in small columns. The entire movement is made quietly without confusion, and in secrecy.

13. REVERSE SLOPE DEFENSE.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company, as part of a larger force, in a reverse slope defense.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Reconnaissance of area.
- b. Company defense order.
- c. Occupation of the position.
- d. Contact of the defense.

Standard procedure

The organization of a reverse slope defensive position is generally according to the principles of a standard defensive position organization with the following modifications and additions:

Observation posts, protected by small groups of riflemen and weapons crew, are prepared on or just forward of the topo-

graphical crest. They are occupied by the company commander, platoon leaders, and forward observers.

The forward slope and flanks are, if possible, covered by direct flanking fire from weapons defiladed from the front.

Mines and trip flares are used on the forward and reverse slopes to slow the enemy attack.

Halting the enemy attack as it crosses the crest is the main consideration in locating troops and weapons.

14. PERIMETER DEFENSE.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company on an independent mission in establishing a perimeter defense.

Situations are drawn to require—

Standard procedure

The company commander selects the company defense area, makes a thorough reconnaissance of the area, and assigns platoon defense areas.

Scope

- a. Reconnaissance and formulation of the defense plan by the company commander.
- b. Issuance of the company defense order.
- c. Organization and occupation of the company defense area.
- d. Conduct of the defense.

Standard procedure

He makes his plan and issues it to his lower unit leaders in the form of a clear, concise order.

Rifle platoons are assigned a part of the outer perimeter to defend. A 57-mm rifle squad normally is located in each rifle platoon defense area.

An inner perimeter is organized by the 60-mm mortar section and headquarters personnel of the company and of the weapons platoon.

The 60-mm mortars and other organic or attached supporting weapons are assigned sectors of fire.

The company commander, through aggressive leadership, uses all the means at his disposal to repel the enemy attack or to eject him from the position in the event of a penetration.

15. ASSEMBLY AREA OUTPOST.

Scope

A problem involving the rifle company as the outpost for a battalion assembly area.

Situations are drawn to require—

- a. Reconnaissance and formulation of plans by the company commander.
- b. Orders.
- c. Organization of outguard positions and visiting patrols.
- d. Conduct of the outpost.

Standard procedure

The company commander makes a reconnaissance of the area and selects the locations for the outguards. The outguards are established at critical points 200 to 500 yards from the assembly area in positions which permit long-range observation and fires and effective coverage of probable approaches. Forward observers are stationed with some of the outguards.

Communication is established with all outguards and visiting patrols are used. The outguards warn the troops in the assembly area of the approach of the enemy and use maximum fire power to delay him.

16. ESTABLISHMENT AND DEFENSE OF ROAD BLOCKS.

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company

Standard procedure

The company commander makes such

Scope

assigned the mission of establishing and defending road blocks.

Situation is drawn to require—

a. Plans and orders of the company commander relative to—

(1) Exact location of the road blocks.

(2) Organization of the positions.

(3) Use of supporting weapons.

b. Organization and occupation of the positions.

c. Conduct of the defense of the road blocks.

Standard procedure

reconnaissance as is necessary to determine the exact location of the road blocks and the plans for their defense.

Security detachments are used forward of each position and all-around protection is provided. Supporting weapons are used to cover avenues of approach to the road blocks.

The company commander supervises the construction of the road blocks from such materials as are available. He assigns specific tasks and prescribes the sequence in which they are to be performed so that the positions are organized within the time available.

Security detachments give warning of the enemy approach and withdraw to their positions by previously selected routes. Small hostile groups are allowed to approach close

to the road blocks where they are captured or destroyed by surprise action. Large enemy forces are denied the positions by the aggressive action. The company commander keeps the battalion commander informed of the situation and withdraws only on orders.

APPENDIX VIII

REFERENCES

1. MILITARY TERMS.

TM 20-205, Dictionary of United States Army Terms.

Dictionary of United States Military Terms for Joint Usage.

2. LIST OF TRAINING PUBLICATIONS.

FM 21-6.

**3. TRAINING FILMS, FILM STRIPS,
AND FILM BULLETINS.**

FM 21-7, List of War Department Films, Film Strips, and Recognition Film Slides.

4. TRAINING AIDS.

FM 21-8, Military Training Aids.

5. MEDICAL.

AR 40-205, Military Hygiene and Sanitation.

AR 40-210, Prevention and Control of Communicable Diseases of Man.

6. CHEMICAL.

FM 3-5, Characteristics and Employment of Ground Chemical Munitions.

7. INFANTRY.

T/O&E 7-17, Infantry Rifle Company.

FM 7-24, Communication in the Infantry Division.

FM 7-30, Supply and Evacuation, The Infantry Regiment: Service Company and Medical Detachment.

FM 7-35, Antitank Company, Infantry Regiment and Antitank Platoon, Infantry Battalion.

FM 7-37, Cannon Company, Infantry Regiment.

8. ARMORED.

FM 17-32, Tank Company.

9. INDIVIDUAL SOLDIER.

FM 21-7, List of War Department Films, Film Strips and Recognition Film Slides.

FM 21-8, Military Training Aids.

FM 21-10, Military Sanitation.

FM 21-75, Scouting, Patrolling, and Sniping.

10. BASIC WEAPONS.

FM 23-5, U.S. Rifle, Caliber .30 M1.

FM 23-7, U.S. Carbine, Caliber .30 M1 and M1A1.

FM 23-15, Browning Automatic Rifle, Caliber .30, M1918A2.

FM 23-25, Bayonet.

FM 23-30, Hand and Rifle Grenades, Rocket, AT, HE, 2.36-inch.

FM 23-32, Rocket Launchers.

FM 23-35, Pistols and Revolvers.

FM 23-55, Browning Machine Guns, Caliber .30, M1917A1, M1919A4, and M1919A6.

FM 23-65, Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50, HB, M2.

FM 23-80, 57-mm Rifle, M18.

FM 23-85, 60-mm Mortar, M2.

11. COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES.

FM 24-16, Signal Orders, Records and Reports.

FM 24-17, Signal Center and Message Center Procedure.

FM 24-18, Radio Communication.

FM 24-20, Field Wire Systems.

12. SPECIAL OPERATIONS.

FM 31-5, Landing Operations on Hostile Shores.

FM 31-25, Desert Operations.

FM 31-40, Supply by Air in Combat Operations.

FM 31-50, Attack on a Fortified Position and Combat in Towns.

13. MOUNTAIN AND WINTER.

FM 70-10, Mountain Operations.

FM 70-15, Operations in Snow and Extreme Cold.

14. AIRBORNE.

FM 71-30, Employment of Airborne Forces.

TM 71-210, Air Transport of Troops and Equipment.

TM 71-220, Technical Training of Parachutists.

15. JUNGLE.

FM 72-20, Jungle Warfare.

16. FIELD SERVICE REGULATIONS.

FM 100-5, Operations.

17. STAFF OFFICERS.

FM 101-10, Organization, Technical and Logistical Data.

INDEX

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|----------------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Action, zones of | 178 | 192 |
| Administrative group, company | 4, 11, 352 | 2, 10, 345 |
| Advance guard: | | |
| Advance party | 22, 24 | 20, 24 |
| Point | 22, 25, 52 | 20, 24, 46 |
| Road space | 22 | 20 |
| Support | 22, 23, 26, 31 | 20, 23, 24, 29 |
| Advance party: | | |
| Characteristics | 22, 24 | 20, 24 |
| Contact established | 121 | 116 |
| Mission | 117 | 112 |
| Aid men, company | 111, 362 | 119, 354 |
| Airborne assault | 391 | 374 |
| Airborne defense | 313-315 | 309 |
| Airborne rifle company: | | |
| Communication | 399 | 379 |
| Equipment | 373 | 358 |
| In attack. (<i>See</i> Attack.) | | |
| Role | 371 | 357 |
| Supply and evacuation . . . | 374 | 358 |
| Supporting arms | 375 | 361 |
| Air-loading table | 385 | 370 |
| Air movement | 389 | 373 |
| Air movement table | 390 | 374 |
| All-around defense | 268 | 263 |
| Alternate firing position . . . | 7 | 7 |
| Ammunition | 357 | 349 |
| Ammunition supply: | | |
| Rifle company | 357 | 349 |
| Rifle platoon | 113 | 111 |
| Rifle squad | 48 | 45 |
| River crossing | 239 | 245 |
| Weapons platoon | 148 | 159 |
| Weapons squad | 88 | 96 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Antiaircraft security: | | |
| Rifle company | 12 | 11 |
| Rifle company (airborne) | 376 | 362 |
| Rifle platoon | 114 | 111 |
| Rifle squad | 49 | 45 |
| Weapons platoon | 149 | 160 |
| Weapons squad | 89 | 96 |
| Antitank defense: | | |
| Airborne rifle company | 377 | 362 |
| Front-line company | 13, 286 | 12, 285 |
| Reserve company | 306 | 301 |
| Rifle platoon | 115 | 111 |
| Rifle squad | 50 | 45 |
| Weapons platoon | 150 | 160 |
| Weapons squad | 90 | 96 |
| Approach march (<i>see also</i> movement to contact): | | |
| Rifle company | 18 | 16 |
| Rifle platoon | 116-121 | 112 |
| Weapons platoon | 152 | 161 |
| Weapons squad | 91-92 | 96 |
| Artillery | 181, app. IV | 194, 419 |
| Assault: | | |
| Airborne rifle company. (<i>See Airborne assault.</i>) | | |
| Night attack | 224 | 231 |
| Rifle company | 191 | 209 |
| Rifle platoon | 129 | 134 |
| Rifle squad | 71 | 76 |
| Assault fire | 72 | 78 |
| Assault landing | 391 | 374 |
| Assembly aids (airborne rifle company) | 394, 397 | 377, 378 |
| Assembly area: | | |
| Airborne rifle company | 393-394, 397 | 376, 377 |
| Rifle company | 37, 303 | 35, 300 |
| Rifle platoon | 122 | 118 |
| River crossing | 228 | 235 |
| Weapons platoon | 153 | 161 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Assistant platoon sergeant . . . | 111 | 110 |
| As skirmishers | 56 | 55 |
| Attack: | | |
| Airborne rifle company: | | |
| Assault | 405 | 385 |
| Conduct | 404 | 382 |
| Organization | 380 | 365 |
| Preparations | 378-388 | 363 |
| Reorganization | 406 | 385 |
| Reserve company | 408 | 386 |
| Separated personnel | 400 | 380 |
| Reserve company: | | |
| Committed | 199 | 216 |
| Initial position | 195 | 214 |
| Missions | 197 | 215 |
| Reconnaissance | 198 | 216 |
| Successive reserve positions | 196 | 215 |
| Rifle company: | | |
| Assault | 191, 224 | 209, 231 |
| Conduct | 189 | 205 |
| In woods | 241-244 | 245 |
| Movement to line of departure | 188 | 205 |
| Night attack | 200-225 | 217 |
| Pursuit | 194 | 212 |
| Reorganization | 192, 224 | 211, 231 |
| River line | 226-240 | 234 |
| Rifle platoon: | | |
| Assault | 129 | 134 |
| Conduct | 128 | 131 |
| Movement across line of departure | 127 | 131 |
| Preparations | 122-126 | 118 |
| Reorganization | 130 | 136 |
| Support platoon | 131, 280 | 137, 279 |
| Rifle squad: | | |
| Assault | 71 | 76 |
| Conduct | 70 | 72 |

| <i>Attack—Continued</i> | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| <i>Rifle squad—Continued</i> | | |
| Connecting files | 53 | 48 |
| Connecting groups | 75 | 81 |
| Duties | 41, 65-67 | 41, 66 |
| Flank patrols | 74 | 81 |
| Flank guard | 54 | 52 |
| Movement across line of departure | 69 | 72 |
| Preparations | 61-68 | 61 |
| Reorganization | 73 | 81 |
| Support squad | 76 | 82 |
| <i>Weapons platoon:</i> | | |
| Displacement | 162 | 171 |
| Firing positions | 157 | 166 |
| Preparations | 153-159 | 161 |
| Reorganization | 163 | 172 |
| Supporting fires | 161 | 171 |
| <i>Weapons squad:</i> | | |
| Displacement | 102 | 103 |
| Firing positions | 100, 160-163 | 102, 170 |
| Preparations | 93-99 | 97 |
| Reorganization | 103 | 103 |
| Supporting fires | 101 | 102 |
| <i>Attack position:</i> | | |
| Night attack | 212 | 224 |
| Rifle company | 38 | 38 |
| River crossing | 228, 234 | 235, 242 |
| Attack, special operations | 266 | 262 |
| Automatic rifle | 6 | 5 |
| Avenues of approach | 269 | 265 |
| Bayonet | 5 | 3 |
| Boundaries | 178, 276 | 192, 274 |
| Briefing for airborne attack | 383 | 369 |
| Bugler | 11, 346 | 10, 336 |
| Burial of dead | 359 | 352 |
| Carbine | 5 | 3 |
| Challenge and password | 220 | 229 |
| Characteristics of infantry | 3 | 2 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| Clothing and equipment | 356 | 348 |
| Column: | | |
| March | App. II | 393 |
| Platoon | 120; app. II | 114; 393 |
| Route and tactical | 18 | 16 |
| Squad | 56; app. II | 55, 393 |
| Combat formations | 120; app. II | 114; 393 |
| Combat outpost | 320-323 | 315 |
| Command group, company | 4 | 2 |
| Command post: | | |
| In attack | 185 | 202 |
| In defense: | | |
| Front-line company | 284 | 284 |
| Reserve company | 305 | 301 |
| Rifle platoon | 138 | 149 |
| Communication: | | |
| Airborne rifle company | 399 | 379 |
| Attack in woods | 243 | 247 |
| Night attack | 222 | 230 |
| Night withdrawal | 340 | 331 |
| Rifle company: | | |
| Communication coordi- nation | 349 | 342 |
| Equipment | 347 | 338 |
| In attack | 187 | 204 |
| Orders | 350 | 343 |
| Personnel | 346 | 336 |
| Use of communication | 348 | 338 |
| Rifle platoon | 112 | 111 |
| River crossing | 240 | 245 |
| Communication sergeant | 11, 346 | 10, 336 |
| Company: | | |
| Clerk | 11 | 10 |
| Headquarters | 4, 10-11 | 2, 8 |
| Messengers | 11, 346, 348 | 10, 336, 338 |
| Records | 351 | 344 |
| Concealment | 70, 269 | 72, 265 |
| Connecting files | 53 | 48 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Connecting groups: | | |
| Rifle company | 183 | 201 |
| Rifle platoon | 128 | 131 |
| Rifle squad | 75 | 81 |
| Continuation of attack | 407 | 386 |
| Control: | | |
| March objectives | 19 | 18 |
| Phase lines | 19 | 18 |
| Rifle company: | | |
| In attack | 190 | 206 |
| In infiltration | 263 | 257 |
| In woods | 243 | 247 |
| Rifle platoon | 112 | 111 |
| Weapons platoon: | | |
| 57-mm rifle section | 145 | 157 |
| 60-mm mortar section | 145 | 157 |
| Control point (airborne) | 395 | 377 |
| Counterattack | 298 | 298 |
| Cover and concealment | 70, 269 | 72, 265 |
| Covering force | 335, 341 | 328, 332 |
| Cover position | 7 | 7 |
| Crew-served weapons: | | |
| Automatic rifle | 6 | 5 |
| Caliber .50 machine gun | 6 | 5 |
| Light machine gun | 6 | 5 |
| 60-mm mortar | 6 | 5 |
| 57-mm rifle | 6 | 5 |
| Rocket launcher | 6 | 5 |
| Critical terrain features | 269 | 265 |
| Defense: | | |
| Airborne rifle company | 409 | 386 |
| Antiairborne | 313-315 | 309 |
| Front-line company: | | |
| Antitank | 286 | 285 |
| Boundaries | 276 | 274 |
| Command post | 284 | 284 |
| Company order | 273; app. I | 273; 388 |
| Conduct | 289 | 288 |

| <i>Defense—Continued</i> | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Front-line company—Continued | | |
| Depth | 275 | 274 |
| Employment | 267 | 263 |
| Fire plan | 282 | 282 |
| Frontage | 274 | 274 |
| Limiting points | 277 | 275 |
| Local security | 324 | 318 |
| Mission | 270 | 268 |
| Night dispositions | 288 | 287 |
| Observation posts | 283, 292 | 283, 292 |
| Organization of ground | 285 | 284 |
| Relief | 290 | 291 |
| Reverse slope | 291–293 | 292 |
| Support platoon | 280 | 279 |
| Troop leading procedure | 272 | 269 |
| In woods | 312 | 308 |
| On a river line | 311 | 307 |
| On a wide front | 309 | 303 |
| Perimeter | 310 | 304 |
| Reserve rifle company: | | |
| Antitank | 306 | 301 |
| Assembly area | 303 | 300 |
| Command post | 305 | 301 |
| Conduct | 307 | 302 |
| Counterattacking | 298 | 298 |
| Missions | 295–300 | 297 |
| Observation posts | 304 | 301 |
| Organization of ground | 302 | 300 |
| Weapons platoon | 301 | 299 |
| Rifle platoon: | | |
| Command post | 138 | 149 |
| Conduct | 140 | 151 |
| Distribution of squads | 136 | 146 |
| Fire plan | 137 | 147 |
| Frontage and depth | 135, 279 | 145, 277 |
| Order | 134 | 144 |
| Organization of ground | 139 | 150 |
| Security | 141 | 152 |

| <i>Defense—Continued</i> | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Rifle platoon— <i>Continued</i> | | |
| Tactical employment | 132 | 141 |
| Troop-leading procedure | 133 | 142 |
| Rifle squad: | | |
| Conduct | 82 | 89 |
| Firing positions | 79 | 87 |
| Mission | 78 | 85 |
| Order | 80 | 88 |
| Organization of position | 81 | 89 |
| Security | 83 | 91 |
| Weapons platoon: | | |
| Conduct | 170 | 182 |
| Leaders | 168 | 179 |
| Occupation of positions | 169 | 180 |
| Orders | 167 | 177 |
| Sectors of fire | 166 | 176 |
| Selection of positions | 165 | 175 |
| Tactical employment | 164 | 174 |
| Target areas | 166 | 176 |
| Weapons squad: | | |
| Conduct | 109 | 107 |
| Firing positions | 106 | 105 |
| Mission | 105 | 105 |
| Order | 107 | 106 |
| Organization of position | 108 | 106 |
| Defense, principles of | 268, 314 | 263, 309 |
| Delaying action | 331, 343—344 | 326, 334 |
| Depth in defense | 135, 275 | 145, 274 |
| Diamond, squad | 56; app. II | 55; 393 |
| Displacement: | | |
| 60-mm mortar section in attack | 162 | 171 |
| 57-mm rifle section in attack | 162 | 171 |
| Weapons squad | 102 | 103 |
| Drivers | 143, 367 | 155, 356 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Duties: | | |
| Administrative group | 11, 352 | 10, 345 |
| Aid men | 111, 362 | 110, 354 |
| Company commander | 10, 352, 359 | 8, 345, 352 |
| Company headquarters | 11 | 10 |
| Rifle platoon: | | |
| Aid man | 111 | 110 |
| Assistant platoon sergeant | 111 | 110 |
| Messengers | 111 | 110 |
| Platoon leader | 111 | 110 |
| Platoon sergeant | 111 | 110 |
| Rifle squad: | | |
| Assistant squad leader | 41, 58, 66 | 41, 58, 68 |
| Squad leader | 41, 58, 65 | 41, 58, 66 |
| Squad members | 67 | 68 |
| Weapons platoon: | | |
| Headquarters | 143, 168 | 155, 179 |
| Section and squad leaders | 144 | 155 |
| Weapons squad: | | |
| Leaders | 85 | 94 |
| Echelon, right (left) | 120; app. II | 114; 393 |
| Emplacement, weapons | App. V | 433 |
| Equipment (airborne rifle company) | 373 | 358 |
| Equipment, communication. (See Communication.) | | |
| Estimate of situation: | | |
| Company commander | 173 | 185 |
| Platoon leader | 124 | 119 |
| Evacuation of wounded | 363 | 354 |
| Executive officer, company | 11 | 10 |
| Field exercises | App. VII | 471 |
| Fields of fire | 269 | 265 |
| Fire and maneuver | 3, 46, 70 | 2, 44, 72 |
| Fire, conduct of: | | |
| 60-mm mortar section | 146 | 158 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Fire, conduct of—Continued | | |
| 57-mm rifle section | 146 | 158 |
| Light machine gun team | 86 | 95 |
| Rocket launcher team | 86 | 95 |
| Fire control | 43 | 41 |
| Fire discipline | 44 | 42 |
| Fire distribution | 45 | 42 |
| Fire plan: | | |
| Rifle company | 282 | 282 |
| Rifle platoon | 137 | 147 |
| Fires, supporting | 181; app. IV | 194; 419 |
| Firing positions: | | |
| Light machine gun team | 7, 97-100, 106, 160-163 | 7, 100, 102 105, 170 |
| 60-mm mortar section | 7, 157 | 7, 166 |
| 57-mm rifle section | 7, 157 | 7, 166 |
| Rifle squad | 79 | 87 |
| Rocket launcher team | 7, 97 | 7, 100 |
| First sergeant | 11 | 10 |
| Flank guard: | | |
| Rifle company | 28 | 27 |
| Rifle platoon | 118 | 114 |
| Rifle squad | 54 | 52 |
| Flank security: | | |
| Advance guard | 26 | 24 |
| On raids | 256 | 254 |
| Rifle platoon | 128 | 131 |
| Flexibility | 268 | 263 |
| Flight manifest | 385 | 370 |
| Food and water | 354 | 347 |
| Foot marches | 20 | 20 |
| Formations (see also Combat formations, app. II): | | |
| Rifle company: | | |
| Movement to contact | 18 | 16 |
| Night attack | 210 | 222 |
| River crossing | 232 | 241 |
| Woods | 243 | 247 |
| Rifle platoon | 120 | 114 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Formations—Continued | | |
| Rifle squad | 56 | 55 |
| Support of advance guard | 22, 23, 26, 31 | 20, 23, 24, 29 |
| Frontages: | | |
| In defense | 135, 274, 279, 309 | 145, 274 277, 303 |
| Fuel | 355 | 348 |
| General outpost | 319 | 314 |
| Grenade: | | |
| Hand | 5 | 3 |
| Rifle | 5 | 3 |
| Ground, organization of: | | |
| Front-line company | 285 | 284 |
| Reserve company | 302 | 300 |
| Hasty defense | 287 | 286 |
| Heavy weapons company | App. IV | 419 |
| Identification (airborne) | 396 | 378 |
| Illuminated night attack | 203, 225 | 218, 233 |
| Illuminating devices | 211 | 224 |
| Individual weapons: | | |
| Bayonet | 5 | 3 |
| Carbine | 5 | 3 |
| Hand grenade | 5 | 3 |
| Pistol | 5 | 3 |
| Rifle | 5 | 3 |
| Rifle grenade | 5 | 3 |
| Sniper's rifle | 5 | 3 |
| Infantry-tank team | 181 | 194 |
| Infiltration | 263-265 | 257 |
| Key terrain | 268 | 263 |
| Kitchen, company | 354 | 347 |
| Limiting points | 277 | 275 |
| Limit of advance | 217 | 228 |
| Line of departure (<i>see also</i> Point of departure): | | |
| Rifle company | 177, 188, 213 | 191, 205, 225 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Line of departure—Continued | | |
| Rifle platoon | 127 | 131 |
| Rifle squad | 64, 69 | 64, 72 |
| Line of deployment | 216 | 228 |
| Line, platoon | 120; app. II | 114; 393 |
| Listening post | 324 | 318 |
| Litter bearers | 363 | 354 |
| Loading (airborne) | 384, 387-388 | 370, 371 |
| Local security | 324 | 318 |
| Machine gun: | | |
| Light | 6 | 5 |
| Caliber .50 | 6 | 5 |
| Maneuver, scheme of | 175 | 189 |
| Marches: | | |
| Foot | 20 | 20 |
| Motor | 29-34 | 29 |
| March objectives | 19 | 18 |
| March outpost: | | |
| Rifle platoon | 119 | 114 |
| Rifle squad | 55 | 52 |
| Marshalling camp | 382 | 368 |
| Medical platoon | 363 | 354 |
| Medical service: | | |
| Evacuation | 363 | 354 |
| Orders | 364 | 355 |
| Personnel and duties | 361-362 | 353 |
| Sanitation | 365 | 355 |
| Messengers: | | |
| Rifle company | 11, 346 | 10, 336 |
| Rifle platoon | 111 | 110 |
| Weapons platoon | 143 | 155 |
| Mess location | 354 | 347 |
| Mission: | | |
| Front-line company | 270 | 268 |
| Infiltration forces | 263 | 257 |
| Reserve company | 197, 295-300 | 215, 297 |
| Rifle company | 2 | 1 |
| Support platoon | 131 | 137 |
| Mortar, 60-mm | 6 | 5 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Mortar company, heavy | 181; app. IV | 194; 419 |
| Motorized detachment | 34 | 31 |
| Motor maintenance: | | |
| Drivers | 367 | 356 |
| Higher echelon | 368 | 356 |
| Responsibility | 366 | 355 |
| Motor marches. (<i>See</i> <i>Marches</i> .) | | |
| Movement at night: | | |
| Covered | 36 | 35 |
| Uncovered | 35 | 32 |
| Movement to contact: | | |
| Classification | 16 | 15 |
| Covered | 16 | 15 |
| Definition | 15 | 15 |
| Phases | 17 | 16 |
| Rifle company | 15, 35 | 15, 32 |
| Rifle platoon: | | |
| Actions when contact | | |
| is established | 121 | 116 |
| Advance party | 117 | 112 |
| Combat formations | 120; app. II | 114; 393 |
| Flank guard | 118 | 114 |
| March outpost | 119 | 114 |
| Rifle squad | 51 | 45 |
| Uncovered | 16 | 15 |
| Weapons platoon | 151-152 | 160 |
| Weapons squad | 91-92 | 96 |
| Mutual support | 268 | 263 |
| Night attack: | | |
| Considerations in planning: | | |
| Attack positions | 212 | 224 |
| Communication | 222 | 230 |
| Company order | 223 | 230 |
| Formations | 210 | 222 |
| Identification | 220 | 229 |
| Illumination devices | 211 | 224 |
| Limit of advance | 217 | 228 |
| Line or point of de- | | |
| parture | 213 | 225 |

| <i>Night attack—Continued</i> | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| Considerations in planning | | |
| —Continued | | |
| Maneuver | 221 | 230 |
| Platoon release point | 215 | 225 |
| Probable line of deployment | 216 | 228 |
| Routes to objective | 214 | 225 |
| Secrecy measures | 219 | 229 |
| Time of attack | 209 | 221 |
| Rifle company: | | |
| Characteristics | 202 | 217 |
| Conduct | 224 | 231 |
| Control | 208 | 220 |
| Illuminated | 225 | 233 |
| Plan of attack | 207 | 219 |
| Purpose | 201 | 217 |
| Reconnaissance | 206 | 219 |
| Supported or unsupported | 204, 205 | 219 |
| Types | 203 | 218 |
| Night dispositions in defense | 288 | 287 |
| Objectives | 19, 174, 403 | 18, 188, 381 |
| Observation and fields of fire | 269, 283 | 265, 283 |
| Observation post (<i>see also</i> | | |
| Defense): | | |
| Front-line company | 173, 283, 292 | 185, 283, 292 |
| Reserve company | 304 | 301 |
| Rifle platoon | 138 | 149 |
| Obstacles | 269 | 265 |
| Off-carrier position | 7 | 7 |
| Orderly | 11, 346 | 10, 336 |
| Orders: | | |
| Battalion: | | |
| For a raid | 249 | 251 |
| In attack | 172 | 184 |
| Rifle company | 173 | 185 |
| For retrograde movement | 333 | 326 |

| <i>Orders—Continued</i> | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Rifle company—Continued</i> | | |
| In a raid | 249 | 251 |
| In attack | 123; app. I | 118; 388 |
| In defense | 273; app. I | 273; 388 |
| In night attack | 223 | 230 |
| In river crossing | 233 | 241 |
| Rifle platoon | 134 | 144 |
| Rifle squad | 68, 80 | 70, 88 |
| Weapons platoon | 94, 159, 167 | 98, 168, 177 |
| Weapons squad | 94, 99, 107 | 98, 101, 106 |
| Orders, operations | App. I | 388 |
| <i>Organization:</i> | | |
| Airborne rifle company | 372 | 358 |
| Combat outpost | 321 | 316 |
| For a raid | 251 | 252 |
| Rifle company | 4 | 2 |
| Rifle platoon | 4, 110 | 2, 110 |
| Rifle squad | 40 | 41 |
| <i>Weapons platoon:</i> | | |
| 60-mm mortar section | 4, 142 | 2, 154 |
| 57-mm rifle section | 4, 142 | 2, 154 |
| Weapons squad | 84 | 94 |
| Organization in depth | 268 | 263 |
| Organization of ground | 81, 108 | 89, 106 |
| | 139, 285, 302 | 150, 284, 300 |
| Outguard | 83 | 91 |
| Outposts | 317-323 | 311 |
| Parking diagram (airborne) | 386 | 371 |
| Password. (<i>See Challenge and password.</i>) | | |
| Patrols | 74, 83, 256 | 81, 91, 254 |
| Perimeter defense | 310 | 304 |
| <i>Personnel:</i> | | |
| Communication | 346 | 336 |
| Medical | 362 | 354 |
| Mess | 352 | 345 |
| Supply | 352 | 345 |
| Phase lines | 19 | 18 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Pistol | 5 | 3 |
| Platoon column. (<i>See</i> Column, platoon.) | | |
| Platoon leader | 111 | 110 |
| Platoon line | 120; app. II | 114; 393 |
| Platoon release point | 215 | 225 |
| Platoon sergeant | 111 | 110 |
| Platoons of heavy weapons company | 181; app. IV | 194; 419 |
| Point of advance guard | 22 | 20 |
| Point of departure | 69, 127, | 72, 131 |
| | 177, 188, 213 | 191, 205, 225 |
| Position, organization of: | | |
| Reverse slope | 292 | 292 |
| Rifle squad | 81 | 89 |
| Weapons squad | 108 | 106 |
| Positions: | | |
| Alternate | 7 | 7 |
| Attack | 38 | 38 |
| Cover | 7 | 7 |
| Off-carrier | 7 | 7 |
| Primary | 7 | 7 |
| Supplementary | 7 | 7 |
| Positions and duties of: | | |
| Assistant squad leader | 41, 66 | 41, 68 |
| Squad leader | 41, 65, 85, 144, 168 | 41, 66, 94 155, 179 |
| Primary firing position | 7 | 7 |
| Principles of defense | 268 | 263 |
| Pursuit | 194 | 221 |
| Radio | 347 | 338 |
| Radiotelephone operators | 11, 346 | 10, 336 |
| Raids: | | |
| Characteristics | 247 | 250 |
| Defined | 245 | 250 |
| Purpose | 246 | 250 |
| Supported | 249-260 | 251 |
| Types | 248 | 250 |
| Unsupported | 261 | 256 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| Rallying points | 255 | 254 |
| Range estimation | 87 | 95 |
| Rations | 354 | 347 |
| Rear guard | 327 | 322 |
| Rear party | 327 | 322 |
| Rear point | 327 | 322 |
| Reconnaissance: | | |
| Airborne rifle company | 381, 401 | 367, 380 |
| Night attack | 206 | 219 |
| Raid | 250 | 251 |
| Reserve company | 198 | 216 |
| Rifle company | 173, 272 | 185, 269 |
| Rifle platoon | 124, 133 | 119; 142 |
| River line attack | 227 | 235 |
| Records, company | 351 | 344 |
| Rehearsal for a raid | 258 | 255 |
| Relief in defense | 290 | 291 |
| Reorganization: | | |
| Airborne rifle company | 392, 402, 406 | 376, 380, 385 |
| Rifle company | 192, 224 | 211, 231 |
| Rifle platoon | 130 | 136 |
| Rifle squad | 73 | 81 |
| Weapons platoon | 163 | 172 |
| Weapons squad | 103 | 103 |
| Reserve company | 195-199 | 214 |
| Retirement | 330 | 326 |
| Retrograde movements: | | |
| Daylight withdrawals | 329, 342 | 325, 332 |
| Defined | 328 | 324 |
| Delaying actions | 331, 343, 344 | 326, 334, 335 |
| Night withdrawals | 334-341 | 327 |
| Retirement | 330 | 326 |
| Reverse slope | 291-293 | 292 |
| Rifle | 5 | 3 |
| Rifle, 57-mm | 6 | 5 |
| Rifle company, airborne. (<i>See</i> Airborne rifle company.) | | |
| Rifle company: | | |
| As advance guard | 27, 32 | 27, 30 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| Rifle company—Continued | | |
| As flank guard | 28 | 27 |
| As motorized detachment | 34 | 31 |
| As part of the main body | 21 | 20 |
| Attack preparations | 171-173 | 184 |
| In attack. (<i>See</i> Attack.) | | |
| In defense: | | |
| Employment | 267 | 263 |
| Principles of defense | 268-269 | 263 |
| Terrain study | 269 | 265 |
| Organization | 4 | 2 |
| Rifle platoon: | | |
| Ammunition supply | 113 | 111 |
| Antiaircraft defense | 114 | 111 |
| Antitank defense | 115 | 111 |
| As support | 131, 280 | 137, 279 |
| Control and communication | 112 | 111 |
| Duties | 111 | 110 |
| In attack. (<i>See</i> Attack.) | | |
| In defense. (<i>See</i> Defense.) | | |
| Movement to contact. (<i>See</i> Movement to contact.) | | |
| Organization | 4, 110 | 2, 110 |
| Rifle, sniper's | 5 | 3 |
| Rifle squad: | | |
| Ammunition supply | 48 | 45 |
| Antiaircraft security | 49 | 45 |
| Antitank defense | 50 | 45 |
| Connecting files | 53 | 48 |
| Duties | 41, 65-66 | 41, 66 |
| Fire control | 43 | 41 |
| Fire discipline | 44 | 42 |
| Fire distribution | 45 | 42 |
| Flank guard | 54 | 52 |
| Formations | 56; app. I ^b | 55; 393 |
| In attack. (<i>See</i> Attack.) | | |
| In defense. (<i>See</i> Defense.) | | |
| March outpost | 55 | 52 |
| Movement to contact | 51 | 45 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| Rifle squad—Continued | | |
| Organization | 40 | 41 |
| Point of advance guard . . | 22, 24–25 | 20, 24 |
| Security | 59 | 58 |
| Support | 96 | 99 |
| Target designation | 42 | 41 |
| River line. (See Attack and defense.) | | |
| Road blocks | 325 | 320 |
| Rocket launcher | 6 | 5 |
| Rolls | 358 | 352 |
| Route column | 18 | 16 |
| Sanitation | 365 | 355 |
| Security: | | |
| Airborne rifle company . . | 398 | 379 |
| In assembly area | 39 | 40 |
| In attack | 59, 131, 183 | 58, 137, 201 |
| In defense | 317–327 | 311 |
| Local | 141, 324 | 152, 318 |
| Night withdrawal | 338 | 329 |
| Of advance guard | 26 | 24 |
| Perimeter defense | 310 | 304 |
| River crossing | 238 | 244 |
| Security missions, rifle com- pany: | | |
| Assembly area outposts . . | 318 | 311 |
| Combat outpost | 320–323 | 315 |
| Defense of rear installa- tions | 326 | 322 |
| General outpost | 319 | 314 |
| Local security | 141, 324 | 152, 318 |
| Rear guard | 327 | 322 |
| Roadblocks and defense of obstacles | 325 | 320 |
| Sentinel post | 324 | 318 |
| Sergeant: | | |
| Communication | 11, 346 | 10, 336 |
| Rifle platoon | 111 | 110 |
| Weapons platoon | 143 | 155 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Shock action | 3 | 2 |
| Signal communication. (<i>See</i> communication.) | | |
| Signal equipment | 347 | 338 |
| Signals | 347, 348; app. III | 338; 413 |
| Skirmishers | 56 | 55 |
| Snipers | 47 | 45 |
| Sniper's rifle | 5 | 3 |
| Squad column. (<i>See</i> Column, squad.) | | |
| Squad diamond. (<i>See</i> Diamond, squad.) | | |
| Supplementary firing position . | 7 | 7 |
| Supply: | | |
| Airborne rifle company . . | 374 | 359 |
| Rifle company: | | |
| Administrative group duties | 352 | 345 |
| Ammunition and explo- sives | 357 | 349 |
| Clothing and equipment | 356 | 348 |
| Food and water | 354 | 347 |
| Fuel | 355 | 348 |
| Miscellaneous admin- istration | 359 | 352 |
| Orders | 360 | 353 |
| Rolls | 358 | 352 |
| Transportation | 353 | 347 |
| Supply discipline | 352 | 345 |
| Support of— | | |
| Advance guard | 22-23, 26 | 20, 24 |
| Rear guard | 327 | 322 |
| Rifle company | 131, 179, 190, 280 | 137, 194, 206, 279 |
| Supporting arms (airborne rifle company) | 375 | 361 |
| Supporting fires (<i>see</i> App. IV): | | |
| Heavy mortar company . . | 181 | 194 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Supporting fires—Continued | | |
| Heavy weapons company | 181 | 194 |
| Rifle company | 70, 190 | 72, 206 |
| Tanks | 181 | 194 |
| Weapons platoon | 161 | 171 |
| Weapons squad | 101 | 102 |
| Switchboards | 347 | 338 |
| Tactical column | 18 | 16 |
| Tactical employment: | | |
| Light machine gun team | 96 | 99 |
| Rifle company | 9, 132, 267 | 8, 141, 263 |
| Rifle platoon | 96, 132 | 99, 141 |
| Rocket launcher team | 96 | 99 |
| Weapons platoon: | | |
| In attack | 156 | 165 |
| In defense | 164 | 174 |
| Tank company, heavy | 181; app. IV | 194; 419 |
| Target areas: | | |
| 60-mm mortar section | 166 | 176 |
| 57-mm rifle section | 166 | 176 |
| Target designation | 42 | 41 |
| Targets: | | |
| Light machine gun section | 98 | 121 |
| 60-mm mortar section | 158 | 168 |
| 57-mm rifle section | 158 | 168 |
| Rocket launcher section | 98 | 121 |
| Terrain study | 269 | 265 |
| Training program | App. VI | 451 |
| Transportation | 8, 353 | 7, 347 |
| Troop leading procedure: | | |
| Rifle company: | | |
| In attack | 173 | 185 |
| In defense | 272 | 269 |
| Rifle platoon: | | |
| In attack | 124 | 119 |
| In defense | 133 | 142 |
| Rifle squad | 63 | 63 |
| Weapons platoon | 155 | 163 |
| Weapons squad | 95 | 98 |

| | <i>Paragraph</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Vee, platoon | 120; app. II | 114; 393 |
| Water | 354 | 347 |
| Weapons emplacements | App. V | 433 |
| Weapons platoon: | | |
| Ammunition supply | 148 | 159 |
| Antiaircraft security | 149 | 160 |
| Antitank defense | 150 | 160 |
| Conduct of fire | 146 | 158 |
| Control | 145 | 157 |
| Duties of personnel | 143-144 | 155 |
| In attack (<i>see also</i> Attack) | 180 | 194 |
| In defense (<i>see also</i> Defense) | 301 | 299 |
| Movement to contact. (<i>See</i> Movement to contact.) | | |
| Observation | 147 | 158 |
| Organization | 4, 142 | 2, 154 |
| Weapons squad: | | |
| Ammunition supply | 88 | 96 |
| Antiaircraft security | 89 | 96 |
| Antitank defense | 90 | 96 |
| Conduct of fire | 86 | 95 |
| Duties of leaders | 85 | 94 |
| In attack. (<i>See</i> Attack.) | | |
| In defense. (<i>See</i> Defense.) | | |
| Organization | 84 | 94 |
| Range estimation | 87 | 95 |
| Wedge, platoon | 120; app. II | 114; 393 |
| Withdrawal: | | |
| Daylight | 342 | 332 |
| Defined | 329 | 325 |
| From action | 329 | 325 |
| From combat outpost | 323 | 318 |
| In a raid | 257 | 254 |
| Night | 334-341 | 327 |
| Zones of action | 178 | 192 |